

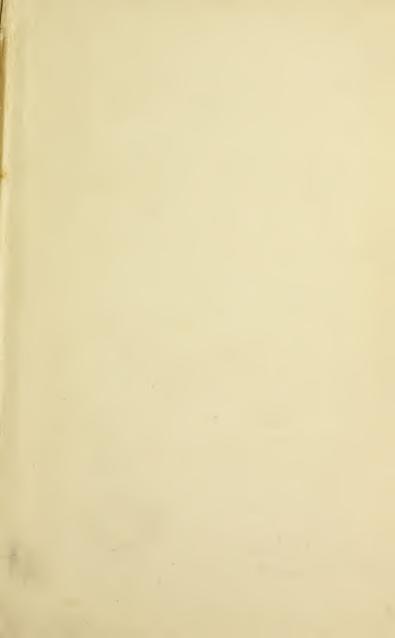
## THE UNIVERSITY

**OF ILLINOIS** 

LIBRARY

435 V 28 h





Digitized by the Internet Archive in 2016





## THE HIGH SCHOOL

# GERMAN GRAMMAR

WITH APPENDICES,

EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

## W. H. VAN DER SMISSEN, M.A.

LECTURER ON GERMAN, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, TORONTO

AND

## W. H. FRASER, B. A.

LECTURER ON ITALIAN AND SPANISH, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, TORONTO
LATE FRENCH AND GERMAN MASTER, UPPER CANADA COLLEGE

NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO

A M E R I C A N B O O K C O M P A N Y

Authorized Edition.
A. 1.

435 V28h

## PREFACE.

In presenting this Grammar to the Public, the authors venture to express the hope that it will be found adapted to the wants, not only of High School teachers and pupils, but also to those of students of German in general.

The Lessons and Exercises have been made, as far as possible, strictly progressive, so that the beginner may not at the outset be overburdened and impeded by too copious vocabularies, or by too difficult exercises. At the same time each separate subject, as for instance the declension of substantives, is fully treated before being dissmissed. Copious examples are given in illustration of each rule.

In the Exercises, especial care has been taken that no grammatical point shall occur in any sentence on which the pupil has not been previously instructed, and also that every Exercise shall contain thorough practice in applying the principles, not only of the corresponding lesson, but also of past lessons.

An oral exercise, consisting of questions, to which the pupil should be required to supply the answers, accompanies each lesson. These oral exercises may be extended at will by the teacher.

The supplementary lessons contain chiefly special cases in grammatical usage, and are mainly for reference. These lessons should be omitted by the elementary pupil, and should not in any case be taken up on the first reading.

The grammar of the substantive, the adjective, the verb (including the passive voice), the pronouns and the principal prepositions, is disposed of in the first twenty-two lessons, together with the fundamental principles of word order, so that, with the completion of Lesson XXII, the pupil will be fully equipped

for reading easy German texts. The Modal Auxiliaries, however, could not be introduced in their proper connection until the strong verbs had been disposed of, and where they occur in reading texts must be treated as anomalous forms until Lesson XXXIII is reached.

Special care has been taken to call attention to and explain those points in which German differs from English usage, particularly with regard to the prepositions and their puzzling idioms, the use of participles and the construction of participial clauses, the order of words and construction of sentences. The Historical Sketch in Lesson LII does not claim to be more than rudimentary, and such terms only are employed in explaining phonetic laws as are likely to be familiar to junior pupils.

In the Vocabulary, only such meanings of words are given as occur in the exercises; for the principal parts of strong and irregular verbs the pupil is referred to the proper section of the Grammar. Similar references are given under the prepositions and pronouns.

The Index has been made as full as possible, and it is hoped that it will be of no little assistance to both teacher and pupil.

In writing this Grammar, the authors have freely consulted, among others, the grammars of Heyse, Whitney and Brandt, Vernaleken's "Deutsche Syntax," and the various works of Sanders, especially his great "Dictionary," his "Sprachbriefe," and his "Satzbau und Wortfolge der deutschen Sprache." For some of the examples in Lesson XLIX, as well as the sentences in Exercise G, the authors are indebted to Buchheim's "German Prose Composition."

University College, Toronto, May, 1888.

## CONTENTS.

								PAGE
PREFACE								. iii
INTRODUC	TION. — Alphabet .							. I
"	Examples of Pro	onunc	iatio	n				. 6
66	General Remark	s on	Pro	unci	ation			. 8
66	Quantity of Vow	rels						• 9
"	Accentuation						•	10
66	Orthography							. 11
66	German Script		•	•	•	•	•	. 13
	_							
	PA	RТ	Т					
LESSON	111.						PAGE	<b>§</b> §
I.	Present Indicative of ha	ben,	to ha	ve			17.	I, 2
II.	Use of Cases Definit	e Art	icle				18.	3-5
III.	Dieser Model Imperf	. Indi	c. of	hab	en,	to		
	have						20.	6, 7
IV.	Mein Model Indef. A	Article	e. — ]	Prese	nt ar	nd		
	Imperf. Indic. of fein,	to be	е			•	22.	8-15
· V.	Declension of Substanti	ves:	— M	aler :	Mode	el,		
	or -1, -m, -n, -r Stem	ıs					25.	16-18
VI.	Present and Imperfect o	f wer	den, 1	to be	com	e.		
	- Construction of Pr	incipa	al Ser	ntenc	és		28.	19, 20
VII.	Declension of Substant	ives:	-8	ohn	Mod	el.		
	<ul> <li>Question Order</li> </ul>						32.	21-23
VIII.	Conjugation of haben,	to h	ave.	Pl	ace	of		
	Participle and Infiniti	ve					36.	24-26
IX.	Weak Conjugation : lob	en. –	Dep	ende	nt Se	n-		
	tences Prepositions	with	Acci	usativ	ve on	ly	41.	27-34
X.	Weak Verbs (continue	d). –	- Dec	clensi	ion	of		
	Substantives: - Dorf	Mode	l, or	Plura	lin-	er	47.	35-37

LESSON		PAGE	§§
XI.	Personal Pronouns	52.	38-42
	Possessive Adjectives. — Use of Articles .	58.	43, 44
XIII.	Construction of Sentences: - Place of Ob-		
	jects, Adverbs, etc Prepositions with Da-		
	tive only	64.	45, 46
A.	Additional Remarks on Personal Pronouns		
	and Prepositions	70.	47-51
XIV.	Conjugation of sein, to be. — Declension of		
	Substantives: - Weak or -n Stems: Anabe		
	Model	72.	52-59
XV.	Mixed Declension. — Double Plurals. — Pre-		
	positions governing Dative or Accusative.	80.	60-65
	Anomalies of Declension	87.	66-69
XVI.	Declension of Substantives: Recapitulation.		
	- Proper Names Prepositions with Gen-		
	itive	89.	70-75
	Proper Names. — Foreign Substantives	95.	76-78
XVII.	Gender of Substantives. — Interrogative Pro-		
	nouns and Adjectives Indirect State-		
******	ments and Questions	97.	79-88
X VIII.	Gender of Substantives (concluded). — Gen-		0
WIW	eral Remarks. — Double Gender	105.	89-91
	Relative Pronouns. — Irregular Weak Verbs	111.	92-99
AA.	Declension of Attributive Adjectives: Strong Form. — Conjugation of Strong Verbs .	118.	
vvi		126.	100-111
VVII	Passive Voice	120.	112-114
AAII.	— Strong Verbs: beißen Model	134.	115-118
VYIII	Possessive Pronouns.— Strong Verbs: bleiben	134.	115-110
3222111.	Model	142.	119, 120
XXIV.	Declension of Adjectives (concluded): Table,	142.	119, 120
	General Remarks. — Strong Verbs: ichießen		
	and schten Models	147.	121-124
XXV.	Comparison of Adjectives Strong Verbs:	-4/	
	frieren Model	154.	125-131
XXVI.	Demonstrative Pronouns. — Strong Verbs:	٠.	3 3
	fingen Model	162.	132-144
XXVII.	Indefinite Pronouns Strong Verbs: ipin=		
	nen and helfen Models	171.	145-159
D.	nen and heljen Models On Certain Adjectives and Pronouns	178.	160-162

LESSON		PAGE	\$\$
XXVIII.	Numerals: - Cardinals and Ordinals		
	Strong Verbs: ipremen Model	180.	163-167
XXIX.	Indefinite Numerals Strong Verbs: effen		
	Model	189.	168–181
XXX.	Derivative Numerals. — Time, Measure,		
	Date Strong Verbs: ichlagen Model .	196.	182-186
XXXI.	Adverbs Strong Verbs: fallen Model .	204.	187, 188
XXXII.			
	parison. — Table of Strong Verbs and		
	General Remarks on the same	210.	189-194
XXXIII.	Adverbs (continued): Idioms. — Irregular		
	Strong Verbs	217.	195, 196
	Modal Auxiliaries	225.	197-199
XXXV.	Modal Auxiliaries (continued): Idioms .	233.	200-202
XXXVI.	Compound Verbs	239.	203-208
	On Certain Prefixes	246.	209-213
	Reflexive and Impersonal Verbs	249.	214-220
	Prepositions governing the Genitive	257.	221-224
XXXIX.	4	264.	225-234
		273.	235-240
F.	Conjunctions. — Additional Remarks	282.	241
	PART II.		
	SYNTAX.		
XLI.	Syntax of the Cases Nominative and		
	Genitive	286.	242-247
XLII.	Syntax of the Cases Dative and Accusa-		,
	tive	291.	248-255
XLIII.	Indicative Mood: Syntax of its Tenses .	299.	256-262
XLIV.	Subjunctive and Conditional Moods	304.	263-268
XLV.	Imperative and Infinitive Moods	311.	269-272
XLVI.	Infinitive Mood (continued)	318.	273-278
XLVII.	The Participles	325.	279-284
XLVIII.	Concord and Apposition	334.	285-289
XLIX.	Apposition (continued): Appositive Ad-		
	jectives. —Syntax of the Preposition .	0.	290, 291
	Word-Order	348.	292-301
G.	Complex Sentences. — Clause-Order	360.	302-306

## PART III.

## WORD-FORMATION AND HISTORICAL SKETCH.

LESSO	N			PAGE	§§
LI.	Word-Formation: - Derivation and Comp	ositio	on	364.	307-321
LII.	Historical Sketch of the Language, Grimm'	s Lav	w,		
	Umlaut			374.	322-326
	APPENDICES.				
A.	Substantives of Maler Model with Umlaut			381.	17
В.	Masculine Monosyllables of Sund Model			381.	22
C.	Feminines of Sohn Model	•		382.	22
D.	Irregular Foreign Substantives			382.	22
E.	Neuter Monosyllables of Sund Model .			382.	22
F.	Weak Masculines not ending in -e .	•		383.	57
G.	Substantives of Mixed Declension .			383.	61
G.*	Double Plurals with Different Meaning			384.	64
H.	Plurals of Abstract Substantives			384.	66
I.	Exceptions to the Rules on Gender .			385.	80, 89, 90
Ţ.	Double Genders			388.	91
K.	Monosyllabic Adjectives without Umlaut in	Con	n-	3	
	parison			389.	125
L.	Strong Verbs not given in the Lists .			389.	192
	3			0,	
					PAGE
EXERC	cises in Composition	•	•		. 390
ABBRI	EVIATIONS	•	•	•	. 404
JOCAT	German-English	•	•	•	. 405
COAL	English-German	•	•	•	• 423
*** T T T T T T T					4.10

## INTRODUCTION.

		INTRODUCTION.	
		(For Reference only.)	NAME OF THE PARTY
		(W/W)	1187 A A 11 1 160 SING OF 11 1 160 MIN OF 1 16 1
	TH	HE GERMAN ALPHABET.	
Characters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the dif- ference between
A a	ah	like a in father; never as in ball, hat, care.	A and U.
8 6	bay	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like $p$ .	B and D; b, h, v and v.
C c	tsay	before ä, e, i, and n, like ts; otherwise like k; in words from French, before e and i, like ss.	© and ©; c and e.
Db	day	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like t.	D and D.
Œ e	ay	long, like a in game; short, like e in pen; when final or in unaccented prefixes, like short ă in Louisă.	© and ©; e and c.
F f	eff	as in English.	f and f.
G g	gay	always hard, before all vowels and before I, m, n, r, like g in give; at end of words and sylls., or before other consonants, like Germ. t; in words from French, before e and i, like s in pleasure.	(§ and (§,

Charac	cters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the dif- ference between
<b>S</b>		hah ee	always aspirated before vowels, as in hat; silent before consonants, after t, between vowels, and when final.  long, like e in he; short, like i in skin.	b, b, v and y.
3	į	yot	like y in yet; in words from French, like s in pleasure.	
R	ť	kah		R and R.
B	1	ell		
M	m	em		M and M;
N	n	en	as in English.	m and w. N and R.
O	ø	0		
P	þ	pay		
Q	q	koo		
N	r	err	like Eng. r with strong guttural roll; formed by making the tongue convex, and checking the breath by gently pressing the middle of the tongue against the roof of the mouth.	R and R;
6	Íŝ	ess	before vowels, like z in zone, or s in daisy; before consonants, and when final, like s in yes; but see fch, ft, fp, below. § is used at the end of words, otherwise f.	f and f.

Characters. Name.		Sound.	Observe the dif- ference between
T t	tay	as in Eng.; th also like t; ti in foreign words, preceding another vowel, like tse.	Avenue between
11 и	00	long, like oo in boot; short, like oo in foot.	u and u.
W v	fow	like Eng. f in Germ. words; in foreign words, like Eng. v.	B and B; v, b, h, y.
W w	vay	like Eng. v, except after st and z, when pron. like Eng. w.	
X g	iks	like ks, even when initial.	g and r.
P h	<i>ypsilon</i>	like the Germ. vowel i; or like ü.	
3 3	tset	like ts.	1

## MODIFIED VOWELS (UMLAUTS).

Characte	rs.	Sound,
Ü (Ne)	ä	like the Germ. vowel e. (The forms Me, etc., are replaced by M, etc., in modern orthography.)
Ö (Ot)	ö	about like u in murder; nearly like French eu, but with lips rounded and nearly closed.
ü (Ue)	ü	nearly like French u; there is no corresponding sound in Eng. Pronounced with lips rounded and pointed, as for whistling.

### DOUBLE VOWELS.

Cha	racters.			Sound.
Na	aa	like	long	g a (a in farm).
<b>E</b> e	ee	"	"	e (a " care).
Oo	00	_		o (never like Eng. 00).

### DIPHTHONGS.

Characte	rs.	Sound.
<b>Qli</b>	ai	
Ei	ei	$\left.\begin{array}{c} \text{like } i \text{ in f} i \text{re.} \end{array}\right.$
Nu	au	like ou in hour.
Ün (Aeu)	äu	],,,
Eu	eu	like oy in joy.
	ie	like <i>ie</i> in field (not tound at the beginning of words); in the unaccented sylls, of foreign
		words, i and e are pronounced separately.

## CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

Characters.		Sound.
Ch	ф	after a, v, u, au, like ch in Scotch loch; softer after ä, e, i, ö, ü, äu, eu; it does not occur at the beginning, except in foreign words, where it is pronounced like k before a, v, u, and like final ch before e, i. In French words it has the sound of sh, as in French; ch when in one syll. == x.

Characters.		Sound.
	ď	like Eng. ck; when divided between two lines, is written f-f; not found at beginning.
Pf	pf	pronounce both p and f distinctly.
Ph	ph	as in Eng.; in foreign words only.
Sh	ſф	like sh in Eng.; but when the § is in a distinct syll., pron. separately.
Sþ	ſμ	like soft shp in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like sp.
©ł	ft	like soft sht in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like st.
	ពី ខ	like ss; ß replaces f after long vowels in the middle of a word, and always when final. Hence Fuß (long u), gen. Fußeß; but Fluß (short u), gen. Flußeß; and beißen, biß, ges bissen. Diphthongs are always followed by ß. Not found at the beginning.
		like ts. It stands for 33. Not found at the beginning.

#### EXAMPLES OF PRONUNCIATION.

### SIMPLE VOWELS.

A long: gar, bat, fam; short: falt, Mann, Kamm.

E long: her, den, dem; short: Herr, benn, Bett.

In formative sylls. foll. by a consonant shorter still: Fenster, haben, Esel.

In final syll. not foll. by a consonant, like ă in Louisă: Ende, Habe, Gabe. Also in prefixes, as in the first syll. of gehangen, gefallen, Gedanken, befallen, bedenken.

3 long: mir, bir, Mine; short: still, mit, bitten.

O long: Ton, loben, holen; short: Tonne, fommen, foll.

11 long: Hut, du, Blutes; short: Mutter, bumm, unter.

P long: Dynami't, Poly'p; short: Myrte, Syste'm.

## Double Vowels (all long).

Aa: Haar, Aal, Staat. | Ee: Klee, leer, Beet. Do: Boot, Mood, Lood.

## Modified Vowels (Umlauts).

V long: Bar, fame, prägen; short: hatte, Kamme, fallt. Ö long: Öl, Töne, Ströme; short: fönnte, Götter, öffnen. U long: Hute, für, Übel; short: Hüte, füllen, muffen.

## DIPHTHONGS (ALL LONG).

Ni : Mai, Hain, Main.

Gi : mein, heiter, bleiben.

Au: Saut, Mue, blau.

Un: Saute, Baume, lauten.

Gu: beute, neu, Leute.

Je: bie, hier, tief (in some foreign words, pron. i-e: Familie, Spanien,

Linie).

#### SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

б	final $(= p)$		٠			•	ab, Grab, ob.
	soft (= ts)						Cafar, Ceremonie, Cicero.
b	final $(=t)$						Rad, Tod, Lied.
g	$ \begin{cases} (= g \text{ in } giv \\ (= ch) \\ (= zh \text{ in } F \end{cases} $	re) . rencl	1 W	· ords			geben, beginnen, Tages. Tag, bog, gütig, Magb. Genie, Gage, Page.
							Höhe, Lohe, Krähe, führen, fah, Bahn, Thüre, Thaler, Rat(h), Mut(h).
							jeder, jemand, Jakob. Zakousie, Zournak.
r			٠	•	٠	. {	rebe, murren, Paar, Stern, Erbe, Prediger.
	initial and	med	ial	(=	s	in	Sonne, dieser, Sattel, Häuser.
ŝ	final (= s in						
t	in foreign	word	s 1	befo	re	i	
	(=ts).						national, Patient.
t	in Germ. v	words word	s (= .s(=	= f ) = v)	).		von, Vater, Vetter. November, dividieren, Advokat.
n	$\left\{ \left( = \text{Eng. } z \right) \right\}$	v) . nd 3 =	- E	ng.	w)		wenn, wer, wo, wie. Schwester, schwer, zwei, Zweck.
							Xerres, Xenophon.
3	(=ts).		,•	•	•		Zierde, zu, zwanzig, Zorn.
		_	_	_			

REMARK. — In the above list, only those consonants are given, which differ in pronunciation from their equivalents in English. Below are given also certain consonantal combinations, most of which do not occur in English.

## CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

	1	garacter, Chor, Christ.
		jiru'rg, Chemie'.
ф <		t, Loches, hoch, Buch, Blech, bleich, ich, Löcher, Bücher.
	in French words $(= sh)$ . (In same syll. $= x$ ) Do	arlatan, Chicane.
	(in same syll. $= x$ ) Do	ichs, Ochs, Lachs, Achfe.
þf	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	jerd, Pfennig, hüpfen.
	[6	chaf, Schnee, Schiff; but
		pron. § separately when
íá	(= sh)	it belongs to a different
		it belongs to a different syll., as: Häußechen, Gänße
		chen.
m	initial (- abt asftanad)	,
ft		and, stehen, Stengel, Stube.
(p	initial (= shp softened) ipi	üren, Sprüche, Sporn.
fi	(preceding vowel short) mi	issen, küssen, lassen, Messe.
ſ	medial (preceding vowellong) gr	ößer, stoßen, fraßen.
	final (preceding yowellong) M	ลน์ arny โรแซ์ (cen โรแซ็อลิ)
BY	proceding vower rong)	will grob, Out (Sem. Outes).
	final (preceding vowel long) $\mathfrak{M}$ final (preceding vowel short) $\left\{\mathfrak{F}^{\mathfrak{C}}\right\}$	ik (gen. Falles), Hok (gen.
ſ	( " ) (	Hopes), Fluk (gen. Fluffes).

### A. GENERAL REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

- r. The acquisition of a correct and pure pronunciation of the vowels is the most important point to be attended to; especially that of the vowel  $\mathfrak{a}$ , which must never have a shade of the sound of the Eng. a in hat, ball, or cane. Look after your vowels, and the consonants will look after themselves.
- 2. The most difficult vowel-sounds are the *Umlauts*, or *modified vowels*, especially **ü** and **ü**, which must be learned from the teacher.

- 3. The only difficult consonant-sounds are:
  - r. with strong guttural roll.
  - i, initial, and medial before vowels, which is like s in daisy, or z in zone.
  - & final = ss in English.
  - th (and g final), which must be learned from the teacher.
- 4. The pronunciation of the following consonants, though not difficult, differs from the English pronunciation:
  - $\mathfrak{h}$  final =  $\mathfrak{p}$ .  $\mathfrak{g}$  final = p.  $\mathfrak{g}$  before  $\ddot{\mathfrak{g}}$ ,  $\mathfrak{g}$ ,  $\dot{\mathfrak{g}} = ts$ . h final = t. g never like g in gesture.
  - a final see above.
- $\hat{v} = f$  in Germ. words. w = v, except after f d + v and z = ts.
- 5. There are no silent letters in German, except h before consonants, after t (see below), and between vowels; thus e is never silent. Hence End-c, Gab-e are dissylls.; and a, f in Gnade. Anabe must be heard.

#### B. QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

Long: Double vowels and diphthongs are always long. Simple vowels are long before a single consonant; before a consonant preceded by \$\frac{1}{2}\$; when not followed by a consonant; also before and after th.

EXCEPTIONS: Articles, pronouns, prepositions, and other unaccented monosylls., also unaccented prefixes, and inflexional sylls. in e and i, have the vowel short before a single consonant.

SHORT: Vowels followed by a double consonant (but see note 2 below), or by more than one consonant, vowels of unaccented words and prefixes, and of formative and terminal sylls., are short; also most vowels before to, and all vowels before in.

EXCEPTIONS: Long vowels before several consonants: Moler, eagle; erft, 'first'; Geburt, 'birth'; Herb, 'hearth'; Herbe, 'herd'; Husten, 'cough'; Moster, 'convent'; Krebe, 'crab'; Mash, 'maid'; Mond, 'moon'; nebst, 'besides'; Obst, 'fruit'; Ost, 'east'; Ostern, 'Easter'; Bapst, 'pope'; Herb, 'horse'; Brobst, 'prebendary'; Schuster, 'shoemaker'; Schwert, 'sword'; stete, 'continually'; tobt, 'dead' (now spelt tot); Trost, 'consolation'; Bost, 'governor'; Büsse, 'desert'; also Stabt, 'town,' which has the vowel short in the sing., lengthens it in the plur. Städte. Long vowels before st. ssunder, 'to curse'; shoth, 'high' (but short in Hodhett, wedding); Schwadh, 'disgrace'; Sprache, 'speech.'

Notes.—I. Long radical vowels remain long even before two or more consonants; thus: [oben, (bu) [ob-ft, (er) [ob-t, ge-lob-t, all with long vowel, according to the quantity of the stem.

- 2. Before \$\text{f}\$ all vowels are short; before \$\text{f}\$ medial, long; before \$\text{f}\$ final, \$\text{a}\$, \$\text{o}\$, \$\text{t}\$ are sometimes long, sometimes short; \$\text{e}\$ and \$\text{i}\$ always short.
  - 3. The vowel a is always long before r.

## EXERCISE IN QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

(Accent on first syll. of dissylls.)

Haare, Art, effen, soben, lobt, Art, Alee, Bier, thun, dumm, Moos, Nebel, Ofen, Öfen, öbe, öfter, nett, näht, kann, los, Kahn, Blätter, ähnlich, Liebe, über, dünn, Düne, Loos, dann, Däne, Ohr, geworden, Uhr, Beere, während, mehr, der, das, es, denn, Kern, gerne, munter, Stadt, Städte, Statt, Staat, Bett, Beet, müffen, Füße, Flüffe, hören, hehr, her, Heer, Kämme, käme.

#### C. ACCENTUATION.

The principal accent is on the *radical* syll. in simple Germ. words, whether primitive or derived.

EXCEPTIONS:—I. Substantives in -ei have the principal accent on the termination.

- 2. The following adjectives are accented on the last syll. but one: lebendig, wahrhaftig, basamish, lutherish; also verbs in -ieren.
- 3. Most foreign substantives which have undergone a change of form are accented on the last syll., unless they end in -e, -el, -er, -er, when they are generally accented on the last syll. but one. Those in -ie are accented on the last syll., except those which, like Famili-e, Tragöbi-e, Somöbi-e, Sini-e, are directly from the Latin, the i-e being pron. separately.

Notes. - I. With these few exceptions, formative sylls, are always unaccented.

2. In compound substantives, adjectives and verbs, the first component generally has the principal accent; in other compounds (prepositions, adverbial conjunctions, etc.), generally the last component.

3. The following prefixes are never accented: be-, er-, emp-, ent-,

ge-, ber-, zer-.

#### EXERCISES IN ACCENTUATION.

- 1. Simple words: Reinigung, Chrlichfeit, Esel, Finsternis, gütig, sparssam, Sparsamkeit, Heimat, Reichtum, reinlich, Reinlichkeit, Tugend, tugendshaft, Arzuei.
- 2. Compound words: Ausgang, aufstehen, Angenblick, entgehen, Aufeenthalt, aufbehalten, Berdienst, Geselle, Eisenhammer, merkwürdig, heraus, hineingehen, Schwarzwald, daher, anfänglich, Bettelstab, Montag, Mitleid, ausgegangen.
- 3. Foreign: Student, Professor, Professoren, Melodie, Familie, Instrument, Altar, Kardinal, Nation, national, Universität, Soldat, marschieren, religiös, Monument, monumental.

#### D. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Use of Capitals. The following words are written with capital letters:

- r. Words beginning a paragraph or sentence (after a period), and the first word of each line in poetry.
- 2. All substantives and words used as such, as: ber Beise, 'the wise man'; bas Sterben, 'dying,' etc.

NOTE. — Substantives used as adverbs are not written with capitals, as: morgens, abends.

3. The personal pronoun and possessive adjective of the third plur, when used in address.

NOTE. — The pronouns of the second person (sing. and plur.) are often written with a capital, and must be so in writing to persons.

4. Ordinal numerals and pronouns in titles, as: Friedrich ber Große, 'Frederick the Great'; Rarl der Fünfte, 'Charles

the Fifth'; Ihre Majestät, 'Her Majesty'; Seine Durche laucht, 'His Serene Highness.'

5. Adjectives from names of persons, as: die Goetheichen Gebichte, 'Goethe's poems.'

Notes. — r. Adjectives, with the above exceptions, are never written with capitals, as: prenfition, 'Prussian'; english, 'English.'

2. The numeral cin, 'one,' is sometimes spelt with a capital, to distinguish it from the indef. art. cin, 'a,' 'an.'

#### E. RECENT CHANGES IN ORTHOGRAPHY.

These changes relate chiefly to the rejection of lengthening h after t, which takes place:

- 1. in derivative sylls.: Königtum, Ungefüm, etc.
- 2. after t medial and final: Atem, Rat, rot, wert, etc.
- 3. before diphthongs: Zier, teuer, Zeil, etc.
- 4. before short vowels: Zurm, etc.

NOTE.—In the majority of text-books, the pupil will still meet with the old orthography; but in the High School German Reader, and in the present senior author's editions of texts, the \$\mathbf{t}\$ is invariably rejected after \$\mathbf{t}\$.

#### F. ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

- r. The use of Italics being unknown in German print, an emphasized word is printed with larger spaces between the letters, as: ich habe nur einen Sohn, 'I have but one son.'
- 2. The double vowels never take Umlaut; hence: Boot, plur. Böte.
- 3. The modified vowels as capitals are always written \(\mathbb{U}\), \(\mathbb{U}\), not (as formerly) \(\mathbb{A}\)e, \(\mathbb{E}\)e, \(\mathbb{I}\)e.

## THE GERMAN SCRIPT.

SIMPLE LETTERS.

A n	Jj	PfB
L.b	DP	Th
LN	L l	Uñ
De de	Min	W so
6 m	OU m	Min
Sof	0 0	RE
Gy	f g	My
Gf	Of of	33
Fi	R n	

**UMLAUTS** 

A'á Öö Üü

DOUBLE VOWELS.

Aa aa fu uu Oo oo

DIPHTHONGS.

Ai ai fi ni in Airañ Air i'ir firmi

CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

Lfyful Pfzf Pfzf Pyfyf OLMHBZ

## Observe carefully the Difference between: CAPITALS.

A and U; L and L; G and G;

#### SMALL LETTERS.

and i, and as; y and y; y and o; a and a

## SPECIMEN OF GERMAN SCRIPT.\*

July Jinn. 2. Linn Millian ind ifn

Jinly Jinn. 2. Linn Millian ind ifn

Eind nowner ynflann finn. 3. Main

Lunilan Jul luin Linf, when an ful

min Muffan. 4. Unfan Sanind nown

Lan Lufann Linfah Orfüland. 5. Winfa

Lin Millan Linfah Müllfan. 6. Min

Jim Millan Linfah Müllfan. 6. Min

Jim Millan Linfah Müllfan. 6. Min

Jim Millan Linfah Müllfan. 6. Min

<sup>\*</sup> These sentences, with the exception of the last two, are identical with those of Ex. IV., A.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the angularity of the small letters.

- 2. Observe the manner in which the letters are joined to each other.
- 3. The strokes connecting the different letters should be made longer than those connecting the different parts of the same letter. This is particularly necessary where several M's or M's follow each other.
- 4. Never omit the hook over  $\mathcal{W}$ , which alone distinguishes it from  $\mathcal{W}$ .
  - 5. The most difficult letters to make neatly are

R, D, M, P, N, M; n, k, iv, w, w, fl, fs.

## GERMAN GRAMMAR.

## PART FIRST.

#### LESSON I.

1. Present Indicative of haben, to have.

Sing. ich habe, I have
bu haft, thou hast
ev hat, he has
fie hat, she has
es hat, it has

Plur. wir haben, we have
ihr habt, ye have
fie haben, they have

have ich, have I? hast bu, hast thou hat er, has he hat sie, has she hat es, has it haven wir, have we have ihr, have ye haven sie, have they

- 2. Rule 1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as: ich habe, I have; er hat, he has; sie haben, they have.
- 2. Words used in a partitive sense, i. e., indicating only a part, not the whole, of anything, have no article before them in German, and the English some or any remains untranslated, as:

Has he (any) bread? Sat er Brot? I have (some) gold. In have Gold.

#### Vocabulary.

bread, Brot meat, Fleisch gold, Gold flour, Mehl milk, Milch silver, Silber water, Wasser wine, Wein and, und or, ober

also, auch
what, was?
but, aber
yes, ja
no, nein
not, nicht

#### EXERCISE I.

- A. 1. hat er Brot? 2. Ja, er hat Brot, aber wir haben Fleisch. 3. haben sie Milch? 4. Nein, aber sie haben Mehl. 5. hat sie Gold? 6. Sie hat Gold und sie hat auch Silber. 7. Er hat Wasser, aber ich habe Wein.
- B. 1. Have we any bread? 2. No, but she has some bread. 3. Have they any gold or silver? 4. They have some silver. 5. Has he water and wine? 6. He has only wine; he has not water. 7. I have milk and flour, but I have not meat.

#### ORAL EXERCISE I.

(The pupils will supply the answer to each question, with books closed.)

1. Was hat er? 2. Was haben wir? 3. Was haben sie? 4. Was hat sie?

#### LESSON II.

### USE OF CASES. - DEFINITE ARTICLE.

3. Use of the Cases. — Every declinable word in German has two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*, and in each number four cases, viz.: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative.

The Nominative is the same as the English Nominative, or Subjective, and answers the question who? or what? as: Who (or what) is there? The boy (the book).

The Genitive corresponds to the English Possessive, or Objective with of, and answers to the question whose? of whom? or of what? as: Whose book? The boy's book, the book of the boy.

The *Dative* corresponds to the Indirect Object in English, and answers the question to whom? as: To whom does he give the book? He gives you (dat.) the book, he gives the boy (dat.) the book, he gives it to the boy (dat.).

The Accusative corresponds to the Direct Object in English, and answers the question whom? or what? as: Whom (what) do you see? I see the man (the house).

## 4. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Sin	gular.		Plural.	
MA	SC. F	EM. N	EUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom. be	er i	oie	bas	bie, the	
Gen. be	es t	er	bes	ber, of the	
Dat. be	em t	er	bem	ben, (to, for) the	
Acc. be	en t	ie	bas	bie, the	

- 5. Rule 1. The Definite Article, like every determinative word, agrees with its substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, as: ber Mann, 'the man' (masc.); bie Frau, 'the woman' (fem.); bas Rind, 'the child' (neuter).
- 2. Articles and other determinative words should be repeated before each substantive in the singular, as: Der Mann und die Frau; ber Lehrer und ber Schüler.

## VOCABULARY.\*

(N. B. Always learn the definite article with each German substantive.)

dog, ber Hund
boy, der Anabe
teacher, der Lehrer
teachers, die Lehrer
scholar, pupil, ber Schüler
scholars, pupils, die Schüler
stick, der Stock
mother, die Mutter
pen, feather, die Feder

flower, die Blume horse, das Pferd book, das Buch girl, das Mädchen girls, die Mädchen knife, das Messer knives, die Messer who, wer? only, nur

<sup>\*</sup> The article is omitted in the English portions of all Vocabularies. being indeclinable.

#### EXERCISE IL

- A. 1. Hat sie das Buch ober die Feder? 2. Wir haben das Buch, aber sie hat die Feder. 3. Der Lehrer hat die Messer der Schüler. 4. Dem Lehrer der Mädchen. 5. Die Schüler haben den Hund, aber sie haben nicht das Pferd. 6. Ich habe den Stock, das Buch und die Feder; aber der Knabe hat nur das Buch und die Feder.
- B. 1. Have we not the book of the mother? 2. We have the book of the mother. 3. Have the pupils the dog and the horse, or have they only the horse? 4. They have the horse, but they have not the dog. 5. Has the mother of the girls the flower? 6. She has not the flower, but she has the book of the girls, and they have the pen. 7. To the mother and to the teacher.

#### ORAL EXERCISE II.

1. Was hat der Hund? 2. Wer hat den Hund? 3. Wer hat Schüler? 4. Was haben die Lehrer? 5. Was hat das Mädchen? 6. Hat er den Stock?

#### LESSON III.

Diefer MODEL. - IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF haben, to have.

6. Declension of diefer, this, that.

		Singula	r.	Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	dieser	biefe	dieses, this	diese, these	
Gen.	dieses	dieser	dieses, of this	dieser, of these	
Dat.	diesem	dieser	biesem, (to, for) this	diesen, (to, for) these	
Acc.	diesen	diese	dieses, this	diese, these	

In the same way decline jener, that; jeder, every; welcher, which?

REMARK. — The accusative of declinable words differs in form from the nominative in the masculine singular only.

## 7. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF haben, to have.

Sing. ich hatte, I had
bu hattest, thou hadst
er hatte, he had
sie hatte, she had
es hatte, it had
Plur. wir hatten, we had

Plur. wir hatten, we had ihr hattet, ye had fie hatten, they had

hatte ich, had I? hattest bu, hadst thou hatte er, had he hatte sie, had she hatte es, had it hatten wir, had we hattet ihr, had ye hatten sie, had they

#### VOCABULARY.

brother, der Bruder garden, der Garten gardens, die Gärten bone, der Anochen bones, die Anochen reader, der Leser readers, die Leser man, der Mann son, der Sohn father, der Bater

woman, die Frau sister, die Schwester daughter, die Tochter daughters, die Töchter newspaper, die Zeitung house, das Haus two, zwei three, drei four, vier

#### EXERCISE III.

- A. 1. Ich hatte diese Zeitung. 2. Dieser Hund hatte Knochen. 3. Dieser Lehrer hat vier Schüler, aber jener Lehrer hat nur drei. 4. Der Bruder dieser Frau hatte jenes Haus, und er hatte auch jene Gärten. 5. Jedes Buch hat Leser. 6. Welches Buch hatten diese Mädchen? 7. Der Schwester und dem Bruder.
- B. 1. Which newspaper had the father of these girls?2. The dog had these bones, but he had not this stick.3. Which stick has this man?4. Which man has this stick?5. This father had three daughters, but that woman had only

two. 6. The son of that woman had this dog and horse. 7. We had the book of those pupils. 8. To the brother of those girls.

#### ORAL EXERCISE III.

Welches Mädchen hatte die Zeitung?
 Welches Buch hatten die Mädchen?
 Wer hatte das Buch dieser Schüler?
 Welcher Feder hatte dieser Knabe?
 Welchen Hund hatte Jener Mann?
 Was hat dieser Lehrer?

### LESSON IV.

Mein MODEL.—INDEFINITE ARTICLE.—PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF fein, to be.

8. Declension of mein, my.

		Singular.		Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.		ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	mein	meine	mein		meine, my
Gen.	mein <b>es</b>	mein <b>er</b>	meincs		meiner, of my
Dat.	meinem	mein <b>er</b>	meinem		meinen, (to, for) my
Acc.	meinen	mein <b>e</b>	mein	i	meine, my

9. The following words are declined like mein: fein, 'no'; fein, 'his, its'; ihr, 'her, its, their'; unfer, 'our.'

The indefinite article ein, eine, ein is also declined in the same way, but has no plural, thus:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	ein	eine	ein
Gen.	eines	einer	eines
Dat.	einem	einer	einem
Acc.	einen	eine	ein

REMARK. — This model differs from the biefer model only in having no distinctive ending in the nom. sing. masc. and neuter, or in the acc. neuter. Thus, while we say biefer

Mann, but bieses Buch, we say ein (fein, mein, etc.) Mann, and also ein (fein, etc.) Buch.

10. Present and Imperfect Indicative of fein, to be.

Present. Imperfect. Sing. ich bin. I am ich war, I was bu bift, thou art bu warft, thou wast er ist, he is er war, he was fie ift, she is fie war, she was es ist, it is es war, it was Plur. wir find, we are wir waren, we were ihr feid, ye are ihr waret, ye were fie find, they are fie waren, they were bin ich, am I? etc. war ich. was I? etc.

11. Time before Place. Rule. — In German sentences, expressions of time always precede those of place, as:

This man was here to-day. Dieser Mann war heute hier.

12. Place of the Negative nint. Rule. — The negative nint precedes that member of the sentence which it negatives. Hence:

Er war gestern nicht bier, he was not here yesterday.

13. Agreement of Pronouns. Rule. — Pronouns agree in gender, number and person with the substantive to which they refer, as:

Der Hut (masc.) ist nicht groß, er ist klein, the hat is not large, it is small; but die Zeitung (fem.) ist nicht groß, sie ist klein, the newspaper is not large, it is small.

The English pronoun it must therefore be rendered by er when it refers to a masc. substantive, by fie when it refers to a fem., and by es when it refers to a neuter.

14. OBSERVE: In the sentence 'the boy is good,' good is a predicative adjective.

Rule. - Predicative Adjectives are not declined.

15. A substantive following the verb to be is of course subject, not object, and must therefore be put in the nominative, and not in the accusative, as: Er ist ein (not einen) Mann, he is a man.

#### VOCABULARY.

friend, der Freund
gentleman, der Herr
bird, der Bogel
carriage,
wagon,
carriages, die Wagen
city, die Stadt
dress,
garment,
das Wetter
old, alt
pleasant, agreeable, angenehm
great, large, big, tall, groß

pretty, hübsch
cold, kalt
small, little, klein
tired, mübe
beautiful, fine, schön
strong, stark
idle, träge
warm, warm
windy, windig
very, very much, schr
yesterday, ge'stern
ehm to-day, heute
still, yet, noch (referring to time)
for, benn

#### EXERCISE IV.

A. 1. Ein Bater und sein Kind sind jetzt hier. 2. Eine Mutter und ihr Kind waren gestern hier. 3. Mein Bruder hat kein Buch, aber er hat ein Messer. 4. Unser Freund war der Lehrer dieser Schüler. 5. Diese Frau ist meine Schwester, und sie ist auch die Mutter dieser Mädchen. 6. Bir sind klein, aber sie sind groß. 7. Unser Lehrer ist müde, denn seine Schüler waren sehr träge. 8. Unsere Stadt ist sehr schön, aber sie ist nicht sehr groß. 9. Meinem Bater und meiner Mutter.

B. 1. I am the sister of those girls. 2. Where are my books and newspaper? 3. Our brother and his dog are big and strong, but our sister and her bird are small and pretty.

4. Which gentleman was here yesterday? 5. The friend of our brothers was here to-day, but he was not here yesterday.

6. My sister had her book, but she had not her pen. 7. Our father and mother have still their carriage, but they have no horse. 8. The weather was cold and windy, but it is now warm and pleasant. 9. To my brother and sister.

#### ORAL EXERCISE IV.

1. Wo ist unsere Mutter? 2. Wann war sie hier? 3. Wer war gestern hier? 4. Was ist sein Vater? 5. Wer ist die Mutter dieser Schüler? 6. Wer sind diese Mädchen?

#### LESSON V.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:  $-\mathfrak{M}\mathfrak{aler}$  MODEL, OR  $-\mathfrak{l}$ ,  $-\mathfrak{m}$ ,  $-\mathfrak{m}$ ,  $-\mathfrak{r}$  STEMS.

16. Declension of her Maler, the painter.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. ber Maler, the painter Gen. bes Malers, the painter's, of the painter

Dat. bem Maler, (to, for) the painter

Acc. ben Maler, the painter

bie Maler, the painters ber Maler, the painters', of the painters ben Malern, (to, for) the painters

die Maler, the painters

Observe: The only changes are additional -3 in the gen. sing., and -11 in the dat. pl.

17. In the same way are declined:

- 1. Masc. and neuter substantives ending in -el, -em, -en, -er, and diminutives in -figur and -lein (these last being always neuter).
- 2. Neuters beginning with Ge- and ending in -e, as: bas Gemälbe, the painting.
- 3. Two feminines: die Mutter, the mother, and die Tochter, the daughter.
  - 4. Der Rase, the cheese.
- (a) But many masculines with  $\mathfrak{a}$ ,  $\mathfrak{o}$ ,  $\mathfrak{u}$  in the root, the two feminines Mutter and Todyter, and one neuter, bas Moster, 'the convent,' take also Umlaut (modified vowel) in the plural, as:—

Sing. N. D. A. Bruder, G. Bruders; Plur. N. G. A. Brüder, D. Brüdern.

- (b) Substantives in -n do not add n in the dat. plur., as: Sing. N. D. A. Mädden, G. Mäddens; Plur. N. G. D. A. Mädden.
- (c) In feminine substantives all cases are alike in the sing. Hence, Mutter and Tochter are thus declined:

Sing. N. G. D. A. Mutter; Plur. N. G. A. Mütter, D. Müttern. Sing. N. G. D. A. Tochter; Plur. N. G. A. Töchter, D. Töchtern.

Further examples:

Der Bogel, the bird: Sing. N. D. A. Bogel, G. Bogels; Plur. N. G. A. Bögel, D. Bögeln.

Der Wagen, the carriage: Sing. N. D. A. Wagen, G. Wagens; Plur. N. G. D. A. Wagen.

Das Fenster, the window: Sing. N. D. A. Fenster, G. Fensters; Plur. N. G. A. Fenster, D. Fenstern.

Das Gemälbe, the painting: Sing. N. D. A. Gemälbe, G. Gemälbeß; Plur. N. G. A. Gemälbe, D. Gemälben.

Decline with Umlaut: ber Bater, the father; ber Schwager, the brother-in-law; ber Apfel, the apple; ber Garten, the garden; ber Mantel, the cloak.

NOTE. — For a complete list of Substantives of this declension that take Umlaut in the plur., see App. A.

Decline without Umlaut: ber Lehrer, the teacher; ber Schüler, the scholar; ber Abler, the eagle; bas Messer, the knife; ber Sommer, the summer; ber Winter, the winter; ber Onkel, the uncle.

Note. — The preposition in is contracted with the dat. sing. masc. and neut. of the def. art., when not emphasized, thus: in bem sarten, contr. im Sarten; in bem Sarten, contr. im Sarten; in bem Sarten, contr. im

18. Rule of Construction. — If the verb is in a simple tense, the predicate adjective comes at the end.

# Vocabulary.

tree, ber Baum
fire, das Feuer
spring, der Frühling
autumn, der Herbst
stove, der Ofen
diligent, industrious, fleißig
poor, arm
hot, heiß
ill, frank
rich, reich

ripe, reif
weak, schwach
satisfied,
contented,
quickly, schnell
not at all, gar nicht
not yet, noch nicht
with, mit (gov. dat.)
in, in (gov. dat.)
whose, treisen?

#### EXERCISE V.

A. 1. Die Bäter bieser Mädchen waren mübe. 2. Es war gestern kalt, aber wir hatten kein Feuer im Ofen. 3. Die Gesmälbe bieses Malers sind gar nicht schon. 4. Unsere Gärten sind schon, benn bas Wetter ist warm. 5. Die Mutter bieser Schüler war arm. 6. Mit den Flügeln bieser Bögel. 7. Die Schüler

biefes Lehrers waren frank. 8. Die Mäntel meiner Töchter find alt. 9. Die Garten in Diefer Stadt find fehr ichon.

B. 1. The father of this girl was my teacher. 2. Our father and mother are old and weak. 3. The gardens of my brother-in-law are very beautiful, but his carriages are not at all beautiful. 4. My uncle is not at all satisfied with his daughters. 5. These apples are not yet ripe. 6. The teacher of these pupils was not very rich. 7. With the wings of this bird. 8. The weather is hot in the summer, but it is cold in the winter. 9. The eagle is a bird.

#### ORAL EXERCISE V.

1. Wann ist das Wetter kalt? 2. Mit welchen Schülern sind die Lehrer zufrieden? 3. In wessen Haus sind die Brüder dieses Mädchens? 4. Wo waren sie im Herbst? 5. Sind diese Mädchen träge oder fleiszig? 6. Ist die Blume schön?

## LESSON VI.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT OF worden, to become. - CON-STRUCTION OF PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

19. Present and Imperfect of werden, to become.

Present Indicative.

Sing. ich werde, I become

bu wirst, thou becomest er wird, he becomes

Plur. wir werden, we become iht werbet, ye become fie werben, they become Present Subjunctive.

ich werde du werdest er werde mir merden ihr werdet fie werden

Imperfect Indicative.

Imperfect Subjunctive.

ich würde Sing, ich wurde or ward, I became du wurdest or wardst, thou becamest du würdest er wurde or ward, he became er würde mir mürben Plur. wir wurden, we became ibr würdet ihr wurdet, ye became

fie wurden, they became

fie würden

OBSERVE: 1. the persistent e in the subjunctive endings;

- 2. the Umlaut in the imperfect subjunctive;
- 3. the second form (ward, etc.) in the singular only of the imperfect indicative.
  - 20. Construction of Principal Sentences. Place OF VERB AND SUBJECT.

Rule. — In principal sentences containing a statement, the verb is the second idea in the sentence, as:

SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.
Şh	bin	hier.	Cr	ijt	frank.
I	am	here.	He	is	ill.

OBSERVE: 1. The verb is the second idea, not necessarily the second word, in the sentence. Thus the subject with its attributes and enlargements constitutes but one idea, as:

> SUBJECT AND ATTRIBUTE. VERB. ADVERB. Der Bater biefes Lehrers bier. war

2. The subject (or subjects) with attributes and enlargements may come either in the first or in the third place, as:

SUBJECT. VERB. ADVERB. ADVERB. VERB. SUBJECT. Ach bin hier; or: Hier bin idi.

3. The predicate adjective is placed last, when the verb is in a simple tense, as:

I am satisfied with my daughters. Ich bin mit meinen Töchtern zufrieben.

REMARKS.—1. Any other member of the sentence may occupy the first place, but in that case the subject is thrown after the verb, which still occupies the second place. Thus:

adv. phrase. verb. subject. predicate. Im Frühling sind die Gärten schön.

2. In English, on the contrary, the subject precedes the verb, which is, in such cases, in the *third* place, as:

ADV. PHRASE. SUBJECT. VERB. PREDICATE. In the spring the gardens are beautiful.

- 3. This fixed position of the verb as the second idea in every German principal sentence should never be forgotten.
- 4. The conjunctions und, aber, over, benn do not count as members of the sentence.

## VOCABULARY.

sleigh, der Schlitten
thunder-storm, das Gewitter
attentive, aufmerksam
green, grün
new, neu
young, jung
inattentive, unaufmerksam
unpleasant,
disagreeable,

dissatisfied, ungufrieben after, nach (with dat.) therefore, on that account, beshalb never, nie so, so why, warum? again, wieber well, wohl

#### EXERCISE VI.

A. 1. Nach dem Gewitter wurde das Wetter schön und warm. 2. Gestern wurden meine Mutter und ihre Schwester krank, aber jetzt sind sie wohl. 3. Sein Vater hat ein Haus und einen Garten und er hat auch Wagen und Schlitten. 4. Das Wetter ward gestern unangenehm und windig; aber es ist heute wieder ganz schön und warm. 5. Der Lehrer wird unzufrieden, benn seine Schüler werden unausmerksam. 6. Warum wird unser Bater jetzt so schwach? 7. Er wird sehr alt, und wird deshalb auch schwach. 8. Unsere Mutter ist nicht jung, aber sie ist noch schön. 9. Waren die Brüder dieser Lehrer in Berlin oder in Hamburg? 10. Sie waren in Hamburg, aber sie waren nie in Berlin.

B. 1. The brother of these pupils became our teacher. 2. Teachers often become dissatisfied with their pupils. 3. In the spring our garden becomes beautiful. 4. Our brothersin-law were in Paris; they are now in London. 5. This tree becomes green very quickly. 6. The pupils of this teacher became very attentive. 7. My daughters are not contented with their cloaks. 8. In the autumn (the)\* apples become ripe. 9. The father of these girls becomes old and weak. 10. With the feathers of an eagle. 11. We became rich, but he became poor. 12. The eagle is a bird; it is large and strong. 13. The cloaks of those girls were new, but now they are getting (say: become) old.

#### ORAL EXERCISE VI.

Wer ist in dem Schlitten?
 Wer hat das Messer ihres Onkels?
 Wann waren seine Brüder in Hamburg?
 Wann werden die Äpfel reif?
 Wird der Baum im Sommer grün?
 Wann wird das Wetter kalt?

<sup>\*</sup>Words in () are omitted in English, but not in German; words in [] are omitted in German, but not in English.

#### LESSON VII.

# DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES: - Con Model. -

- (a) With Umlaut in the plural:

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. der Sohn, the son die Sohne, the sons

Gen. des Sohn(e)s, the son's, der Sühne, the sons', of the of the son

Dat. dem Sohn(e), (to, for) den Sühnen, (to, for) the sons

Acc. den Sohn, the son die Söhne, the sons

OBSERVE: 1. The -cs of the gen., and -c of dat. sing.

- 2. The Umlaut and -e of the plur.
- 3. The additional -n of the dat. plur.
- 4. The -e may be dropped in the dat. sing., and (except after sibilants) in the gen sing., but is usually retained in monosyllables.
  - (b) Without Umlaut:

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. ber hund, the dog bie hunde, the dogs

Gen. bes Hund(e)s, the dog's, ber Hunde, the dogs', of the of the dog dogs

Dat. dem Hund(e), to the dog den Hunden, (to, for) the dogs Acc. den Hund, the dog die Hunde, the dogs

22. In this way are declined:

1. Most masculine monosyllables: generally add Umlaut (see App. B.)

- 2. Masculines in -at, -if, -ig, -ing, -ling: never add Umlaut.
- 3. Many feminine monosyllables with a, u, or au in the root: always add Umlaut (for list, see App. C.)
  - 4. Substantives in -nis and -fal: never add Umlaut.
- 5. Many neuter monosyllables (all those in -r): never add Umlaut, except Floß, Chor, Boot (Böte or Boote) App. E.
- 6. Foreign masculines, with accent on last syll., in -a1, -an, -ar: generally without Umlaut; in -ast, with Umlaut; in -icr, -on, -or, and foreign neuters in -at: never with Umlaut (for exceptions, see App. D.)

Further examples:

Die Hand, the hand: Sing. N.G.D.A. Hand; Plur. N.G.A Hände, D. Händen.

(Observe again: Feminines have all cases of the sing. alike.)

Das Begräbnis, the burial, funeral: Sing. N. A. Begräbnis, G. Begräbnissies, D. Begräbnissies, Plur. N. G. A. Begräbnisse, D. Begräbnissen.

(Observe the doubling of the final -\$ when a termination is added.)

Der Monat, the month: Sing. N. A. Monat, G. Monat(e)\$, D. Monat(e); Plur. N. G. A. Monate, D. Monaten.

Das Jahr, the year: Sing. N. A. Jahr, G. Jahr(e)\$, D. Jahr(e); Plur. N. G. A. Jahre, D. Jahren.

Der Apfelbaum, the apple-tree: Sing. N.A. Apfelbaum, G. Apfelbaum(e)&, D. Apfelbaum(e); Plur. N.G. A. Apfelbäume, D. Apfelbäumen.

(Observe that in compounds only the last component is varied, and is declined as when standing alone).

23. CONSTRUCTION OF DIRECT QUESTIONS.

## Examples:

1. Has the dog meat? 2. Which man is old? Hat ber Hund Fleisch? Welcher Mann ift alt?

# 1 2 1

- 3. Who is in the garden? 5. What has the teacher? Wer ist in bem Garten? Was hat ber Lehrer?
  - 1 2 8 1 2 8
- 4. Where is my father? 6. When was the pupil here? Bo ist mein Bater? Wann war ber Schüler hier?

# Observe from these examples:

- is exactly the same in German as in English, as far as the position of Verb and Subject is concerned.
- 2. That in both languages the question-word always begins the sentence.

#### VOCABULARY.

(An Asterisk (\*) after a word signifies that the plural has Umlaut.)

Tuesday, Diens'tag enemy, ber Feind finger, der Finger Friday, Frei'tag foot, der Fuß\* general, ber General' young man, youth, ber Jüng'ling emperor, der Raiser acquirements, die Renntnisse king, der König Wednesday, ber Mitt'woch Monday, der Mon'tag officer (military) ber Offizier' town, city, die Stadt\* Sunday, ber Sonn'tag Saturday, { ber Sonn'abend, or Sams'tag

marsh, swamp, ber Sumpf \* dav, der Taa carpet, der Teppich curtain, der Bor'hang week, die Woche room, das Zimmer thirty, breißig five, fünf long, lang new, neu magnificent, prächtig red, rot seven, fieben white, weiß where, wo? twelve, amolf

#### EXERCISE VII.

- A. 1. Ein Jahr hat zwölf Monate und in jedem Monat sind breißig Tage. 2. Die Hände dieser Mädchen sind klein. 3. Die Gärten in diesen Städten wurden im Frühling schön. 4. Die Tage sind im Sommer lang, aber im Winter werden sie kurz und kalt. 5. Die Mutter meines Freundes war gestern in der Stadt. 6. Die Kenntnisse des Lehrers sind groß. 7. Die Borhänge dieses Zimmers sind weiß, aber die Teppiche sind rot. 8. Die Schwäger dieser Ofsiziere sind Generale.
- B. 1. The horses and dogs of this young man are handsome. 2. We have two feet and two hands, and each hand has five fingers. 3. The emperor and the king were enemies, but now they are friends. 4. These trees are old, but they are still beautiful. 5. The curtains and carpets in this room are new and magnificent. 6. Every week has seven days: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday. 7. The sons are tall, but the father is not quite so tall. 8. The funeral of the king was magnificent. 9. My father has two apple-trees in his garden. 10. Where are the frogs? In the spring they are in the marshes.

#### ORAL EXERCISE VII.

1. Wo waren die Brüder seiner Mutter gestern? 2. Sind die Vorhänge weisz oder rot? 3. Was hat sein Vater im Garten? 4. Wer war gestern in der Stadt? 5. Wessen Schwäger sind Offiziere? 6. Welche sind die Tage der Woche?

Tetc.

#### LESSON VIII.

CONJUGATION OF haben, to have. - PLACE OF PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE.

24. Paradigm of haben, to have.

# Principal Parts.

Pres. Infin. haben IMPF. INDIC. hatte Past Part. gehabt

Indicative. PRESENT. ich habe, I have

ich habe, I (may) have, etc.

Subjunctive.

bu haft, thou hast du habest er hat, he has er habe wir haben, we have wir haben ihr habt, ye have ihr habet fie haben, they have sie haben

#### IMPERFECT.

ich hatte. I had ich hätte, I had (might have), bu hattest, thou hadst du hättest er hatte, he had er hätte wir hatten, we had wir hätten ihr hattet, ye had ibr hättet fie hatten, they had sie hätten

## PERFECT.

## (Pres. of haben + P. Part.)

I have had, etc. I (may) have had, etc. ich habe ich habe du hast du habest er hat er habe gehabt gehabt wir haben wir haben ihr habt ihr habet fie haben sie haben

Indicative. Subjunctive. PLUPERFECT. (Imperf. of haben + P. Part.) I had (might have) had, etc. I had had, etc. ich hatte ich hätte du hattest bu hättest er hatte er hätte gehabt gehabt wir hatten wir hätten ihr hättet ihr hattet sie hatten fie hätten FUTURE. (Pres. of merden + Infin. of haben.) I shall have, etc. I shall have, etc. ich werde ich werde du wirst du werdest er wird er werde haben haben mirmerben wirwerben ihr werdet ihr werdet fie werden fie werden FITTURE PERFECT. (Future of haben + P. Part.) I shall have had, etc. I shall have had, etc. ich werde ich werde du wirst du werdest er wird er merbe gehabt haben gehabt haben mir merden mir merden ihr werdet ihr werbet fie werben fie werden Conditional. SIMPLE. COMPOUND. (Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. (Simple Cond. of haben + Past of haben.) Part.) I should have had, etc. I should have, etc. ich würde ich würde bu würdest bu würdest

gehabt (zu) haben, (to) have

had

#### Conditional.

er würde wir würden ihr würden ihr würden ihr würden
Imperative.
habe (du), have (thou)

er würde wir würden ihr würden
ihr würden

Infinitive:
(3u) haben, (to) have

Participles.

PRES. habend, having Past. gehabt, had.

habt (ibr), have (ye)

25. Use of Auxiliaries of Tense. — 1. John forms the perfect tenses of all transitive and most intransitive verbs precisely as above.

In any verb not conjugated with fein (see 4, below):

The Present of haben + P. Part. of any verb form the Perfect of that verb.

The Imperfect of haben + P. Part. of any verb form the Pluperfect of that verb.

2. Merben forms the Future and Simple Conditional thus:

The Present of werben + Infin. of any verb form the Future.

The Imperf. Subj. of werben + Infin. of any verb form the Simple Conditional.

3. The Future of haben + P. Part. of any verb (not conjugated with sein) form the Future Perfect.

The Simple Conditional of haben + P. Part. of any verb (not conjugated with fein) form the Compound Conditional.

4. Sein replaces haben in the Perfect Tenses of many Intransitive Verbs. (See § 53.) Compare the English 'He is come.'

# **26.** Construction of Compound Tenses. — Place of Participle and Infinitive.

Rule of Construction. — In every principal sentence the Participle and Infinitive come at the end; but if both be present, the Participle precedes the Infinitive, which is always last, as:

SUBJECT. VERB. PART. OBJECT. My teacher (Engl.) has had money. VERB. OBJECT. SUBJECT. PART. hat Geld (Germ.) Mein Lehrer nehabt. 3 SUBJECT. VERB. INFIN. OBJECT. (Engl.) We shall have a storm. SUBJECT. VERB. OBJECT. INFIN.

subject. verb. object. Infin.
(Germ.) Wir werden einen Sturm haben.

1 2 3 4 5

subject. verb. Infin. part. object.

(Engl.) The beggars would have had no shoes.

1 2 3 4 5
SUBJECT. VERB. OBJECT. PART. INFIN.
(Germ.) Die Bettler würden keine Schuhe gehabt haben.

REMEMBER: In compound tenses, the auxiliary is the verb, and occupies the second place in a principal sentence (see § 20, Rule 1, above).

## VOCABULARY.

evening, der Abend beggar, der Bettler holiday, der Fei'ertag fish, der Fisch fruit, die Frucht\*

money, das Geld guest, der Gast\* harbour, der Hafen\* glove, der Hand'schuh basket, der Korb\* nut, die Nuß\* to be right, Necht haben sailing-ship, das Se'gelschiff chair, der Stuhl\* storm, der Sturm\* stocking, der Strumpf\* shoe, der Schuh table, der Tisch animal, das Tier to be wrong, Un'recht haben pleasure, das Bergnügen wolf, der Wolf\*

40

out of, aus (gov. dat.)
to become of, aus... werden
poor, arm
bad, schlecht
to-morrow, morgen
the day after to-morrow, ü'bers
morgen
much, viel
already, schon
when, wann?

#### EXERCISE VIII.

- A. 1. Ich habe viel Geld gehabt, aber jett bin ich arm. 2. Die Früchte werden im Berbst reif. 3. Wird ber Knabe einen Tisch und Stühle in seinem Zimmer haben? 4. Ihre Sandschuhe wurden schlecht, benn sie waren schon alt. 5. Es ift angenehm, Freunde zu haben. 6. Was wurde aus bem Sohne des Lehrers? Er wurde auch Lehrer. 7. Ich werde Feinde und auch Freunde haben. 8. Die Gafte in unserer Stadt wurden mude, benn bas Wetter war febr beiß. 9. Werden wir Teppiche und Vorbänge in unferm Zimmer haben? 10. Er hatte Freunde gehabt. 11. Gie werden in diesem Jahre viel Bergnügen gehabt haben. 12. Die Söhne des Königs haben Pferde und Wagen, aber die Töchter des Bett= Iers haben feine Schuhe und feine Strumpfe. 13. Wir hatten Recht gehabt, aber er hatte Unrecht gehabt. 14. Mit meinen Freunden habe ich viel Vergnügen gehabt. 15. Unfere Freunde werden gestern viel Vergnügen gehabt haben, denn das Wetter war schön und warm.
- B. 1. The sailing-ships are in the harbour. 2. We had thirty fishes in our baskets. 3. He would have friends. 4. The evening was fine, but the weather became cold. 5. We have had two storms. 6. Where are our guests? They became tired and are now in the garden. 7. To-morro

a holiday, for it is Saturday. 8. We were in the garden yesterday, and the trees are already green. 9. What has he had? He has had apples and nuts. 10. Dogs, wolves, and foxes are animals.

#### ORAL EXERCISE VIII.

1. Wer hatte Recht und wer hatte Unrecht? 2. Wann werden wir einen Feiertag haben? 3. Wo sind die Segelschiffe? 4. Wessen Söhne haben Wagen und Pferde? 5. Warum wurden die Gäste müde? 6. Welche Gemälde sind schön?

#### LESSON IX.

- WEAK CONJUGATION: Inhert. DEPENDENT SENTENCES. —
  PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE ONLY.
- 27. The stem of a verb is what is left when the termination of the Present Infinitive (-en or -n) is dropped, as: bab-en, stem hab; lob-en, stem lob.
- 28. The Principal Parts of a verb are the Present Infinitive, Imperfect Indicative, and Past Participle.
- 29. Any verb, when these principal parts are given, may be conjugated throughout, by using the auxiliaries, precisely as in the paradigm of haben in Less. VIII.
- 30. Weak verbs are those which form the Imperfect by adding -te, and the Past Participle by prefixing ge- and adding -t to the stem, as: Iob-en, to praise (stem Iob), Imperfect Iob-te, P. Part. ge-Iob-t; tabel-u, to blame (stem tabel), Imperf. tabel-te, P. Part. ge-tabel-t.

Note. - Weak verbs are also called Regular or Modern.

31. PARADIGM OF loben, to praise.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Infin. loben Impf. Indic. lobte Past Part. gelobt

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

ich lobe, I praise (am praising, ich lobe, I (may) praise do praise)

bu lob(e)ft, thou praisest, etc. er lob(e)t, he praises wir loben, we praise ihr lob(e)t, ye praise

fie loben, they praise

bu lobest, thou (mayest) praise er lobe, he (may) praise wir loben, we (may) praise ihr lobet, ye (may) praise fie loben, they (may) praise

#### IMPERFECT.

(Same form for both moods.)

id lobic. I praised (was praising, etc.) bu lobtest, thou praisedst er lobte, he praised wir lobten, we praised ihr lobtet, ye praised fie lobten, they praised

## PERFECT.

(Pres. of haben + P. Part of loben.)

ich habe gelobt, I have praised (been praising)

ich habe nelobi

bu haft gelobt, thou hast praised, etc. bu habest gelobt, ec.

#### PLUPERFECT.

(Imperf. of haben + P. Part. loben.)

ich hatte gelobt, I had praised (been ich hätte gelobt, 2c. praising), etc.

## FUTURE.

(Present of merden + Infin. of loben.)

ich werbe loben. I shall praise (be

ich werde loben

praising)

bu wirst loben, thou wilt praise, etc.

du werdest loben, 2c.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of hahen + P. Part. of loben.)

ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have

ich werde gelobt haben

praised

bu wirst gelobt haben, thou wilt have praised, etc.

du werdest gelobt haben, 2c.

Conditional.

SIMPLE.

COMPOUND.

(Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. of loben.)

(Simple Cond. of haben + P. Part. of loben.)

ich würde sohen, I should praise(be praising) etc.

ich würde gelobt haben, I should have praised, etc.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Iobe (bu), praise (thou)
Iobe er, let him praise
Ioben wir, let us praise
Iobt (ihr), praise (ye)
Ioben sie, let them praise

(zu) loben, (to) praise. gelobt (zu) haben, (to) have praised

Participles.

Pres. lobend, praising

Past. gelobt, praised

REMARKS. — 1.  $\mathfrak{e}$  is sometimes found in the terminations of the following parts: Pres. Ind. bu  $lob(\mathfrak{e})$  it, or  $lob(\mathfrak{e})$ t, ihr  $lob(\mathfrak{e})$ t; Impf. (Ind. and Subj.) ich  $lob(\mathfrak{e})$ te, etc.; P. Part.  $gelob(\mathfrak{e})$ t, etc.; and is always retained in certain verbs. (See § 35, Rem. 2, below.)

- 2. Note again the persistent e of the Pres. Subj.
- 3. English periphrastic forms of the verb are to be avoided in German; thus:

I praise
I am praising
I do praise

(I

(praise I?)
am I praising?
do I praise?

(he praised not)
he was not praising he did not praise

| er lobte micht | (praised he not?) | lobte en |
| was he not praising? | nicht? |
| did he not praise? |

I have been praising, etc., ich have gelobt, etc. Had I been praising? hatte ich gelobt?

4. The only true Imperative forms are those of the 2. sing. and 2. plur., lobe, lobt. For the other persons, the pres. subj. is used, as: lobe er, let him praise; loben wir, let us praise; loben fie, let them praise;—the verb preceding the pronoun.

CONSTRUCTION OF DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

32. The Verb in a Dependent Sentence comes last, as:

3th glaube, daß er Geld hat,
I believe that he has money.

REMEMBER: that the auxiliary is the verb in compound tenses.

33. In compound tenses the Participle and Infinitive immediately precede the verb; if both be present, the Participle precedes, as in principal sentences, thus:

Ich glaube, daß er Geld gehabt hat, I believe, that he has had money. Ich glaube, daß er Geld haben wird, I believe that he will have money. Ich glaube, daß er Geld gehabt haben wird, I believe that he will have had money.

NOTE. — The place of the Subject, in a Dependent Sentence, is usually the same as in English.

34. Prepositions governing the Accusative only.

Bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, wider.

bis, (1) till, until (time), as: I shall not come until tomorrow (bis morgen).

- (2) up to, as far as (place), as: He travelled with us as far as (bls) Montreal.
- burd, through; as: He rode through the forest (burd) ben Wald).
- für, for; as: That is for my friend (für meinen Freund); the scissors are not a toy for children (für Rinber).
- gegen, towards, against (not necessarily denoting hostility), as: The enemy advanced towards (or against) the bridge (gegen die Brück).
- white, without; as: We cannot travel without money (white Geld).
- um, (1) around, about; as: We drove around the town (um die Stadt).
  - (2) at, about (time), as: He came at four o'clock (um vier Uhr); it happened at (or about) Christmas (um Weihnachten).
- wider, against (opposition, hostility), as: He swam against the stream (wider ben Strom); the soldiers were fighting against the enemy (wider ben Feinb).

REMARK. — Durdy, für, and um are generally contracted with the Neuter of the unemphasized Definite Article, thus:

burch das = burchs (burch's) für das = fürs (für's) um das = ums (um's)

#### VOCABULARY.

believe, glauben hope, hoffen buy, faufen laugh, lachen live, leben learn, lernen love, lieben make, do, machen say, fagen send, schicken play, spielen sell, verfausen weep, cry, weinen
bishop, der Bi'schof\*
German, Deutsch
servant, der Diener
industry, diligence, der Fleiß
young lady, Miss, das Fräulein
cardinal, der Kardinal
noise, der Lärm
Latin, das Latein
palace, der Pala'st\*
pope, der Papst\*

place, square, ber Plat \* ring, ber Ring
walk, ber Spazier'gang \*
time, die Zeit
good, kind, gut
merry, merrily, luftig
sad, traurig
that (conj.), daß
because, weil
if, wenn
why, warum'?

Idiom: to take a walk, einen Gpagiergang machen.

Note. - A past tense after wenn ('if') is put in the subj. mood.

#### EXERCISE IX.

- A. 1. Die Kardinale und Bischöfe waren gestern im Palaste bes Papstes. 2. Das Fräulein wird diese Ringe kaufen, denn sie sind schön. 3. Der Maler würde dieses Gemälde nicht verkaufen. 4. Ich würde diesen Ring kaufen, wenn ich reich wäre. 5. Hat er es geglaubt? Er hat es geglaubt, weil sein Vater es gesagt hat. 6. Die Schüler haben viel Lärm gemacht. 7. Wir loben den Jüngling, weil er sleißig ist. 8. Der König wird seine Genezrale gegen den Feind schicken. 9. Meine Schwester wird Handschuhe kaufen, denn ihre Handschuhe sind schwester wird Handschuhe sinen Spaziergang durch die Stadt machen, wenn das Wetter schön wäre. 11. Sie würden auch einen Spaziergang gemacht haben, wenn sie Zeit gehabt hätten. 12. Sie wird sagen, daß ich Recht habe. 13. Ich habe immer gehofft, daß er lernen würde. 14. Sie liebt ihren Bater und ihre Mutter, denn sie sind gut. 15. Er würde das Gemälde nicht gelobt haben, denn es war nicht schön.
- B. 1. What were they doing yesterday? They were playing in the garden. 2. This gentleman will praise his servants, for they are industrious. 3. We have taken a walk about

the town. 4. The squares in those cities are very fine. 5. Where were the daughters of the officers? They were living in a convent. 6. Without industry we shall not learn much. 7. The boy was playing with the dog. 8. The gentleman has sold his horses and carriages. 9. What are the young ladies doing now? 10. Why was she crying? She was crying because she was sad. 11. They are laughing because they are merry. 12. We shall have learned much in a week. 13. I am laughing because the child is playing so merrily. 14. To-day we are learning German, to-morrow we shall learn Latin. 15. We have bought shoes and stockings for the beggars.

#### ORAL EXERCISE IX.

Weshalb hat sie gelacht?
 Wer machte so viel Lärm?
 Wo haben die Fräulein einen Spaziergang gemacht?
 Was hat die Frau gekauft?
 Weshalb hat seine Schwester Handschuhe gekauft?
 Was werden wir morgen machen?

## LESSON X.

WEAK VERBS (continued). DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:
--- Darf MODEL, OR PLURAL IN -cr.

35. ENDINGS OF WEAK VERBS IN SIMPLE TENSES.

Present.		Imperfect.	Imperative.
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCT.	Ind. and Subj.	Sing. 2c
Sing. 1. —e	<u>-е</u>	—(e)te	Plur. 2(e)t
2. —(c)st	—est	—(e)test	Infinitive.
3. —(e)t	e	-(e)te	-en
Plur. 1. —en	en	—(e)ten	Participles.
2. —(e)t	et	—(c)tet	Pres. —end
3. —en	—en	—(e)ten	Past. ge-(e)t

REMARKS. - 1. Observe the following endings:

- (a) Final -t of the 3. sing. occurs only in the Pres. Indic.
- (b) The 2. sing. has -it except in the Imperative.
- (c) The 2. plur. has -t throughout.
- 2. Verb-Stems in -h or -t (th), or in -m or -n preceded by another consonant, retain -c throughout after the stem, as:

## reden, to speak.

Pres. Ind.	IMPERFECT.	IMPERATIVE.
Sing. 2. du redest	Sing. 1. ich redete	Plur. 2. redet (ihr)
3. er redet	2. du redetest	
Plur. 2. ihr redet	etc.	

Thus: arbeiten, to work: ich arbeitete; atmen, to breathe: bu atmest; regnen, to rain: es regnet.

3. Verb-Stems in a sibilant  $(\mathfrak{g}, \mathfrak{fh}, \mathfrak{k}, \mathfrak{x}, \mathfrak{z})$  retain  $-\mathfrak{e}$  in the 2. sing. Pres. Ind. and Subj. only, as:

tanzen, to dance: bu tanzest; reisen, to travel: bu reisest.

4. Verb-Stems in  $-\mathfrak{el}$  and  $-\mathfrak{er}$  drop  $\mathfrak{e}$  of the stem before terminations in  $-\mathfrak{e}$  (i. e. in 1. sing. Pres. Ind., 1. and 3. sing. Pres. Subj., and 2. sing. Imper.), and, except in the Subjunctive, never insert  $\mathfrak{e}$  after  $\mathfrak{l}$  or  $\mathfrak{n}$ , as:

## indeln, to blame.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	IMPERFECT.
ich tadle	table	ich tadelte, etc.
du tadelst	tablest	IMPERATIVE.
er tabelt	table	table
wir tadeln	tablen	tadelt
ihr tadelt	tablet	P. PART.
sie tadeln	tadlen	getadelt

5. Foreign verbs in -ieren (-iren) do not take the prefix ge- in the P. Part., as: stud-ieren, to study: P. Part. studiert

(not ge-studiert); bombardieren, to bombard : P. Part. boms

6. Verbs with the prefixes be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, ver-, ger- also omit the prefix ge- in the P. Part., as: bezahlen, P. Part. bezahlt: verschwenden, verschwendet.

# 36. DECLENSION OF bas Dorf, the village.

## Singular.

Plural.

Nom. das Dorf, the village Gen. des Dorf(e)s, of the village bie Dörfer, the villages ber Dörfer, of the villages

Dat. bem Dorf(e), (to, for)
the village

ben Dörfern, (to, for) the villages

Acc. bas Dorf, the village

die Dörfer, the villages

REMARKS. — 1. The Singular is formed precisely as in the Sohn model. (See § 21.)

- 2. Observe  $-\mathfrak{cr}$  of the Plural, with the additional  $-\mathfrak{n}$  of the Dative.
- 3. All Substantives of this Declension with a, o, u or au in the stem take Umlaut.
  - 37. In this way are declined:
  - 1. Most neuter monosyllables (exceptions in App. E.).
  - 2. Substantives ending in -t(h)um.
  - 3. Five neuters with prefix Ge-, viz.:

bas Gemath, the apartment bas Gemüt, the temper, disposition bas Gespenst, the spectre bas Gewand, the garment (also Gesicht; see § 64)

das Geschlecht, the sex

4. Two foreign neuters, viz.: das Regiment, the regiment; das Hospital (or Spital), the hospital.

# 5. The following nine masculines:

ber Bösewicht, the villain
ber Geist, the spirit
ber Gott, the God
ber Leib, the body
ber Mann, the man,
husband (Lat. vir)
ber Nanb, the edge, margin
ber Normund, the guardian
ber Wolk, the forest
ber Wurm, the worm
(also Dorn, Ort; see App.
E.)

Further examples (Sing. like Cohn):

Das Schloß, the castle, palace: Plur. N.G.A. Schlösser, D. Schlösser.

Das Buch, the book: Plur. N. G. A. Bücher, D. Büchern.
Der Mann, the man, husband: Plur. N. G. A. Männer, P.
Männern.

Das Kind, the child: Plur. N.G.A. Kinder, D. Kindern. Das Haus, the house: Plur. N.G.A. Häuser, D. Häusern.

#### VOCABULARY.

to row, rubern
shake, schütteln
waste, berschwenden
exercise, task, die Aufgabe
leaf, das Blatt
egg, das Ei
possession, property, das
Eigentum
earth, die Erde
gardener, der Gärtner
fowl, das Huhn

child, das Kind dress, das Kleib clothes, pl. of Aleid er song, das Lied courage, spirit, der Mut woman, wife, das Beib yellow, gelb enough, genug well (adv.), gut a long while, lange

too, zu

#### EXERCISE X.

A. 1. Im herbst werden die Blätter gelb, denn das Wetter ist kalt. 2. Ich table diese Mädchen, weil sie ihre Aufgabe nicht studiert haben. 3. Im Winter studierten die Jünglinge; im

Sommer arbeiteten sie. 4. "Du ruberst nicht schnell genug, mein Bruder," sagte ich. 5. Diese Männer lieben ihre Weiber und Kinder. 6. Der Lehrer sagte, daß die Kinder zu viel Lärm machten. 7. Der König redete mit den Generalen, und lobte den Mut ihrer Regimenter. 8. Die Bormünder dieser Kinder sind Bösewichter, denn sie haben das Sigentum der Kinder verschwendet. 9. Die Würmer leben in der Erde, aber die Fische leben im Wasser. 10. Wo sind die Sier der Hühner? Sie sind in unseren Körben. 11. Ich werde müde, weil ich gegen den Strom rudre. 12. Der Kaiser hat die Generale getadelt, aber ihre Regimenter hat er gelobt.

B. 1. The general has bombarded the town. 2. The woman was buying books and clothes for her children. 3. The gardener is shaking the apple-tree. 4. The children were learning songs. 5. The boy is industrious; he has studied well. 6. The apartments of the palaces are magnificent. 7. It rained yesterday, but it will not rain to-day. 8. We have rowed a long while against the stream. 9. These men travelled through towns and villages. 10. The hospitals in London are large and fine. 11. The leaves of these trees are large and beautiful. 12. This gentleman would buy my houses, if he had money enough.

#### ORAL EXERCISE &

1. Weshalb werden die Blätter gelb? 2. Wessen Regimenter hat der König getadelt? 3. Was sagte der Lehrer? 4. Wo leben die Würmer? 5. Was lernten die Kinder? 6. Würde dieser Herr das Haus kaufen?

## LESSON XI.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

33. Declension of Personal Pronouns.

First Person. Second Person. Sing. N. ich, I bu. thou G. meiner (mein), of me beiner (bein), of thee D. mir, (to, for) me bir, (to, for) thee A. mid, me bid, thee Plur. N. wir, we ihr, ye, you G. unser (unsrer), of us euer (eurer), of you D. uns, (to, for) us euch, (to, for) you euch, you A. uns, us

# Third Person. Singular.

Singular.				
MASC.   FEM.		NEUTER.	REFLEXIVE	
N. er, he	fie, she	es, it	(ALL GENDERS).	
G. feiner (fein),	ihrer (ihr),	feiner (fein,		
of him	of her	es), of it		
D. ihm,(to,for)	ihr, (to, for)	ihm,(to,for)	sich, (to, for) himself,	
him	her	it	herself, itself	
A. ihn, him	fie, her	es, it	sid, himself, herself,	
			itself	
Plural.				
N. fie, they				
G. ihrer (ihr), of them				
D. ihnen, (to, for) FOR ALL GENDERS sich, (to, for) them-				
them selves			selves	
A. sie, them	j		sid, themselves	
REMARKS - T The forms mein bein fein ihr univer eurer				

REMARKS. — 1. The forms mein, bein, sein, ihr, unsrer, eurer are poetical or archaic.

2. The form es of the 3. sing. gen. neuter is only used in certain phrases, as: Sch bin es müde, I am tired of it.

- 3. The gen. and dat. of the 3. sing. neuter do not occur, except when referring to persons (e. g. Mädden, Fraulein).
- 4. The Pronouns of the 3. sing. must agree in gender with the substantive to which they refer, as:

Saft bu ben Sut? Hast thou the hat? Saft bu die Blume? Hast thou the flower? Wo ift bas Mäbchen? Where is the girl?

Ja, ich habe ihn. Yes, I have it. Nein, ich habe fie nicht. No, I have it not. Es ist im Garten.

She is in the garden.

5. The Pronouns of the 3. person are not used after Prepositions, when referring to inanimate objects, but are replaced by the adverb  $\mathfrak{ba}(\mathfrak{r})$ , there, before the Preposition, the  $\mathfrak{r}$  being inserted if the Preposition begins with a vowel, as:

Bist du mit diesem Buche zufrieden? Ja, ich bin damit zufrieden. Art thou satisfied with this book? Yes, I am satisfied with it (therewith).

How much did you pay for this hat? I paid two dollars for it, bajur (therefor).

What have you in your purse? I have money in it (barin, therein).

#### 39. IDIOMATIC USES OF c3.

1. Before the verb, representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as:

Who is it? It is my cousin; it is my cousins.

Wer ist cs? Es ist mein Better; es sind meine Bettern.

(3 leuchtet bie Sonne, the sun shines, i. e., it is the sun that shines.

Es leuchten bie Sterne, (it is) the stars (that) shine.

REMARK. — E3 in this construction is often rendered by 'there' in English, as:

There is a bird in this cage. Es ist ein Bogel in diesem Bauer.

There are three books on this table.

Es sind drei Bücher auf diesem Tisch.

(See also es giebt, Less. XXXVII.)

2. When the real subject represented by  $\mathfrak{es}$  is a personal pronoun, with the verb to be,  $\mathfrak{es}$  follows the verb, which agrees with the real subject in person and number, as:

It is I,	Ich bin es.
	( Du bist es.
It is you,	3hr seid es.
	Gie sind es.
It is we,	wir find es.
It is they,	sie sind es.
Is it you?	find Sie es?

3. After the verb, representing a predicate or a clause, and corresponding to the English 'one' or 'so,' as:

Is your father a soldier? Yes, he is one (es). We are free, and you shall be so (es) too.

## **40.** Use of Pronouns in Address.

1. Du is used only in addressing persons with whom we are very intimate, or towards whom we use no ceremony; also in addressing the Supreme Being, as:

Where are you, dear friend?

Where are you, dear friend?

Was machst bu, mein Kind?

What are you doing, my child?

Bir loben Dich, o Gott! We praise Thee, o God!

4-1-1

2. If (plur. of bu) is used in addressing a number of persons, each of whom we should address by bu, as:

Was macht ihr, Kinder? What are you doing, children?

- 3. In all other cases we use for 'you' in German, whether sing, or plur., the pronoun of the Third Plural: Sie, Ihrer, Ihren, Sie, distinguished by a capital letter. (See also § 43.)
  - 41. PARADIGM OF INTER WITH REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Sing. 1. ich lobe mich,

2. bu lobst bich,

3. er

site

lobt sich,

it

lobe mich,

thou praises thyself

he
she
she
praises

herself
itself

Plur. 1. wir loben uns, we praise ourselves

2. ihr lobt cuth, ye praise yourselves

3. fie loben fid, they praise themselves

So throughout the verb, as:

Perfect: Ich habe mich gelobt, du hast dich gelobt, er hat sich gelobt, etc.

# 42. Reflexive and Reciprocal Pronouns — felbit.

- reflexive action without a special form, as shown by the above paradigm, but those of the Third Person have the form figh.
- 2. These pronouns are also used in the Plural to express reciprocal action, as:

We met each other; they will see each other again. Wir begegneten uns; sie werden sich wiedersehen.

But when, to prevent ambiguity, it is necessary to distinguish reciprocal from reflexive action, we use cinander as the reciprocal pronoun for all persons, thus:

We love each other (one another), Bir lieben einander. (Bir lieben uns might mean 'we love ourselves.')

3. To emphasize and strengthen the reflexive pronouns, and give them an *exclusive* sense, as well as further to distinguish them from reciprocal pronouns, the indeclinable word felbst (or felber) is used, as:

Know yourselves, Erfennet euch selbst. (Erfennet euch might mean 'know one another.')
He has injured himself, Er hat sich selbst beschäbigt.

REMARK. — This word fellift is in apposition to the subject (or object, as the case may be), as:

Der König selbst ist nicht immer glücklich. The king himself is not always happy.

It is also used adverbially (= Eng. 'even'), as: Even the king is not always happy.

Selbst der König ist nicht immer glücklich.

## VOCABULARY.

behave one's self properly (of children), artig sein meet, begegnen (dat.) visit, besuchen pay, bezahlen have finished (with), fertig sein mit belong (to), gehören (dat.) be ashamed of, sich schämen (gen.)

seat one's self (sit down), sich setzen
punish, strasen
work, labour, die Arbeit
parents, die Estern (no sing.)
patience, die Gebuld
gentleman, master, Mr., der
hat, bonnet, der Hut\* [Herr
John, Johann
Charles, Karl

artist, ber Künstler Mary, Marie uncle, ber D'heim dollar, ber Thaler away, gone, fort here, hier ever, at any time, je, jemals never, nie, niemals

#### EXERCISE XI.

- A. 1. Sei artig Rarl, bu machft zu viel Larm. 2. Jene Männer find fehr reich, benn diefe Säufer gehören ihnen. 3. Gehört das Pferd Ihnen? Nein, es gehört mir nicht, es gehört bem Offizier. 4. Unfer Dheim hat uns Bucher gefauft. 5. Sabt Gebuld, Rin= ber, ich werde euch morgen Apfel und Nuffe kaufen. 6. Ich werde morgen einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen. 7. Er glaubt, daß ich mir bas Aferd gekauft habe. 8. Morgen werden wir einen Feiertag haben, und wir werden unfre Eltern besuchen. 9. Ich werde ihr fagen, daß ihre Mutter fort ift. 10. Waren Gie jemals in diefer Rirche? Ich war nie darin. 11. Karl und Johann begegneten fich geftern im Walbe. 12. Ift Ihr Bater noch frant? Nein, mein Bater ift jett wohl. 13. Marie, liebst du beine Eltern? Sa, und fie lieben mich auch. 14. Ich wurde einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen, wenn ich Zeit hatte. 15. Sat der Lehrer Marie getabelt? Ja, er hat fie getabelt. 16. Die Schüler loben fich felbst, weil sie ihre Aufgabe so schnell gemacht haben. 17. Wir wurden uns felbst auch loben, wenn wir unfre Aufgabe gemacht hätten. 18. Er würde fich schamen, wenn er mit feiner Aufgabe nicht fertig ware. 19. Weshalb loben biefe Künftler einander? Sie loben einander, weil ihre Gemälde schön find. 20. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden? Nein, ich bin nicht damit zufrieden.
- B. 1. Is the table large? No, it is small. 2. Her father has bought her a ring. 3. Were the fishes in your basket? Yes, they were in it. 4. Who has told it [to] her? 5. John, have you my shoes? No, I have them not. 6. We sit down because we are tired. 7. Even the beggars of this city have shoes and stockings. 8. Who has bought this hat? 9. I bought it myself in the city, and paid four dollars for it. 10.

Charles and his teacher love each other very much. 11. Mother, have you bought me apples or nuts? 12. Mr. A., here is a chair for you; sit down. 13. Has the teacher blamed him? Yes, he had not done his exercise. 14. Do you believe that this milk is good? Yes, it is very good. 15. The teacher is ashamed of her, because she has not finished (with) her work.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XI.

1. Würden sie einen Spaziergang mit mir machen? 2. Weshalb loben Sie sich so viel? 3. Was sagten Sie mir? 4. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden? 5. Was werden wir morgen machen? 6. Werden Sie morgen Ihre Eltern besuchen?

## LESSON XII.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. - USE OF ARTICLES.

43.

Possessive Adjectives.

First Person.

Sing. mein, my

Plur. unier, our

bein, thy cuer, your

Third Person.

MASC.

NEUTER.

ALL GENDERS.

Sing. scin, his (its) ihr, her (its) scin, its Plur. ihr, their Poss. Adj. of Polite Address: 3hr.

FEM.

REMARKS. — 1. The Possessive Adjectives are the Genitive Cases of the respective Personal Pronouns, declined after the mein Model. (See § 8, above.)

- 2. Unfer and cuer may drop e of the stem when inflected; or they may drop e of the termination, unless the termination is -e or -er, as: unfere or unfer; unfered, unfred or unferd.
  - 3. Observe the correlatives of the Pronouns of Address:

du — dein ihr — euer Sie— Jhr Thus we say:

bu hast beine Aufgabe gelernt, ihr habt eure " " lesson lesson

NOTE. — The last example shows the use of the Pers. Pron. and Poss. Adj. of *Third Plural* as Pronoun of Address.

4. Observe also the correlatives of the Third Person:

Referring to subst. masc. sing. frin whether animate

" " fem. " ihr or inanimate

" " neuter " frin

to substs. plur.(all genders) ihr

Thus we say:

Der hund hat feinen Anochen verloren (lost)

Die Blume " ihre Blätter " Das Buch " feine "

5. The possessive adjectives agree in gender with both the possessor and the thing possessed. The *termination* will depend on the gender (number and case) of the substantive they qualify (the *thing possessed*); the *stem* (as above) on the gender of the substantive to which they refer (the *possessor*).

NOTE. — Feminine diminutives, such as: Mädden, girl, Fräusein, young lady, generally take the possessive adjective referring to them in the feminine, agreeing with the sex rather than the gender, as:

Das Mädden liebt ihre Mutter. The girl loves her mother.

For Possessive Pronouns, see Less. XXIII.

## 44. USE OF THE ARTICLES.

The Definite Article is required in German, contrary to English usage, in the following cases:

1. Before all substantives used in the full extent of their signification (i. e. in a general as well as in a particular sense); hence

(a) Before nouns (sing. or plur.) denoting a whole class, as:

Der Mensch ist sterblich, Man is mortal; Die Bögel haben Nester, Birds have nests.

(b) Before names of materials, abstract nouns, etc., used in their *unlimited* sense, not partitively, as:

Das Glas ift durchsichtig,
Glass is transparent;
Das Gold ift wertvoller als das Silber,
Gold is more valuable than silver; but:
Gold und Silber habe ich nicht,
Gold and silver I have not (have none of).
Die Not ist die Mutter der Ersindung,
Necessity is the mother of invention;
Die Music is an art; but:
Er studiert Music,

Note. - In Proverbs and Enumerations this article is omitted, as:

Not fennt kein Gebot, Necessity knows no law; Musit und Malerei sind schöne Künste, Music and painting are fine arts.

He studies music (limited sense).

2. Before names of mountains, lakes, seas, rivers, forests, streets, seasons, months and days of the week, as:

Der Besub, Mount Vesuvius.

Der Ontario, Lake Ontario.

Die Themse, the Thames.

Der Speffart, the (forest of) Spessart.

Die Friedrichstraße, Frederick Street.

but:

Im Frühling, in spring. Der Januar ist kalt, January is cold. Um Montag, on Monday.

Also before Simmel, Erde, Solle, as:

Im Himmel, in heaven; Rur Erbe, to earth;

and before places of public resort, as:

Zur Schule gehen, to go to school. Ich war in der Kirche, I was at church.

3. Before names of countries when not neuter, or when preceded by an adjective, as:

Die Schweiz, Switzerland.

Das ichone Frankreich, fair France.

NOTE. — Further information on the article with Proper Names is given in §§ 73, 74, 76.

4. The English *Indefinite* Article is replaced by the *Definite* Article in German when used distributively (= each), as:

Zweimal des Jahres, twice a year. Drei Thaler die Elle, three dollars a vard.

5. The Indefinite Article is omitted before the unqualified predicate after sein or werben, as:

Er ist (wurde) Solbat, he is (became) a soldier;

Er ist ein tapferer Solbat, he is a brave soldier.

6. (a) The Definite Article replaces the **Possessive** Adjective when no ambiguity would result as to the possessor, as:

Er steckte die Hand in die Tasche, He put his hand into his pocket; Er schüttelt den Kopf, He shakes his head. Geben Sie mir die hand, Give me your hand.

(b) With parts of the person, clothing, etc., the Dative of the Personal Pronoun + Definite Article replace the Possessive Adjective, as:

Ein Stein fiel ihm auf den Ropf, A stone fell on his head; Ein Nagel hat mir den Rock zerrissen, A nail has torn my coat.

NOTE. — If the *subject* is the possessor, the *reflexive* pronoun is used, as:

Er hat fich in den Finger geschnitten, He has cut his finger.

#### VOCABULARY.

to cost, kosten hurt, wound, verletzen cry, weep, weinen draw, zeichnen doctor, physician, ber Arzt\* axe, die Art\* Arst mountain, hill, der Berg lead-pencil, der Bleistift iron, das Eisen window, das Fenster wing, der Flügel purse, der Geldbeutel hope, die Hossing merchant, der Kaufmann farewell, (das) Lebewohl

master, der Meister
Mont Blanc, der Mont Blanc
music, die Musit'
coat, der Rock\*
Schiller-street, die Schillerstraße Land
tailor, der Schneider
cloth, das Tuch
exercise, practice, die Übung
hot, heiß
light, leicht
dear, teuer
as, when, als
often, oft

#### EXERCISE XII.

A. 1. Übung macht ben Meister. 2. Die Musik und die Malerei sind Künste. 3. Kinder, habt ihr eure Aufgaben gemacht? Ja, wir haben sie gemacht. 4. Der Mont Blanc ist ein Berg in der Schweiz. 5. Ist dieses Tuch teuer? Ja, es kostet drei Thaler

- bie Ele. 6. Die Mutter schieft ihre Kinder zur Schule. 7. Haben Sie Gold in Ihrem Geldbeutel? Ich habe kein Gold, aber ich habe Silber. 8. Was lernt das Mädchen? Sie lernt ihre Aufzgabe. 9. Der Vater schüttelte seinem Sohne die Hand und sagte ihm Lebewohl. 10. Die Flügel der Vögel sind sehr leicht und stark. 11. Hat der Schneider Ihren Nock nach Hause geschick? 12. Nein, er hat ihn noch nicht geschickt, aber er wird ihn morgen schiefen. 13. Unsere Eltern reisten in Deutschland und in der Schweiz. 14. Im Juli ist das Wetter oft sehr heiß. 15. Das Sisen wird rot, wenn es heiß wird. 16. Glauben Sie, daß ich Necht habe? 17. Karl verletzte sich die Hand, als er mit einer Art arbeitete. 18. Ich würde Soldat werden, wenn ich alt genug wäre. 19. Wir würden Freunde gehabt haben, wenn wir reich gewesen wären.
- B. 1. Gold is yellow, but silver is white. 2. Mary is studying music and painting. 3. Are your parents still living in Frederick-Street? 4. No, they are now living in Schiller-Street. 5. Mont Blanc is a mountain in Switzerland. 6. The girl is crying; she has hurt her hand. 7. Is your father a doctor? No, he is a merchant. 8. Glass is transparent, and we make windows of it. 9. What are you doing with your lead-pencil? I am drawing a flower with it. 10. The emperor is satisfied with his generals. 11. I blame you, because you are not industrious. 12. What are you drawing now? I am drawing a bird. 13. Why are you crying, my child? 14. The doctor shook his head, for he had no hope. 15. Would you buy a horse, if you were rich? 16. Miss B. has sent her mother a present. 17. The girl will visit her parents.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XII.

Ist das Gold weisz?
 Weshalb weint das Mädchen?
 Werden Sie sich ein Haus kaufen?
 Sind Sie Soldat?
 Wo wohnen Sie jetzt?
 Was machen Sie mit Ihrem Gelde?

#### LESSON XIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES: PLACE OF OBJECTS, AD-VERBS, etc. — INDIRECT NARRATION. — PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE ONLY.

45. Rules for Position of Objects, Adverbs, etc.

RULE 1. (a) Pronouns first of all, unless governed by a preposition, when they come after all other objects, adverbs, etc.

(b) Adverbs or Adverbial Expressions of **Time** precede everything except Pronouns without Prepositions, thus:

(Germ.) Ich schickte ihm gestern (biese Woche) einen Brief,

(Engl.) I sent him a letter yesterday (this week); but:

(Germ.) Ich schickte gestern einen Brief an ihn,

(Engl.) I sent a letter to him yesterday;

1 2 3 4 5 6 (Germ.) Ich habe es heute meiner Schwester geschickt,

1 2 3 4 5 6

(Engl.) I have sent it to my sister to-day.

Rule 2. Of Nouns, persons (unless governed by prepositions) before things, as:

(Germ.) Ich schickte gestern meinem Bater einen Brief,

(Engl.) I sent my father a letter yesterday; but:

(Germ.) Ich schickte gestern einen Brief an meinen Bater,

(Engl.) I sent a letter to my father yesterday.

Rule 3. Of Pronouns, *Personal* before all other Pronouns, as:

I have given him that.

Rule 4. Of Personal Pronouns, *Direct* Object before Indirect Object, as:

1 2 3 4 5
(Germ.) Sh have es ihm gegeben,
1 2 3 4 5
(Engl.) I have given it to him.

Rule 5. Adverbs of place, cause and manner follow objects in the order named, as:

(Germ.) Er hat das Buch zu Hause sehr steißig studiert,

1 2 3 4 5 6
(Engl.) He has studied the book very diligently

at home.

REMEMBER: 1. That in compound tenses all these objects, adverbs, etc., come between the auxiliary and the participle or infinitive.

2. That any of these members of a sentence may occupy the first place instead of the subject, especially an adverb of time, etc., and that the subject (see § 20, Obs. 2) is then thrown after the verb, as:

Gestern schickte ich ihm einen Brief.

1 2 3 4 5
Diese Woche schickte ich einen Brief an ihn.

46. Prepositions governing the Dative only.

Aus, außer, bei, mit, govern the Dative Case.

aus, (1) out of (motion), as: He came out of the house (aus dem Hause).

- (2) of (made of), as: This house is built of wood (aus 5013).
- (3) from (origin), as: He comes from England (aus England); from the town (aus ber Stabt).
- (4) from (cause), as: I did it from fear (aus Furcht).
- außer, (1) outside of (rest), as: The table is standing outside of the room (außer bem Zimmer).
  - (2) except, besides, but, as: I had nothing except (besides, but) my stick (außer meinem Stocke).
- bei, (1) (near) by, as: The chair stands (near) by the table (bei dem or beim Tische).
  - (2) at (the house, etc., of, = Fr. chez), with, as: He lives at the house of (or: with) his uncle (or: at his uncle's), er wohnt bei seinem Onfel.
  - (3) about (one's person), with, as: I have no money about (with) me (!ci mir).
- mit, with, as: He is coming with (along with) his friend (mit seinem Freunde); he struck the dog with a stick (mit einem Stocke).
- nach, (1) after (time, order), as: He arrived after his brother (nach feinem Bruber).
  - (2) to (with names of places), as: He is going to Quebec (und) Duebec); to England (und) England); home-(wards) (und) Hause).
  - (3) according to (often follows its case in this sense), as: This is wrong according to my opinion (nath meiner Meinung, or meiner Meinung nath).
- scit, since, as: He has not been here since the war (seit bem Kriege); seit hundert Jahren, for the last hundred years.

- von, (1) from, as: He has just come from dinner (von dem, vom Wittagseffen).
  - (2) of, as: We were speaking of our mother (von unferer Mutter).
  - (3) by (with personal agent after the passive voice), as:

    Children are loved by their parents (von ihren Eltern).
- zu, (1) to (persons), as: He went to his friend, or to his friend's (zu seinem Freunde); he spoke to me (zu mir).
  - (2) to (places, if not proper names; see nach, above), as:

    He was going to the town (zu ber, or zur Stadt).
  - (3) at (with proper names of towns only), as: He lives at Ottawa (zu Ottawa); at home (zu Hauje).

REMARKS.— 1. Bei, bon and zu (and sometimes außer) are contracted with the Dative Sing. Masc. and Neuter of the unemphasized Definite Article, thus: bei bem = beim, bon bem = bom, zu bem = zum; zu is also contracted with the Dat. Sing. Fem., thus: zu ber = zur.

- 2. The -e of the Dat. Sing. is never used when a preposition (except zu) stands before a substantive without an article, pronoun or adjective preceding, as: auß Hold, of wood; mit Fleiß, on purpose; but nach Haufe, home; zu Haufe, at home.
  - 3. Observe the following:
    - (Germ.) Der Brief meines Onkels,
    - (Engl.) The letter of my uncle = My uncle's letter.
    - (Germ.) Der Brief won meinem Ontel,
    - (Engl.) The letter from my uncle.

The English preposition of with a substantive must generally be rendered in German by a Genitive case without a preposition, whenever it can be turned into the English Possessive case, as above; otherwise by non, as:

He was speaking of his mother (von feiner Mutter).

4. Observe also the following:

(Engl.) Show the book to me = Show me the book, (Germ.) Zeigen Sie mir das Buch (Dat. without Preposition).

The English preposition to with a substantive must be rendered in German by the *Dative without a preposition* whenever the subst. can be turned into the English Indirect Objective, as above; otherwise (generally) by the preposition  $\mathfrak{z}u$ , as:

He spoke to me (zu mir).

#### VOCABULARY.

to answer, antworten honour, ehren show, zeigen picture, das Bild letter, der Brief Germany, Deutschland present, das Geschenk glass, das Glas war, der Krieg dinner, das Mit'tagsessen journey, die Reise Roman, der Römer aunt, die Tante thankful, grateful, dankbar (gov. dat.) ready, finished, fertig quiet, still, still there, da

Idiom : It is I, Ich bin es.

#### EXERCISE XIII.

A. 1. Seit dem Kriege sind meine Schwäger sehr arm. 2. Wir haben uns zwei Häuser in der Stadt gekauft. 3. Wo ist deine Aufgabe? Hier ist sie. 4. Wir machten nach dem Mittagsessen einen Spaziergang mit unseren Gästen. 5. Mein Bater hat mir ein Geschenk geschickt und ich bin ihm dafür sehr dankbar. 6. Bist du mit deiner Arbeit sertig? Nein, ich bin noch nicht damit fertig. 7. Wir werden morgen mit Ihnen nach Montreal reisen. 8. Karl lernt seit vier Monaten Deutsch. 9. "Setzt euch und seid still," sagte die Mutter zu ihren Töchtern. 10. Würden Sie viel für diese Bücher bezahlen? Ich würde fünf Thaler dafür bezahlen. 11.

Sind die Mädchen zu Hause? Ja, ihre Mutter schickte sie um fünf Ilhr nach Hause. 12. Sehre deinen Vater und deine Mutter. 13. Bei meinem Onkel redeten wir immer viel vom Kriege. 14. Sind Sie es, Herr Schmidt? Ja, ich bin es. 15. Haben Sie in Deutschland viel Vergnügen gehabt? Sie sagen nicht viel von Ihrer Neise. 16. Bei Ihnen haben wir immer viel Verzgnügen. 17. Dieser Mann lobt sich zu viel. 18. Meine Tante ist jetzt bei mir; ich werde ihr die Stadt zeigen. 19. Mein Bruder und meine Schwester sind zu Hause. 20. Was würden Sie für diese Gläser bezahlen? Ich würde nicht viel dafür bezahlen.

B. 1. Here is my uncle's letter. 2. Is he for me or against me? 3. Our servant is from Germany. 4. 'Buy me an apple,' said the child to its mother. 5. Have you sold your horses? 6. The teacher speaks of the gods of the Romans. 7. Charles, you have answered well, sit down. 8. My son always sends me the newspaper from Chicago. 9. My friend showed me his pictures. 10. Buy me this ring; it is magnificent. 11. Who is in the garden? It is she. 12. I believe that Charles has bought himself a hat. 13. Here is the letter from my uncle. 14. I am ashamed of you, because you are not industrious. 15. My father would send me to the city, if I were old enough.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XIII.

1. Weshalb schämen Sie sich meiner? 2. Ist es Karl oder sein Bruder? 3. Seit wann lernen Sie Deutsch? 4. Wer hat mir diese Zeitung geschickt? 5. Was machte ich nach dem Mittagsessen? 6. Wo hat mein Vater dieses Buch gekauft?

#### SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON A.

# ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND PREPOSITIONS.

#### 47. Pronouns in Address.

1. The pronouns bu and in are the usual pronouns of address in poetry and the drama, the being used for one person or more, as:

Der Becher ift bein,

Und diefen Ring noch bestimm' ich bir,

The goblet is thine,

And this ring too I'll keep for thee.

(Schiller, "Der Taucher.")

Laßt, Bater, genng sein bas graufame Spiel. Er hat euch bestanden, was keiner besteht,

. Und fonnt ihr des Bergens Gelüften nicht gahmen, u. f. w.,

Enough, father, of this cruel sport.

He has ventured for you what none will venture, .

And if you cannot subdue the desire of your heart, etc. (Ibid.)

2. Gr and Sic (3. sing.) were formerly regularly used as pronouns of address towards inferiors, with the verb agreeing in 3. sing., and they are often found so used in the classics, being spelt with a capital. Their use may imply contempt; so Faust says to his servant Wagner, who is otherwise addressed as "ibr":

Sei Er fein ichellenlauter Thor,

Don't be a jingling fool. (GOETHE, "Fauft.")

- 3. Er and Sie, also ihr, are still used in complimentary address, corresponding to the polite use of Sie (3. plur.), by people of the lower orders.
- 48. The forms meine Egleichen, beine Egleichen, etc., = 'a person, or persons, like me, you,' etc. (vulg. 'the like of me'), are used as indeclinable substantives, either as object or as predicate, as:

Bir werden feinesgleichen nie wieder feben,

We ne'er shall look upon his like again.

Du bift nicht meinesgleichen,

You are not (a person) like me (my equal).

(For the use of desgleichen, dergleichen, see §§ 97, 139.)

49. In addressing persons of rank, the proper title, as: Stre Innden, 'Your Honour'; Eure (abbrev. Em.) Excellenz, 'Your Excellency'; Eure'

Durchlaucht, 'Your Serene Highness'; Eure Majestät, 'Your Majesty,' etc., is used, also without the poss. adj., and with the verb in the plur. It was this plur. use of complimentary titles that gave rise to the use of Sie as the pronoun of polite address. The old forms Ihro, Dero, are now obsolete.

#### 50. PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE.

- 1. The preposition fonder takes the accusative, but is of rare occurrence.
- 2. Gegen has an obsolete form gen, now used only in certain phrases, as: gen Himmel, heavenwards; gen Norben, northwards, etc.
  - 3. Ohne has a dative in the phrase ohnedem, 'at any rate.'
- 4. Bis may be followed by another preposition, indicating motion or direction to (nad), 311, a11, a11, etc.); if this preposition is one governing dat. or acc., it will always take the accusative when combined with bis, as:

Er ging bis an's Thor, he went as far as the gate.

#### **51.** Prepositions with Dative.

The following additional prepositions take the Dative only:

- 1. Binnen, within (of *time*), as: Binnen zwei Tagen, within two days. Notes. 1. Binnen sometimes governs the *genitive*.
  - 2. Binnen is used of time only; innerhalb (see § ) of space and time.
- 2. Entge'gen Contrary to, as: Meiner Neigung entgegen (zuwider), 3. Zuwi'der
- 4. Gegenüber, opposite (to), follows the case, as:

Dem Thore gegenüber, opposite the gate.

Note. — The case is sometimes placed between the two parts of the preposition, as: gegen bem Thore über; but this is not to be imitated.

- 5. Gemäß, according to, agreeably to, precedes or follows its case, as: Seinem Bunsche gemäß (or gemäß seinem Bunsche), Agreeably to his desire.
- 6. Gleich, like, precedes or follows its case, as:
  Sie lächelte gleich einem Engel feinem Engel

Sie lächelte gleich einem Engel (einem Engel gleich), She smiled like an angel.

7. Nachft, or } next to (1) of proximity (= neben), as:

Er saß nächst mir (or mir zunächst), He sat next to me.

(2) of succession, as:

Nächst dem Leben liebt er die Ehre, Next to life he loves honour.

Note.— βιπάφft usually follows its case; πάφft is the commoner of the two as preposition, especially in the senses under (2).

8. Nebst together with, along with,as:

Der Herr kam nebst seinem Freunde, The gentleman came along with his friend. Der Voter samt seinen Kindern, The father together with his children.

Note 1. Distinguish nebff, along with, and neben (alongside of, near).

2. Samt is used of objects naturally belonging together, as above.

10. Oh is poetical and obsolete for über, and denotes:

- (1) above (of position), as: Ob dem Altare, above the altar.
- (2) about, concerning, as: Entriistet ob biesem Frevel, indignant about (at) this outrage.

Note. - In the latter sense it also takes a genitive.

#### LESSON XIV.

CONJUGATION OF Sein, to be. - DECLENSION OF SUBSTAN-TIVES. - WEAK OR - STEMS: - Rnabe Model.

52. Paradigm of fein, to be.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Infin. jein Impf. Indic. war Past Part. gewesen Indicative.

PRESENT.

ich bin, I am

bu bift, thou art

bu bift, the is

cr ift, he is

cr fei

wir find, we are

ihr feid, ye are

fie find, they are

ich fie feicn

ich feicn

ich feicn

ich feicn

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

#### IMPERFECT.

ich war, I was

ich wäre, (if) I were (might be), etc.

bu warst, thou wast er war, he was wir waren, we were ihr waren, ye were sie waren, they were bu wärest, thou wert er wäre, he were wir wären, we were ihr wären, ye were sie wären, they were

#### PERFECT.

#### (Pres. of fein + P. Part.)

I have been, etc. I (may) have been, etc. ich bin ich fei du bist du seiest er ist er sei gewesen gewesen wir seien wir sind ihr feid ihr feiet fie find sie seien

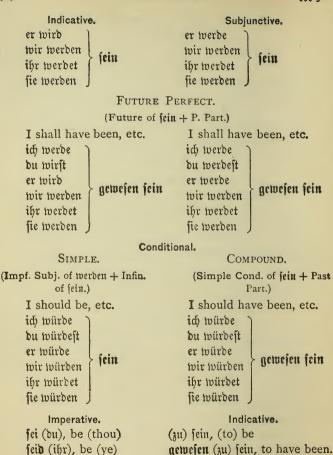
#### PLUPERFECT.

## (Imperf. of fein + P. Part.)

I had (might have) been, I had been, etc. ich war ich wäre Tetc. du warst du wärest er war er märe gewesen gewesen wir waren wir wären ibr waret ihr wäret fie waren sie wären

## FUTURE.

## (Pres. of werden + Infin. of fein.)



Participles.

Pres. seiend, being

Past. gemejen, been

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the absence of the Subjunctive -e in the 1, and 3. sing. Pres.

2. The above paradigm shows the use of fein in forming its own perfect tenses, in precisely the same way as haben is used with most verbs. Sein is used in the same way with the verbs mentioned in the following Section.

## 53. Use of fein as Auxiliary of Tense.

Sein replaces haben as auxiliary of the perfect tenses with the following neuter verbs:

(a) With those expressing a change of condition, as:

sterben, die wachsen, grow werden, recover (from illness) werden, become.

(b) With neuter verbs of motion when a change of place is specified or implied, as:

fahren, drive, go (in a conveyance) fommen, come gehen, go, walk ziehen, move, go, proceed.

- (c) Sein, to be; bleiben, to remain; begegnen, to meet; folgen, to follow.
- (d) The impersonal verbs: gelingen, glüden, to succeed; geschen, to happen.

Remarks.— 1. The proper auxiliary to use with such verbs is always given in the dictionary.

- 2. Other verbs of this sort only take fein when the change of place is specified.
- 3. Most of them (except fommen) take haben when they denote an action merely, and not a specific change of place, as:

Er hat viel gereist, he has travelled a great deal.

4. Compounds do not necessarily take the same auxiliary as the simple verb. Thus, begehen, being transitive, takes haben, the prefix changing the nature of the verb.

# 54. Declension of der Anabe, the boy.

# Singular.

Plural.

Nom. der Anabe, the boy

Gen. des Knaben, the boy's, of

the boy bem Anaben, (to, for) the

Dat. bem Anaben, (to, for) the

Acc. den Anaben, the boy

when the hou

die Anaben, the boys

ber Anaben, the boys', of the boys

den Knaben, (to, for) the

boys

die Anaben, the boys

OBSERVE: 1. All cases end in -n, except Nom. Sing.

2. No Umlaut added in Plural.

3. The only change is the addition of -n.

Remark.—The Plural ox-en is a remnant of the -n declension in English.

### 55. Substantives ending in a consonant add -en, as:

### Singular.

Plural.

Nom. der Graf, the count

Gen. des Grafen, of the count Dat. dem Grafen, (to, for) the

count

Acc. ben Grafen, the count

die Grafen, the counts

ber Grafen, of the counts ben Grafen, (to, for) the

die Grafen, the counts

## 56. Feminines do not vary in the singular, as:

## Singular.

#### Plural.

Nom. die Blume, the flower

Gen. ber Blume, of the flower

Dat. ber Blume, (to, for) the flower

Acc. die Blume, the flower

bie Blumen, the flowers ber Blumen, of the flowers

ben Blumen, (to, for) the flowers

nowers

bie Blumen, the flowers.

## 57. In this way are declined:

All masculines ending in -ε, except ber Räse, cheese (see § 17), and the doubtful ones in § 61.

2. Certain masculines which have dropped the final -e, as:

ber Bair, bear
ber Bauer, peasant
ber Chrift, christian
ber Gefell(e), fellow, companion,
journeyman
ber Graf, count
ber Hallow, ber Herdsman, shepber Mensch, man (human being = Lat. homo)

A full List of these Substantives is given in App. F.

- 3. All feminines, except Mutter, Tochter (§ 17, 3), the monosyllables under § 22, 3, and those in -nis and -sal (22, 4).
  - 4. No Neuters (but see §§ 62, 63).
- 5. Foreign Masculines accented on the last syllable, except those in -a1, -an, -ar, etc. (§ 22, 6).

Further Examples:

## Like Anabe:

	Plural.
G. D. A. Boten	N. G. D. A. Boten
Hafen	Hafen
Riefen	Riefen
Russen	Russen
	Hafen Riefen

## Like Graf:

N. ber Bär, bear	G. d. A. Bären N	I. G. d. A. Bären
der Fürst, prince	Fürsten	Fürsten
der Held, hero	Helden	Helden
der Mensch, man	Menschen	Menschen
ber Student', student	Studenten	Studenten
der Soldat', soldier	Solbaten	Soldaten

REMARK 1. Der Herr, gentleman, master, lord, adds -n only in the sing., but -en in plur.

#### Like Blume:

Singular.

Plural.

N. G. D. A. Plume

N. G. D. A. Blumen

Rirche

Rirchen

Schönhei**t** That Schönheiten Thaten

Wissenschaft

Wissenschaften

REMARK 2. Feminines in -el, -er add-n only in the Plur., as:

Sing. die Feder, pen die Gabel, fork Plur. Federn

die Schwester, sister

Schwestern

REMARK 3. Feminines in -in double the n in the plur., as:

Sing. die Gräfin, countess Plur. Gräfinnen

#### VOCABULARY.

admire, bewundern
hasten, eilen
hunt, jagen
dwell, reside, live, wohnen
astrologer, der Aftrolog'
lady, die Dame
influence, der Ein'fluß\*
heathen, der Heide
comet, der Komet'
landscape, die Landschaft

monarch, ber Monarch' news, die Nachricht nephew, der Neffe planet, der Planet' Prussian, der Breuße raven, der Rabe valley, das Thal happy, glüdlich when, als, wenn when? wann?

58. When = wenn always with Present, Perfect and Future; and also with Imperfect and Pluperfect, of a habitual or repeated occurrence (= whenever), as:

I always rose, when (i. e. whenever, wenn) the sun rose.

When = als with Imperfect and Pluperfect only, of a single, definite occurrence, as:

I rose yesterday, when (als) the sun rose.

When? interrogative = wann? as:

When was your father here? Wann war Ihr Bater hier?

Note. - Remember that wenn also = "if."

59. When a conditional or "if" sentence precedes the principal sentence on which it depends, the principal sentence is usually introduced by the particle [0, which is not to be translated into English, or counted as a member of the sent.

NOTE.—A principal sentence preceded by a subordinate clause has the subject after the verb, the subord clause being reckoned as a single idea (see § 20), as: Wenn id) Gesb hätte, so würde ich Freunde haben.

#### EXERCISE XIV.

A. 1. Wir werden morgen zu unserer Tante in Ottawa reisen. 2. Die Boten bes Monarchen find mit der Nachricht nach Paris geeilt. 3. Die Urme eines Riefen find fehr lang und ftark. 4. Die Bäume in diesen Balbern find fehr fcon gewesen, aber jest find die Blätter gelb geworben. 5. Der Bater ift in ber Stadt gewesen und bat seinen Angben Bücher gefauft. 6. Ich bewundre Die Schönheit diefer Landschaften. 7. Die Schüler und ihr Lehrer redeten viel von den Thaten der Helden. 8. Die Schüler werden gludlich fein, wenn sie mit ihrer Arbeit fertig find. 9. Sind die Ruffen Beiden? Nein, fie find Chriften. 10. Mein Neffe war lange in Berlin gewesen und hatte bort die Wissenschaften studiert. 11. Meine Schwester war mit ihrer Arbeit nicht fertig, als ich gestern bei ihr war. 12. Die Aftrologen redeten viel vom Ginfluß ber Rometen und Planeten. 13. Der Lehrer lobte feine Schüler und fagte zu ihnen: "Ihr feid fleißig gewesen." 14. Wenn ich nach Deutschland reise, werde ich meine Oheime und meine Tanten befuchen. 15. Die Anaben hatten viel Bergnügen, als fie die Sasen und Füchse burch Wälber und Thäler jagten. 16. Die Gräfinnen waren fehr glücklich, als fie die Nachricht von ihrem Bater hörten. 17. Dieje Berren werben arm werben, wenn fie ihr Gelb fo verschwenden. 18. Unfere Neffen sind lange bei uns gewesen.

B. 1. The castles of the count are magnificent. 2. The churches of this city are large and beautiful. 3. When will your brother be at home? 4. Are these soldiers Prussians? No, they are Russians. 5. The bears live in the forests. 6. The boys have two ravens and three hares. 7. The ladies have been in the church, but they are now at home. 8. Who was right? 9. For a boy of (bon) five years he is very large. 10. I should be happy, if I were rich. 11. He has not been at home to-day. 12. When she was in the city she lived at her aunt's. 13. Would the girl be contented, if she were with her mother? 14. The students became tired, because they had studied too much.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XIV.

1. Was hat Ihr Neffe in Berlin gemacht? 2. Hatte ich Recht? 3. Wer eilte mit der Nachricht nach Paris? 4. Haben Sie jemals Hasen oder Füchse gejagt? 5. Wann wird mein Bruder zu Hause sein? 6. Würde ich glücklich sein, wenn ich reich wäre?

#### LESSON XV.

MIXED DECLENSION. — DOUBLE PLURALS. — PREPOSITIONS
GOVERNING DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

60. Declension of der Name, the name.

Singular. Plural.

Nom. der Name, the name Gen. des Namens, of the name

Dat. dem Namen, (to, for) the

Acc. ben Namen, the name

bie Namen, the names ber Namen, of the names ben Namen, (to, for) the

names die Namen, the names

OBSERVE: 1. -e in the Nom. Sing. and -ens in Gen. Sing.

2. -en all other cases.

3. No Umlaut, except in Schabe (see below).

Note. - The Nom. Sing. sometimes has -n.

61. In this way are declined the following masculines:

ber Buchstabe, letter (of the Al-

ber Gedanke, thought, idea ber Haufe, heap

phabet) ber Friede, peace

der Same, seed

der Funke, spark

ber Schabe, harm, injury [pl. Schaben]

ber Glaube, faith, belief,

ber Wille, will

Also one neuter: das Herz, the heart (Acc. Sing. Herz).

62. Some masculine and neuter substantives follow the model of Maler (§ 16) or Sohn (§ 21) in the singular, and that of Annhe (§ 54) or Graf (§ 55) in the plural, as:

Der Nachbar, the neighbour: Sing. N. D A. Nachbar, G. Nachbars; Plur. Nachbarn.

Das Ohr, the ear: Sing. N. A. Ohr, G. Ohr(e)\$, D. Ohr(e); Plur. Ohren.

63. In this way decline also:

1. Certain masculines, as:

ber Staat, state

ber Better, (male) cousin

ber Strahl, beam, ray

2. Certain neuters, as:

das Auge, eye das Bett, bed bas Ende, end

(A full List of these substantives will be found in App. G.)

3. Foreign (Latin) masculines in unaccented -or, as:

ber Professor; G. Professor; Plur. Professor: o. Professor; Plur. Professor: o. Doktors; Plur. Dokto'ren.

#### 64. SUBSTANTIVES WITH DOUBLE PLURAL.

The following have double forms of the Plural, with a different meaning for each:

Singular.	Plural.
das Band, ribbon	Bänder
bas Band, tie, bond	Bande
(ber Band, volume	Banbe)
bie Bank, bank (commercial)	Banken
bie Bank, bench	Bänke
das Gesicht, face, countenance	Gesichter
das Gesicht, vision	Gesichte
ber Laben, shop	Läden
der Laden, shutter	Laden
bas Land, land, country	Länder
bas Land, province	Lande
San mant ( Wörter, words considered	d separately
word words considered	connectedly
(as making sense)	

REMARK. — The plural Lande is also used in poetical language; and in the compound bie Rieberlande, the Netherlands (= Lower Provinces).

# **65.** Prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative.

The following nine prepositions govern the Dative when they indicate *locality* merely, or answer the question 'where?' or 'in what place?'; the Accusative when they imply *motion*, *direction* or *tendency* (figurative motion) towards, or answer the question 'whither?' or 'to what place or person?':

an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor and zwischen.

## an, r. (of place):

- (a) With DAT., on, upon (adjacent to), as:
  The picture hangs on the wall (an ber Mand).
- (b) With ACC., to, towards, on, as:

  I hang the picture on the wall (an bie Banb).

surface nonhorizontal.

2. (of time, date) with DAT. ONLY, on, upon, as:

I was born on the eighteenth of August (am achtzehnten August).

He will arrive on Monday (am Montag).

Observe: that in this use the Prep. and Article are always contracted.

# auf, (of place):

- (a) With dat., on, upon (on top of), as:

  The book lies on the table (auf
  bem Tijd).
- (b) With Acc., to, towards, on, as:

  I lay the book on the table (auf
  ben Tifth).

surface

## hinter, behind :

- (a) With DAT., as: The dog lies behind the stove (hinter dem Ofen).
- (b) With ACC., as: The dog goes behind the stove (hinter ben Dfen).

# in, 1. (of place):

- (a) With DAT., in, as: The gardener is in the garden (im Garten).
- (b) With ACC., into, as: The gardener goes into the garden (in ben Garten).

2. (of time) in (with DAT. ONLY), as: God made the world in seven days (in fiehen Zagen).

# neben, near, alongside of, by:

- (a) With DAT., as: The chair stands near (by) the table (neben bem Tische).
- (b) With ACC., as: I place the chair near the table (neben den Tisch).

# über, 1. (of place) over, above:

- (a) With dat., as: The bridge is over the river ("ber bem Flusse).
- (b) With ACC., as: I go over the river ("iber den Fluß).
- 2. (of excess) over, above (with ACC. ONLY), as: He remained over (more than) two days (über zwei Tage).
- 3. about, concerning (with ACC. ONLY), as: He spoke with me about his journey (über seine Reise).

# unter, 1. (of place), under, beneath, below:

- (a) With DAT., as: The cat lies under the chair (unter bem Stuhle).
- (b) With ACC., as: The cat creeps under the chair (unter den Stuhl).
- 2. (of number) among:
- (a) With DAT., as: The wolf is among the sheep (unter den Schafen).
- (b) With ACC., as: The wolf mingles among the sheep (unter die Schafe).
- bor, 1. (of place) before, in front of:
  - (a) With DAT., as: The chair stands before the window (vor bem Fenster).

- (b) With Acc., as: Place the chair before the window (bors Fenster).
- 2. (of order) before (with DAT. ONLY), as: He came before me (vor mir).
- 3. (of time) before, ago (with dat. only), as:

  He came before two o'clock (nor zwei Uhr).

  He came two hours ago (nor zwei Stunden).

# zwijchen, between (of two objects):

§ 65]

- (a) With DAT., as: The chair stands between the door and the window (zwijnjen ber Thure und bem Fenster).
- (b) With Acc., as: Put the chair between the door and the window (zwischen die Thure und das Fenster).

Remark. — Observe the following contractions with the unemphasized Definite Article:

an bem = am in bem = im an bas = ans in bas = ins auf bas = aufs

Also the following, which are of less frequent occurrence:

hinter dem = hinterm
hinter das = hinters
über dem = überm
über das = übers
über das = übers
über das = vors

#### VOCABULARY.

please, lit., (I) beg, (I) pray, lay, legen

(id) bitte put, place, set (down), seten

hang (trans.), hängen put, place, set (upright),

fetch, bring, get, holen ftellen

hear, hören seek, look for, suchen

hunt, chase, pursue, jagen kill, töten

wait (for), warten (auf + acc.) strawberry, die Erdbeere fire, das Feuer Netherlands, die Niederlande philosophy, die Philosophie' stove, der Ofen\* school, die Schule door, die Thür(e) difference, der Unterschied university, die Universität dictionary, das Wörterbuch

open, offen
heavy, hard, schwer
ten, zehn
thereupon, on it, etc., darauf
first, not before, erst
if you please, gefälligst
no longer (lit., not more),
nicht mehr.
where, wo
in order to, um (foll. by infin.
with zu at end of clause)

[§§ 65-

#### EXERCISE XV.

A. 1. Jener Mann fette sich gegen meinen Willen auf die Bank. 2. Der Neffe des Professors war lange Student, aber er ist jett Doktor der Philosophie. 3. Warum haben meine Bettern über (at) mich gelacht? 4. Mein Bater wird uns am Montag oder (am) Dienstag in die Schule schicken. 5. Der Sohn und die Tochter unser (e) & Nachbars suchten Blumen und Erdbeeren im Walde. 6. Mein Later und meine Mutter sind seit drei Wochen auf dem Lande. 7. Die Banken werden erst morgen um gehn Uhr offen sein. 8. Legen Sie gefälligst biese Bande neben mich auf die Bank. 9. Der Rönig der Niederlande reifte durch feine Staaten unter bem Namen eines Grafen. 10. Der Friede bes Herrn fei mit euch. 11. Der Graf schickte seinen Gohn auf die Universität. 12. Das Rind ist sehr frank und die Mutter hat zwei Doktoren geholt. 13. Weshalb warten Gie fo lange vor der Thure ? 14. Die Herren jagten den Baren hinter den Wald, wo fie ihn toteten. 15. Im Winter setzen wir uns oft vor das Teuer und bewundern die Funken. 16. Unfere Bergen werden immer traurig, wenn wir Nachricht vom Kriege hören. 17. Was ist ber Unterschied zwischen den Wörtern Banken und Banke? 18. Die Augen des Studenten sind schwach, weil er zu viel ftudiert hat. 19. Seten Sie sich auf biesen Stuhl, benn Sie sind mube. 20. Bitte, stellen Sie mir biesen Stuhl hinter ben Dfen. 21. Die Studenten lernen vom Professor die Namen ber Götter ber Römer.

B. 1. The children were playing before the house. 2. What is the name of this professor? His name is Schmidt. 3. Hang the picture of my father over the door. 4. Every human being has two eves and two ears. 5. Why do the professors praise their students? 6. The professors praise the diligence of their students. 7. The difference between my brother and me is not great. 8. I laid the pens upon the table, but they are no longer there. 9. Our neighbours sent their children into the wood to search for flowers. 10. Our cousin lived happy and in peace with his neighbours. 11. The pupils would look for the words in a dictionary, if they had time. 12. Your eyes are tired, because you have studied too much. 13. These words are hard to learn, for every word has ten letters. 14. Place this chair, if you please, behind the stove for me. 15. If Charles is not ready, we shall go (reifen) without him to Germany.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XV.

1. Wann wird Ihr Vater Sie auf die Universität schicken?
2. Weshalb hat die Mutter die Doktoren geholt? 3. Was lernten die Studenten von den Professoren? 4. Werden Sie ohne mich nach Chicago reisen? 5. Wo reiste der König der Niederlande? 6. Wann werden die Kirchen offen sein?

#### SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON B.

ANOMALIES OF DECLENSION.

66. Substantives without Plural.

The following classes of substantives are used in the singular only:

1. Proper names, unless they denote a class (as: die Rapaele, painters like Raphael), or several individuals of the same name (as: die vier ersten heinriche, the first four Henries, i. e., kings of that name).

- 2. Names of materials, etc., unless they denote different kinds of the same material (as: Gräser, Salze, different kinds of grass, salt), or when they have a special meaning (as: Griber, sums of money; Papiere, documents).
- 3. Abstract Substantives, unless they have a concrete (particular) meaning, as: Tugenden, virtues; Schönheiten, beauties, etc.

Note. — Many nouns of this sort, when used in a concrete sense, use the plurals of other words, generally compound, as: ber Tod, death; bie Todesjälle, deaths (i. e. cases of death).

A list of these is given in App. H.

For the plural of nouns of measure, etc., see Less. XXX.

#### 67. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SINGULAR.

The following classes of substantives are used in the plural only:

- 1. Names of certain diseases: Die Blattern, the small-pox; die Masern or Röteln, the measles.
- 2. The following names of festivals, etc.: Beihnachten, Christmas; Kasten, Lent; Ostern, Easter; Pfingsten, Pentecost (Whitsuntide).
- 3. Those plural by meaning, viz.: Alpen, Alps; Beinkleider, trousers; Briefschaften, documents; Einkünfte, income, revenue; Estern, parents; Ferien, holidays; Gliedmaßen, limbs; Hefen, dregs, yeast; Rosten, Unkosten, expenses; Leute, people; Mosten, curds.
- 68. Irregular Compounds. 1. Substantives having -mann as the last component form the plural:
- (a) Regularly, when denoting male individuals or occupations, as: Ehemänner, husbands; Ehrenmänker, men of honour; Staatsmänner, statesmen.
- (b) By changing -mann into -lente, when used collectively or in a general sense, or to include both sexes, as: Arbeitslente, working-people; Ehelente, married people; Handelslente, trades-people; Landslente, country-people; Landslente, people of the same country; Mietslente, lodgers (male and female).

Notes. - r. With words of common occurrence, such as Maufmann, merchant, Gofsmann, courtier, the plur. with -fcute only is used.

- 2. The form with -leute is the plur. of the fem. compound with -frau (e. g. Chefrau, married woman), as well as of that with -mann.
- 2. Die Ohnmacht, the fainting-fit, and die Bollmacht, the power-ofattorney (from Macht, pl. Mächte), have the pl. -machten; die Antwort, the answer (from das Bort, pl. Borte and Börter), has pl. -en.

- 69. Special Cases. 1. A few substantives in -m, viz.: Atem, Doem, Brodem, breath; Brojam, crumb; Eidam, son-in-law, follow the Maser model (§ 16) in the sing. The plur., if it occurs, ends in -ε (Hund model, § 21, δ, no Umlaut), except Brojam, which is more commonly weak in the plur. (-en).
- 2. Weak feminines are often found with the old weak gen. and dat. in -en, especially when used without article after a preposition, as: auf Erben, on earth (but auf ber Erbe, on the earth); zu Ehren, in honour of; in Gnaden, in mercy, etc.

#### LESSON XVI.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:-RECAPITULATION.-PROPER NAMES. - PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE CENITIVE.

70. SUMMARY OF DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The following tables show the endings of the various forms of Substantive Declension:

## A. Strong Declension.

I. Maler N (Contracted				III. Do	rf Model.
Sing.		Sing.		Sing.	
Nom. —			—е		-er
Gen. ——§		—(e)5	—е	—(e)ĝ	-er
Dat. —	—(n)	—(e)	-en	—(e)	-ern
Acc. —			—е		-er

REMARKS.—1. The term 'Strong Declension' is applicable to all the three forms given above.

2. The @vhn Model is sometimes called the Primary Form of the Strong Declension, and shows the -\$\vartheta\$ of Gen. Sing. and -\$\varepsilon\$ of the Plur. From this are derived the other two forms, viz.:

7

- 3. By contraction (dropping -e of the termination), the Maler Model, hence called also the Contracted Form of the Strong Declension; and
- 4. By enlargement (adding -r in the Plur., the Sing. remaining the same), the Dorf Model, hence also called the Enlarged Form of the Strong Declension.
  - 5. Feminines remain unchanged in the Sing.
- 6. The Umlaut may occur in any of these forms, viz.: generally in masc. monosyllables, regularly in feminines and in Enlarged Form; never in neuter monosyllables of Primary Form. (See Lists, App. A., B., C., E.)

#### B. Weak Declension.

Rnabe, Graf, Blume Model.

Sing. Nom. ——(
$$\mathfrak{e}$$
) Plur. ——( $\mathfrak{e}$ ) $\mathfrak{n}$  Gen. ——( $\mathfrak{e}$ ) $\mathfrak{n}$  ——( $\mathfrak{e}$ ) $\mathfrak{n}$  ——( $\mathfrak{e}$ ) $\mathfrak{n}$  Acc. ——( $\mathfrak{e}$ ) $\mathfrak{n}$  ——( $\mathfrak{e}$ ) $\mathfrak{n}$  ——( $\mathfrak{e}$ ) $\mathfrak{n}$ 

Observe: 1. The persistent -n. 2. The absence of Umlaut. 3. Uniformity of Cases. 4. Feminines unchanged in Sing.

C. Mixed Declension.

I. Name Model.	II. Nachbar, Ohr Model.
Sing. N. —e Plur. —n	Sing. — Plur. —(e)n
G. —ns —n	$-(e)\mathfrak{s}$ $-(e)\mathfrak{n}$
D. —n —n	—(e) —(e)n
A. —n —n	——————(e)n

REMARKS. - I. All three follow the Rnabe Model in the Plur.

2. The Name Model is a Mixture of the Maler and Anabe models in the Sing., usually taking - in the Gen., sometimes -n in the Nom.

- 3. The Nachbar Model follows the Maler Model in the Sing.
  - 4. The Ohr Model follows the Sohn Model in the Sing.
- 71. The Essential Parts for the Declension of a Substantive are:

The Nominative Singular, and The Nominative Plural.

These being given, the remaining cases of the noun can be formed from the above Tables, with the assistance of the following:

REMARKS. - I. All Feminines are unchanged in the Sing.

- 2. The Nom. and Acc. Sing. are always alike, except in the Weak Declension (Anabe, Graf and Name models).
- 3. The Gen. Sing. ends in -3 in Masculines (except in the Weak Declension) and in all Neuters.
  - 4. The Nom., Gen. and Acc. Plur. are always alike.
  - 5. The Dat. Plur. always ends in -n.

Decline the following substantives throughout:

Das Buch, die Schönheit, der Sturm, die Tochter, der Schwager, der Better, das Regiment, die Stadt, das Auge, der Mann, der Mensch, der Palast', der Planet', der Spaziergang, das Schaf, die Frau, das Fräulein, der Feiertag, die Schwester, der Glaube.

#### DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

## 72. Geographical Proper Names:

- 1. If never used without an article, etc. (see § 44, 2, 3), are declined like common nouns, as: ber Rhein, G. des Rhein(e)s, D. dem Rhein(e); die Schweiz, G. der Schweiz, D. der Schweiz, etc.
- 2. If not generally used with an article, etc., they take no ending except -\$\varepsilon\$ in the Gen. Sing. (unless they end in a

sibilant), as: Deutschland, Germany, G. Deutschlands; Frank-reich, France, G. Frankreichs; Rom, Rome, G. Roms.

- 3. If they end in a sibilant (3, fch, 3, fk, x), the Gen. is replaced by the preposition von, as: Die Besestigungen von Baris', the fortifications of Paris.
- 4. **Son** may replace the Gen. with other names also, and is always used after titles, as: Die Königin von England, the Queen of England; ber Bürgermeister von Toronto, the Mayor of Toronto.
- 5. When the Name of a Place is preceded by a common noun, they are in apposition to each other, but the proper name is not inflected, as: Die Stadt London (not von Lonston), the City of London, c. der Stadt London. Das Königreich Preußen, the Kingdom of Prussia, G. des Königreichs Preußen.
  - 6. Proper Names of Places are not used in the Plural.
- 73. Proper Names of Persons are now inflected in the Gen. Sing. only, as follows:
- r. If preceded by an article, etc. (which shows the case), they remain unchanged, as: The letters of Cicero, bie Briefe bes Cicero.
- 2. If not preceded by an article showing case, etc., those ending in a sibilant, and Feminines in -e, add -(e)ns in the Gen.; all others add -s only, as: Mar, G. Marens; Louise, G. Louisens; Rarl, G. Rarls.

Remark. — Surnames and classical names in a sibilant now commonly take an apostrophe instead of -ens, as: Dpit's' Werte, Opitz's works.

74. Family Names are used in the Plural with added -8, as in English, but without article, as: the Schmidts, Schmidts (meaning the members of the Schmidt family).

Further Remarks on the Declension of Proper Names and of Foreign Substantives will be found in Supp. Less. C., below.

#### 75. Prepositions Governing the Genitive.

r. Wegen, on account of, on behalf of, for the sake of (sometimes follows its case), as: I remained at home on account of (for the sake of) my child, (wegen meines Kindes).

Note.— Degen always follows the Gen. of the Pers. Prons., which are then written in one word with the preposition, and have special forms ending in -t, as: meinenwegen, for my sake; threfwegen, for her (their) sake; unfertwegen, for our sake, etc.; also with the Relative and Demonstr. her: here(n)twegen (Sing. Fem. and Plur.—'for the sake of whom, which, that,' etc.).

- 2. Bährend, during, as: We went out walking during the rain (während bes Regens).
- 3. Statt, or austatt, instead of, as: He will come instead of his friend (statt, or austatt seines Freundes).

The other PREPS, with GEN, will be found in Lesson XXXVIII.

#### VOCABULARY.

give, present, make a present
of (foll. by dat. of person
and acc. of thing), ichensen
library, die Bibliothet'
bookseller, der Buch'händler
cousin (fem.), die Cousine
Elizabeth, Elisabeth
Europe, Euro'pa
festivity, die Festlichseit
Frederick, Friedrich
Fred, Freddy, Fritz
poem, das Gedicht
George, Georg
Greece, (das) Griechenland
capital (city), die Hauptstadt\*

Henry, Heinrich Ireland, (daß) Frland Margaret, Margarete speech, oration, die Nede St. Lawrence, der St. (Sanct) Lo'renz Sarah, Sara Scotchman, der Schotte street, die Straße Thames, die Themse work, daß Werk William, Wilhelm broad, wide, breit high, hoch clear, klar turbid, muddy (of water), soon, balb everywhere, überall'

Idioms: to be on a visit at (any one's), auf Besuch sein bei; as a birthday present, jum Geburtstag.

#### EXERCISE XVI.

- A. 1. Der Raiser von Deutschland ist auch Rönig von Breufen. 2. Die Berge Englands und Frlands sind nicht hoch, aber die Berge ber Schweiz find hoch und prächtig. 3. Wir ftubieren bie Briefe bes Cicero. 4. Saras Coufine war bei ihr auf Befuch. aber jett ist fie fort. 5. Müllers waren geftern bei uns, aber wir waren nicht zu Hause. 6. Was ist ber Name bes Burger= meisters von London? 7. Mein Bater hat mir Lessings Werke und heines Lieber zum Geburtstag geschenkt. 8. Auf meiner Reise besuchte ich die Städte London, Paris, Berlin und Rom. 9. Die Flüsse Canadas sind groß, aber die Flüsse Griechenlands find flein und furz. 10. Wir werden die Blumen für Sophie auf ben Tisch stellen. 11. Friedrichs Mutter schenkt ihm Klopstocks Werke, benn heute ist sein Geburtstag. 12. Das Wasser bes Sanct Lorenz ist flar, aber das Wasser ber Themse ist trübe. 13. Louise, hole Sophie und Elisabeth und wir werden einen Spazier= gang im Walbe machen. 14. Dieser Schotte redet viel von Burns' Gedichten. 15. Heinrichs Freunde werden bald nach England reisen, und sie werden auch Frankreich besuchen. 16. Die Strafen Torontos waren während der Festlichkeiten fehr schön. 17. Weshalb ftubieren Sie die Reden des Demosthenes? 18. Um Freitag ober Sonnabend werden wir nach Kingston reisen um Louise und Margarete zu besuchen. 19. Georg ist jest bei feinem Better Frit auf Befuch. 20. Am Sonntag waren wir wegen bes Sturmes zu Hause. 21. Ich habe in ber Schweiz nicht viel Vergnügen gehabt, weil ich auf der Reise frank war.
- B. 1. Charles, bring Freddy and Max, and we shall play in the garden. 2. We have looked for William's book everywhere. 3. The streets of Paris are wide and beautiful. 4.

Who has bought these gloves for Emma? 5. The city of Ottawa is the capital of Canada. 6. We live in Canada, but our parents live in Germany. 7. We have presented flowers to Elizabeth and Mary. 8. You have Goethe's works in your library. 9. I bought Schiller's William Tell at (bei) a bookseller's in Hamilton. 10. We learn in this book the names of the gods of the Romans. 11. The Schmidts visited us yesterday. 12. What is the capital of Switzerland? 13. My father sent me instead of Max, because Max was too tired. 14. The city of Berlin is the capital of the kingdom of Prussia. 15. Would you be happy, if you were rich?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XVI.

1. Wer ist König von Preussen? 2. Wo war Saras Cousine? 3. Was hat Ihr Vater Ihnen zum Geburtstag geschenkt? 4. Sind die Strassen Torontos immer schön? 5. Weshalb waren wir am Sonntag zu Hause? 6. Was ist die Hauptstadt Canadas?

# SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON C.

#### PROPER NAMES. - FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

- 76. Further Remarks on Declension of Proper Names.
- I. Proper names of towns, governed by a preposition in the genitive, do not take -8, as: unweit hamburg, not far from Hamburg.
- 2. Names of persons, even if preceded by an article, etc., take -f in the genitive before a governing noun, as: des fleinen Karls Bücher (but bie Bücher des fleinen Karl).
- 3. Feminine names frequently take -(e)n in the dat. and acc., especially if they end in -e, as: Louise, D. A. Louisen.
- 4. Family names (and even Christian names) formerly added -(e)n in the dat. and acc., and are usually so found in the classics, as:

Goethe, D. A. Goethen Schiller, "Schillern Karl, "Karln Lessing, "Lessingen

Note. - This inflection is now obsolete and not to be imitated.

- 5. In the case of proper names in the genitive, preceded by a common noun as title:
- (a) If the governing word *follows*, the proper name takes the genitive ending, the title remaining undeclined and having no article, as: Nönig Seinridß Söhne, King Henry's sons.
- (b) If the governing word precedes, the title has the article and the genitive ending, the proper name remaining undeclined, as: die Söhne des Königs Heinrich.

Note. — The title Herr takes -n in the genitive in both these cases, as: Herrn Schmidts Haus, or bas haus bes Herrn Schmidt.

- 6. In the case of a Christian name without article, connected with a family name preceded by bon (indicating noble rank):
- (a) When the governing word follows, the family name only is declined, as: Friedrich von Schillers Gedichte.
- (b) When the governing word precedes, only the Christian name is declined, as: Die Gebichte Kriedrichs von Schiller.
- 7. The names of the Saviour, Jesus Christus, usually both follow the Latin declension, thus: N. Jesus Christus, G. Jesu Christo, A. Jesus Christus, Voc. Jesus Christo.

Note. — Other biblical names, if without article, also follow the Latin inflection, especially in the gen., as: Das Evangelium St. Matthäi, the Gospel of St. Matthew.

## 77. Declension of Foreign Substantives.

- I. Most foreign substantives follow one or other of the regular forms of declension, all feminines being weak.
- 2. Most masculines and neuters from the Latin, ending in -118, have the classical plural, but with no case-inflection in either number, as: ber Moduß, the mood: N.G.D.A. Sing. Moduß, Plur. Modi; ber Casuß, the case: N.G.D.A. Sing. Casuß, Plur. Casuß; bas Tempuß, the tense: N.G.D.A. Sing. Tempuß, Plur. Tempora.

Notes. — 1. Others change -113 to -cn in the plur., as: Globus, Plur. Globen (such forms as Globusse should be avoided as barbarous).

- 2. Der Atlas has pl. bie Atlanten.
- 3. The Hebrew words Cherub and Seraph have the Hebr. Pl. in -im and take -3 in the gen. sing.
- 3. Neuters in -a from the Greek, and in -um from the Latin, take -8 in the gen. sing., and change -a or -um into -en in the plur., as: das Drama, the drama, G. Sing. Dramas, Plur. Dramen; das Thema, the

theme, Plur. Themen; das Individuum, the individual, g. Sing. Individuums, Plur. Individuen; das Berbum, the verb, Plur. die Berben.

Note. - Das Klima, the climate, has pl. Klimata or Klimaten.

4. Neuters from Latin Substantives with plur. in -ia add -f in the gen. sing., often dropping the Latin sing. termination, and form the plur. in -ien, as: das Abverb(ium), the adverb, G. Sing. Abverb(ium), f. Plur. Moverbien; das Particip(ium), the participle, G. Sing. Particip(ium), Plur. Participien; das Fossil, Plur. Fossil, Plur. Fossil, Plur. Wineralen.

Notes. - 1. These words formerly followed the full forms of Latin declension, grammatical terms (e. g. Berbum, etc.) retaining these forms longest.

- 2. The German word bas Meinob, the jewel, has Plur. Meinobien as well as the regular Plur. Meinobe.
- 5. Masculines and neuters of recent introduction from *modern* languages take -\$ in the gen. sing., and add -\$ to form the plur., as: Lord\$, Club\$, Sofa\$, Banquier\$, Portrait\$, Solo\$, etc.

Note. - Italian words are also found with their proper foreign plur., as Goli, Conti.

## 78. THE ARTICLE WITH NAMES OF PERSONS.

Besides the cases specified in § 73, I, above, the article is used with names of persons:

- 1. Colloquially and familiarly, as: Der Rarl, Die Louise.
- 2. When they denote a class, as: cin Bellington, a (man like) Wellington.
- 3. Before names of paintings, etc., named from a pers., etc, as: cin Rafael, a (painting by) Rafael; Die Benus von Milo, the (statue of) Venus of Milo.

#### LESSON XVII.

# GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES. — INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

- 79. The Gender of Substantives is determined in German:
  - I. by Meaning; or
  - II. by Form (Ending, etc.).
- 80. I. GENDER AS DETERMINED BY MEANING.
- r. Masculine are names of:
- (a) Males, as: ber Mann, the man; ber Held, the hero.

REMARK: But diminutives in -chen and -lein are neuter, as:

- (b) Seasons, months and days, as: ber Herbst, the autumn; ber January; ber Mittwoch, Wednesday.
  - (c) Points of the compass, as: ber Nord(en), the north.
- (d) Precious stones and mountains, as: ber Diamant, the diamond; ber Broden, the Brocken.
  - 2. Feminine are names of:
- (a) Females, as: bie Frau, the woman; bie Tochter, the daughter.

Remark: But bas Beib, the woman, is neuter; also diminutives in -chen and -lein, as: bas Töchterchen, the little daughter; bas Mäbchen, the girl; bas Fraulein, the young lady.

- (b) Trees, plants, fruits and flowers generally, as: bie Giche, the oak; bie Nessel, the nettle; bie Birne, the pear (but ber Apsel, the apple); bie Nose, the rose.
- (c) Cardinal Numerals used as substantives, as: bie Ein3, the (number or figure) one; bie Sech3, the six (at dice, etc.).
  - 3. Neuter are names of:
  - (a) Metals almost always, as : daß Blei, lead; daß Eisen, iron. Note. Der Stahl, steel, is Masc.
- (b) Collectives almost always, as: bas Loff, the people; bas heer, the army; especially when beginning with Ge-, as: bas Gebirge, the mountain-chain.
- (c) Countries and provinces almost always, as: (bas) Europa, Europe; (bas) Canada; islands, cities, towns, villages, etc., always, as: (bas) Hamburg; (bas) Hom, Rome.

REMARKS.— 1. Names of countries and provinces in -ei, -au and -z are feminine, as: bie Türkei, Turkey; bie Schweiz, Switzerland.

- 2. Names of countries, etc., when not neuter, always have the definite article (see § 44, 3).
- (d) Infinitives, letters of the alphabet, and other parts of speech (except Adjectives used of persons, and Cardinal Numerals; see 2, c, above), used as Substantives, as: bas Lacken, the (act of) laughing; das A, the (letter) A; das Sch. the I; bas Wenn und bas Aber, (the) 'if' and (the) 'but.'

Give the gender of the following Substantives, assigning the rule in each case: April, Gold, Erdberre, Tochter, Europa, Bijchof, Loudon, Jura, Rubin (ruby), Ballachei (Wallachia), Unrecht, Guden (South), Geld, Raufen, Sommer.

# INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

The Interrogative Pronouns are:

- 1. melder? which? Definite.
- 2. wer? who? } Indefinite.
  3. was? what? }
- 82. Welcher? is declined after the biefer Model, but, as Pronoun, lacks the Gen., thus:

	Singular.			Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche, which	
Gen.					
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen, (to, for) which	
Acc.	welchen	weld,e	welches	welche, which	

REMARKS. - 1. Welder? asks 'which of a number?' of persons or things, and agrees in gender with the noun following it, as:

> Welcher von diesen Männern ist hier gewesen? Which of these men has been here? Welches von diesen Büchern haben Sie gehabt? Which of these books have you had?

2. The neuter sing. weights is used before the verb 'to be,' irrespectively of the gender or number of the subject (compare the similar use of es, § 39, 1), as:

Which is your sister (brother)? Welches ist Ihre Schwester (Ihr Bruder)? Which are the children of the count? Welches sind die Kinder des Grasen?

83. Mer? and was? are used in the Sing. only, and are declined as follows:

REMARKS. — 1. Wer is used of persons only, for all genders and both numbers, as:

Sing. M. Wer ist dieser Mann? F. jene Frau? N. dieses Kind? Plur. Wer sind diese Männer? etc.

- 2. Was is not used of persons.
- 3. Was is never used in the Dative. In the Dat. or Acc. with prepositions, was is replaced by wa (wor before vowels), placed before the preposition (compare § 38, Rem. 5, for similar use of ba), as:

Worauf sigen Sie? On what (whereon) are you sitting? Wovon sprechen Sie? Of what (whereof) are you speaking? Note. — Barum? = for what, wherefore, why? not worum.

- 4. With prepositions governing the Gen., wer is used before the preposition, as: werefull, weregen? on what account, wherefore, why?
  - 5. The neuter Gen. tweffen? is rarely used, except as above.

- 6. Was is sometimes used (as interrog. adv.) for warum, why? (For the use of was for etwas, see under etwas, \$ 149, 1.)
  - 84. The Interrogative Adjectives are:
  - 1. welcher, welche, welches? which? what? Definite.
  - 2. was für ein, was für eine, was für ein? | what kind of?

    Plur. was für? Indefinite.
- 85. Melder, as Interrogative Adjective, follows the biefer Model throughout, as:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.		
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche, which		
Gen.	welches	welcher	welches	welcher, of which		
Dat.	welchem	welder	welchem	welchen, (to, for which)		
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche, which		

#### EXAMPLES:

Which man was here? Welcher Mann war hier? What books have you? Welche Bücher haben Sie?

REMARKS.—1. Delder is also used in exclamatory sentences (= what!), sometimes without termination, as:

Weldice) Bergnügen! What pleasure!

2. The stem weld is also followed by ein, and is uninflected, as:

Welch ein Sturm! What a storm!

- 86. In declining was für ein, was remains unchanged, while cin agrees with the substantive, as:
  - N. M. Was für ein Hut? A. Was für einen Hut? What kind of (a) hat? D. Was für einem Hut? To what kind of a hat?

G. F. Bas für einer Blume? Of what kind of (a) flower, etc.

In the Plur. was für is used without article, as:

N. A. Was für Rinder? What kind (sort) of children?

D. Was für Kindern? To what kind of children?

The cin is also omitted before names of materials and other words used partitively, as:

Was für Holz?

Was für Wetter?
What sort of weather?

87.

INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

Direct Statement or Quotation:
He said: 'I am tired.'

Indirect Statement or Quotation:
He said (that) he was tired.

- 1. An Indirect Statement is always a subordinate clause.
- 2. In Indirect Statements, the Verb is usually in the Subjunctive (especially if the verb of the principal clause be in the Impf.), and has the same *tense* which it would have, if statement were made *directly*, as:

Sie fagten, daß es wahr sei (i. e., sie fagten: "Es ist wahr," pres.), They said that it was true.

Er antwortete, daß er gestern angesommen sei (i. e., er antwortete: "Ich bin gestern angesommen," perf.), He answered, that he had arrived yesterday.

Note. —In English, on the other hand, a past tense is always followed by a past tense, as in the above examples.

3. The conjunction baß may be omitted in such clauses, which then have the construction of a principal sentence (i. e., verb in second place), as:

Er fagte, er fei geftern angefommen.

88. Indirect Questions.

Direct Question:
Who is there?
Indirect Question:

Indirect Question:
He asked who was there?

- 1. In Indirect (or Dependent) Questions the construction is that of a dependent clause (verb last).
- 2. If the verb of the principal sentence be in the Impf., that of the question will be in the *subjunctive*, and have the same *tense* which it would have in the direct question, as:

Sagen Sie mir gefälligst, wo jener Herr wohnt (Dir. Qu.: Wo wohnt jener Herr? pres.), Tell me, if you please, where that gentleman lives?

Er fragte mich, welcher von diesen Herren mein Bruder sei, He asked me which of those gentlemen was my brother (Dir. Qu.: Belcher, etc., ift 3hr Bruder? pres.)

#### VOCABULARY.

\*\*\* The article will be supplied by the pupil, according to preceding rules, where not given.

to use, brauchen
march, marschieren
save, retten
answering, d.— Antworten
paying, b.— Bezahlen
jewel, precious stone, d.—
Ebelstein
asking (of questions), d.—
Fragen
Italy, Italien
sire-place, d.— Ramin'
elm, d.— Ulme
blue, blau
light, easy, seicht
useful, nütslich

buying, b— Raufen
life, b— Leben
learning (act of), b— Lernen
lily, b— Lilie
market, ber Markt
morning, ber Morgen
afternoon, ber Nachmittag
plum, b— Pflaume
emerald, b— Smaragb'
winter-month, ber Wintermo's
nat
valuable, precious, wertvoll
generally, usually, gewöhnlich
etc., u. f. w. (= und fo weiter,
i. e. "and so further")

Genitive with adverbial force. } in the morning, morgens or des Morgens in the afternoon, nachmittags or des Nachmittags

The Cardinal Points of the Compass (= bie vier Himmels= gegenben): North, (ber) Norden; South, (ber) Süben; East, (ber) Dften; West, (ber) Westen.

Names of the Months: der Januar, der Februar, der März, der April', der Mai, der Ju'ni, der Ju'li, der August', der Sepstember, der Oktober, der November, der Dezember.

Idiom: I saved his life, lit. I saved to or for him the life, Ich rettete ihm das Leben. See § 44, 6 (b).

#### EXERCISE XVII.

- A. 1. Wer hat bas Vild von meinem Neffen über bas Ramin gehängt? 2. Was für einen Tijch hat Johann auf dem Markte gefauft? 3. Auf welche Bank werden wir und feten? 4. Beldem Knaben gehört diefes Meffer? Es gehört Wilhelm. 5. Jenes Mädchen auf der Strafe ist das Töchterchen unseres Nachbars. 6. Was machen Sie gewöhnlich, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben? 7. Des Morgens studiere ich, und des Nachmittags rudre ich auf bem Fluffe. 8. Welches find die Namen der fieben Tage ber Woche? Montag, u. f. w. 9. Wem schicken Sie biesen Brief? 10. Ich schiefe ihn bem Buchhändler. 11. Worüber haben die Berren gelacht? 12. Wer ist die Frau neben meiner Tante auf ber Bant? 13. Was für Augen hat ber Student? Seine Augen find blau. 14. Woraus machen wir Schiffe? Wir machen fie aus Gifen und Stabl. 15. Rarl ift mit bem Lernen feiner Aufaabe nicht fertig. 16. Worauf haben die Schüler fich gefett? Sie haben fich auf die Brude gesett. 17. Was für Chelfteine haben Sie da? 18. Ich habe einen Diamant(en), einen Rubin, und einen Smaragd. 19. Das Beer ist von Frankreich nach Italien marschiert. 20. Napoleon schickte bem Grafen einen Dia= mant(en), weil der Graf ihm das Leben gerettet hatte.
- B. 1. Which of your sisters are learning German? 2. For whom is this diamond? It is for the countess. 3. Which

are your pens? 4. The asking of questions is very easy, but the answering is very difficult. 5. The north, the south, the east, and the west are the four cardinal points of the compass. 6. Which of these students is Mr. Braun? 7. The boy buys himself pears and plums in the market. 8. My uncle has three children — a girl and two boys. 9. June, July, and August are very hot in Canada. 10. Buying is pleasant, but paying is very disagreeable. 11. Iron and steel are very useful. 12. The rose and the lily are flowers, but the oak and the elm are trees. 13. I blame Mary because she wastes her money. 14. What would you do with your money, if you were rich? 15. We always hoped that William would learn German.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XVII.

1. Wo hängt das Bild von Ihrem Neffen? 2. Wer ist das Mädchen vor unserm Hause? 3. Weshalb schickte der König dem Bürgermeister einen Diamant(en)? 4. Was für Augen hat der Student? 5. Ist das Fragen leicht? 6. Was würden Sie machen, wenn Sie einen Feiertag hätten?

## LESSON XVIII.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES (concluded).— GENERAL REMARKS.
— DOUBLE GENDER.

89. GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES AS DETERMINED BY FORM.

## I. Masculine are:

- (a) Substantives in -ich, -ig, -ing, -m, almost always, as: ber Aranich, the crane; ber Honig, the honey; ber Fremdling, the stranger; ber Atem, the breath.
- (b) Those in -el, -en (not infinitives), -er, generally (names of agents in -er always), as: der Löffel,

- the spoon; ber Garten, the garden; ber Gärtner, the gardener.
- (c) Monosyllables generally (but with many exceptions), as: ber Rrieg, the war; ber Tag, the day, etc.

#### 2. Feminine are:

(a) Substantives in -ei, -heit, -keit, -schaft, -ung, -in, always, as: die Schmeichelei, flattery; die Schönsheit, beauty; die Dankbarkeit, gratitude; die Freundschaft, friendship; die Hoffnung, hope; die Gräfin, the countess; die Freundin, the (female) friend.

Note. — The termination —in is used to form feminine names from masculines, usually with Umlaut, always so in monosyllables.

- (b) Those in -t (especially after a consonant), -end, generally, as: die Kraft, strength; die Zufunft, the future; die Tugend, virtue.
- (c) Those in -e, generally (but with many exceptions), as: die Höhe, height; die Größe, size.
- (d) Some in -nis (see also under neuters), as: bie Wilbnis, the wilderness.
- (e) Foreign Substantives in -age, -ie (French); -if (Greek); -enz, -tät, -(t)ion, -ur (Lat.), always as: die Courage, courage; die Melodie', the melody; die Musit', music; die Audienz', the audience; die Universität', the university; die Nation', the nation; die Natur', nature.

# 3. Neuter are:

(a) Substantives in -chen and -lein (diminutives), always (without regard to sex), as: das Männlein, das Fräulein, das Mädchen.

- (b) Those in -tum, almost always, as: bas Christentum, Christendom, Christianity.
- (c) Those in -nis, -fal, -fel, generally, as: das Creignis, the event; das Schicfal, fate, destiny; das Rätzfel, the riddle.
- (d) Those beginning with the prefix Ge-, unless otherwise determined by meaning, termination, or derivation, as: das Gemälde, the painting; das Gemach, the apartment; but: der Gevatter, the godfather; die Gevatterin, the godmother; die Geschterin, the godmother; die Geschterin, the usage (from der Brauch, masc. monosyll.).

Give the gender of the following substantives, assigning the rule in each case: Beilchen, Hut, Kirche, Klinster, Landschaft, Essig (vinegar), Blume, Geschenk, Knäblein, Begräbnis, Furcht, Hafen, Gewitter, Finger, Apfel, Korb, Universität', Astrolog, Teppich, Philosophie.

## 90. General Remarks on Gender.

- n. Gender agrees, as in English, with sex, except in bas Weib, in Diminutives in -agen and -lein, and in certain compounds (see below).
- 2. Inanimate objects, which in English are all alike neuter, may be of any gender in German, as determined by Meaning or Form, as: ber hut, die Blume, das Buch.
- 3. Each substantive of which the gender is not determined by the rules should be learnt with the Definite Article as the sign of its gender.
- 4. Compounds are of the gender of the last component (hence bas Frauenzimmer, the woman, is neuter), except

ber Abichen, disgust, from die Schen. die Antwort, the answer, from das Wort. der Mittwach, Wednesday, from die Woche. Also certain compounds of Mut, which are given in Appendix I.

5. The exceptions to the foregoing lists will be found in Appendix I.

## 91. Double Gender.

The gender of the following substantives (with others given in App. J.), varies with their meaning:

Singular.	Plural.			
ber Band, volume	Bände )			
das Band, { ribbon bond, tie	Bänder See § 64, above.			
ber Bauer, peasant bas Bauer, bird-cage	Bauern Bauer			
ber Heibe, heathen bie Heibe, heath	Heiden			
ber Schild, shield bas Schild, sign (of an inn, etc.)	Shilde Shilder			
ber See, lake }	Seecn			
ber Thor, fool, g. des Thoren bas Thor, gate, g. des Thores	Thoren Thore			

## VOCABULARY.

(The pupil will supply the article in German where not given.)

to visit, study (at a university), besuchen (+ Acc.)
collect, gather, sammeln
peasant, country-man, b—
Bauer
bee, b— Biene

relate, tell, erzählen
paint, malen
(female) neighbour, b— Nach=
barin
orator, b— Redner
bedroom, b— Schlaszimmer

boat, das Boot
friendship, de Freundschaft
inn, de Gasthaus
district, locality, de Gesgend
history, story, de Geschichte
waiter, de Kellner
piano, das Klaviers
vice, das Lafter
lesson, de Lettens
people, die Leute (pl.)
love, de Liebe
mathematics, de Mathematik
(sing.)

little son, b— Söhnchen
sun, b— Sonne
city-gate, town-gate, b—
Stabtthor
ingratitude, b— Unbankbarkeit
way, road, b— Weg
wind, b— Wind
rage, fury, die Wut
sign, das Zeichen
terrible, terribly, fürchterlich
strong (heavily, of rain, etc.),
ftark
willingly, with pleasure, gern

so, fo

Idioms: 1. I like to learn German, Ich lerne gern Deutsch. 2. A week ago to-day, heute vor a cht Tagen (Dat.). 3. A week from to-day, heute über acht Tage (Acc.).

#### EXERCISE XVIII.

A. 1. Ohne (die) Freundschaft, (die) Hoffmung und (die) Liebe würde das Leben sehr traurig sein. 2. Unsere Bettern waren heute vor acht Tagen bei uns. 3. (Die) Schmeichelei ist kein Zeichen der Freundschaft. 4. Wilhelm, Ierne deine Lektion. 5. Was für Bände sind auf dem Tische in Ihrer Bibliothek? 6. Es sind füns Bände von Schillers Werken. 7. Die Wut des Sturmes ist fürchterlich, aber das Schiff ist schon im Hafen. 8. Lernt Ihr Bruder gern Mathematik? Nein, aber er Iernt gern Deutsch. 9. Welchem Mädchen gehören diese Ninge, der Marie oder der Sara? 10. Die Dankbarkeit ist eine Tugend, aber die Undankbarkeit ist ein Laster. 11. Karl Schmidt besucht im Winter die Universität, aber im Sommer wohnt er bei seinen Eltern auf dem Lande. 12. Jenes Fräulein hat ihrer Freundin ein Band zum Geburtstag geschenkt, und ihre Freundin ist damit sehr zuseinem 13. Diese Handsche gehören nicht mir, sie gehören meinem

Schwager. 14. Der Maler hat ein Schild für das Gasthaus vor dem Thor gemalt. 15. Marie, hast du die Bänder für deine Mutter gesaust? Nein, aber ich werde sie morgen oder am Mittewoch kausen. 16. Kellner, holen Sie mir gefälligst ein Messer und einen Löffel. 17. Er hat mir keine Antwort auf meinen Brief geschickt. 18. Was für eine Melodie spielt das Töchterchen unserer Wirtin auf dem Klavier? 19. Wenn ich Geld hätte, so würde ich einen Teppich und Vorhänge für mein Schlaszimmer kausen. 20. Wenn Marie ihre Lektion nicht lernt, so wird sie in der Schule nicht gut antworten.

B. 1. This country-man lives on a heath near the lake. 2. The tempest is terrible, but the ship is already in the harbour. 3. The stranger praises this locality on account of the beauty of the landscape. 4. What kind of a flower is it? It is a violet. 5. We met a stranger on the way to the university. 6. Your aunt is my neighbour. 7. Who are these people? They are the parents of my cousin. 8. The mother relates to her little son the story of the little man in the wood. 9. Have you heard the words of the orator? During the tempest the wind shook the house. 11. The girl hangs the bird-cage before the window in the sun (acc.). 12. The bees gather honey from the flowers upon the heath, and the peasant sells it in the town. 13. When we hastened home yesterday, it was raining heavily. 14. I shall not wait for George, because I have no time. 15. When I resided at (bei) my uncle's, I was always at home at ten o'clock in the evening.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Wer war heute vor acht Tagen bei Ihnen? 2. Was für Bücher haben Sie auf Ihrem Tische? 3. Lernen Sie gern Mathematik? 4. Was macht Karl Schmidt im Winter? 5. Wer spielt jetzt auf dem Klavier? 6. Was werden Sie heute über acht Tage machen?

# LESSON XIX.

#### RELATIVE PRONOUNS, - IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS. 92.

The Relative Pronouns are:

- 1. der, die, das, who (of persons), which (of things) Definite.
- 3. wer, who (= he who, whoever)
  4. was, what (= that which, whatever)

   INDEFINITE.
- 5. desgleichen, the like of whom or which Indeclinable.
- 93. Der, die, das, as Relative Pronoun, is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	ber	die	bas	die, who, which, that	
Gen.	dessen	beren	dessen	beren whose, of which	
Dat.	bem	ber	bem	benen, (to, for) whom, which	
Acc.	ben	bie	bas	bie, whom, which, that	

OBSERVE. — These forms are the same as those of the Definite Article, except the added -en of the Gen. Sing., Gen. Plur., and Dat. Plur.

94. Welcher, as Relative Pronoun, is declined after the bieser Model, but, like the Interrogative welcher, lacks the Genitive.

# 95. Remarks on der and welcher

- 1. Der and welfher refer alike to both persons and things, and are interchangeable, except that:
- (a) In the gen., dessen, deren, dessen, pl. deren (not welches, etc.), are always used (see § 82, above).
- (b) Der is used when the antecedent is of the First or Second Person, the relative being, in that case, always followed by the Personal Pronoun, as:

I, who am your friend, Ich, der ich Ihr Freund bin, (or: Ich, die ich Ihre Freundin bin).

- O God, (thou) who art in Heaven,
- D Gott, ber bu im himmel bift.
- 2. Der and welsher, referring to inanimate objects, are usually replaced by wo (wor-before a vowel) before a preposition (compare § 83, 3, above, for similar use of wo for was), as:

The table, on which (whereon) the book is, Der Tisch, auf welchem, or: worauf das Buch ist.

3. The Gen. beffen, etc., always precedes its case, as:

A tree, the leaves of which are green, Ein Baum, dessen Blätter grün sind.

## 96. Remarks on wer and was.

- 1. Wer and was are declined like the Interrogative Pronouns wer? and was?
- 2. Wer is used of persons only, for all genders and both numbers; was never of persons.

3. Mer and was, as relatives, are indefinite and compound in meaning, and include the antecedent, as:

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen,

(He) who will not hear, must feel.

Was ich Ihnen geschickt habe, ift nicht viel,

What (= that which) I have sent you, is not much.

4. **Wer** never has an antecedent, since it includes the antecedent itself; therefore

never say : Der Mann, wer hier war,

but: Der Mann, welcher hier war, (The man who was here).

5. Was never has an antecedent, unless the antecedent be a neuter adjective or pronoun, such as nichts, nothing; etwas, something; alles, everything; or a phrase, in which cases was always replaces bas, as:

Nothing (that) I say, etc., Nichts, was ich sage, etc.

All (that) I have, etc., Alles, was ich habe, etc.

The best (that) I have, etc., Das Beste, was ich habe, etc.

He does not learn his lessons, which (i. e. 'the not learning') is a great pity, Er lernt seine Lektionen nicht, was sehr schabe ift.

6. Ever = auch or immer after wer or was, as:

Wer es auch (immer) gesagt hat, Whoever has said it.

7. The Relative was, like the Interrogative, is not used after prepositions in the Dative or Accusative, but is replaced in the same way by wo(r); with prepositions governing the Genitive, wes is used (see § 83, 3, above).

Observe. — The relative must never be omitted in German, as it so frequently is in English, hence:

(Engl.) The man I met,

(Germ.) Der Mann, welchem (bem) ich begegnete.

97. Desgleichen and bergleichen are indeclinable words, the former referring to a masc. or neuter noun in the sing., the latter to fem. or plural nouns, as:

Ein Mann, besgleichen (dat.) ich nie begegnete, A man, the like of whom I never met. Have you ever heard the like of that? Eine Frau, bergleichen, etc., A woman, the like of whom, etc. Kinder, bergleichen, etc., Children, the like of whom, etc.

## 98. Construction of Relative Sentences.

r. Every relative sentence is of course a dependent sentence, and as such must have the verb at the end, as:

The wine, which I have sent you, is very good. Der Bein, ben ich Ihnen geschieft habe, ift fehr gut.

2. When the antecedent is subject, the relative immediately follows it (as in the sentence given above); but if the antecedent be object, the sentence in which the object occurs should be completed before the relative is introduced, as:

I have not used the book which you sent me, Ich habe das Buch nicht gebraucht, welches Sie mir schickten.

I would have bought the book you showed me yesterday, if I had had money, Ich wurde das Buch gefauft haben, welches Sie mir gestern zeigten, wenn ich Geld gehabt hätte.

3. In sentences with wer or was, the relative clause will be counted as the first member of the principal sentence, which will therefore begin with the verb, e. g.:

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen, He who will not hear, must feel.

NOTE. — In German, every dependent sentence or clause is separated trom the sentence on which it depends by a comma. The relatives welder and her must therefore always be preceded by a comma.

## 99. IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

r. A Few Weak Verbs, besides adding the termination -te to form the Impf., and -t to form the P. Part., also change the Stem Vowel in the Impf. Indicative and P. Part., but not in the Impf. Subjunctive. They are:

Infinitive.	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.	P. Part.
brennen (intr.), to burn, be	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
consumed with fire			
fennen, to know, be ac-	fannte	fennte	gekannt
quainted with			
nennen, to name	nannte	nennte	genannt
rennen, to run (at full speed)	rannte	rennte	gerannt
fenden, to send	Sfandte Sendete	Sanbata	gesandt gesendet
lettbett, to send	I sendete	sendete	d gesendet
manage to turn	{ wandte { wendete	(man hata	gewandt gewendet
wenden, to turn	wendete	ineithere	1 gewendet

Observe: 1. The double forms of the last two verbs, of which the shorter are in more general use.

2. The three following verbs have also a consonant change, with Umlaut in the Impf. Subj.:

Infinitive.	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.	P. PART.
bringen, to bring	brachte	brä <b>ch</b> te	gebracht
deufen, to think	dachte	dächte	gedacht
dünken, to seem (impers.) (beuchten, däuchten)	{ deuchte (däuchte) dünkte	d <b>euc</b> hte (däuchte) dünfte	gede <b>ncht</b> (gedäucht) gedünkt

REMARKS.—1. Compare the English: bring, brought; think, thought.

2. The forms bauchte, gebaucht, are as yet more common than beuchte, gebeucht, but the latter are according to the new official orthography.

3. Besides the Inf. beuchten, there is also a Pres. Ind. 3. sing. beucht.

NOTE. — The German Perfect often replaces the English Past or Imperfect (see also Less. XLIII.), as:

I sent you the book yesterday, Id have Thuen gestern das Buch geschieft. I was working yesterday the whole day, Ich have gestern den ganzen Tag gearbeitet.

#### VOCABULARY.

consider, bebenken (trans.)
order, bespeak, bestellen
think of, benken an (+ acc.)
or benken (+ gen.)
recognize, erkennen
like to hear, gern hören
divide, share, teilen
burn, consume with fire
(trans.), berbrennen
wish, wünschen
apply to, sich wenden an
(+ acc.)

acquaintance, die Bekanntschaft postman, der Bostbote title, der Titel all, everything, Alles unhappy, unfortunate, uns glücklich improbable, unwahrscheinlich just now, eben, soeben diligently, industriously, fleißig easily, readily, leicht really, wirklich

Idiom : It is a pity, Es ift ichade (adj.).

#### EXERCISE XIX.

A. 1. Der Kaiser sandte einen Boten mit der Nachricht nach Berlin. 2. Wer nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich. 3. Die Leute, bei denen ich auf Besuch gewesen din, sind Schotten. 4. Hat der Kellner Alles gebracht, was wir brauchen? 5. Der Postbote hat mir die Nachricht gebracht, worauf ich wartete. 6. Ich erkannte wirklich den Herrn nicht, der gestern mit meinem Vetter in der Kirche war. 7. Das Pferd des Generals rannte um den Preis. 8. Der Fremdling, dessen Bekanntschaft ich zu machen wünsche, wird morgen hier sein. 9. Das Feuer brannte im Ofen und ver-

brannte das Holz. 10. Wenn er unglücklich war, wandte er sich immer an mich, der ich sein Freund war. 11. Ich dachte heute an die Geschichte, die Sie mir gestern erzählten, und ich habe sehr darüber gelacht. 12. Hat der Diener die Bücher nach Hause gebracht, die ich beim Buchhändler gekauft habe? 13. Mensch, hast du je bedacht, was du bist? 14. Wir haben das Holz schon versbrannt, das wir vor acht Tagen gekauft haben. 15. Dieses Kind erzählt immer zu Hause, was es in der Schule hört. 16. Alles, was er hat, teilt er mit mir, der ich sein Freund bin. 17. Glauben Sie die Geschichte, die Herr Braun und erzählt hat? 18. Die Frau, deren Töchterchen bei und auf Besuch ist, wird morgen nach Hause reisen. 19. Was Sie in der Stadt gehört haben, ist sehr untvahrscheinlich. 20. Es regnete gestern, was sehr schae war, da wir auf dem Lande waren.

B. 1. Do you hear what I say to you? 2. My father always burnt the letters which were no longer useful. 3. He has not told me what he wishes. 4. The man, in whose house we lived, is the brother of our neighbour. 5. Here is the meat which you have ordered. 6. The honey which the countryman brought us yesterday is not good. 7. Do you know the artist who has painted this picture? 8. People who are not industrious do not become rich. 9. We readily believe what we hope and wish for. 10. What were you thinking of when you met me yesterday? 11. Have you all you need? 12. I believe that I know the man who is in front of the house. 13. I always burn the newspapers I do not need. 14. The students to whom these books belong do not study them diligently, which is a pity. 15. I do not know the song, the title of which you have just named. 16. What was burning? The gardener was burning leaves.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XIX.

1. Was machen Sie gewöhnlich mit den Zeitungen, die Sie nicht mehr brauchen? 2. Wer hat Ihnen diese Nachricht

gebracht? 3. Woran denken Sie? 4. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben? 5. Glauben Sie jede Geschichte, die Sie hören? 6. Was erzählt das Kind?

#### LESSON XX.

DECLENSION OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES: - STRONG FORM.
- CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS.

100. Declension of Attributive Adjectives.

The boy is good — Predicative Adjective.

The good boy — Attributive "

Remember: That Adjectives used as *Predicates* are not varied (see § 14).

- 101. Every Attributive Adjective either is or is not preceded by a determinative word (i. e., article or pronominal adjective), which shows gender, number and case by distinctive endings.
- 102. First Form. If not preceded by any such determinative word, the Attributive Adjective follows the Strong Declension, which is the same as the biefer Model throughout, thus:

Strong Declension of gut, good.

	Singular.			Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	guter	gute	gutes	gute	
Gen.	gutes	guter	gutes	guter	
Dat.	gutem	guter	gutem	guten	
Acc.	guten	gute	gutes	gute	

## SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

## Singular.

		_	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	good wine	good soup	good glass
Nom.	guter Wein	gute Suppe	gutes Glas
Gen.	gutes (en) Wein(e)s	gut <b>er</b> Suppe	gutes (en) Glafes
Dat.	gutem Wein(e)	guter Suppe	gutem Glas(e)
Acc.	guten Wein	gute Suppe	gutes Glas

#### Plural.

#### ALL GENDERS.

Nom. gute Weine, Suppen, Gläser Gen. guter Beine, Suppen, Gläser Dat. guten Beinen, Suppen, Gläsern Acc. gute Beine, Suppen, Gläser

OBSERVE: In this form, where there is no other word to show the gender, etc., of the noun, this work must be done by the adjective, which therefore has as full a set of endings as possible.

REMARKS. — 1. The Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter generally has -en instead of -es before strong substantives, as: guten Beines, auten Brotes.

- 2. Adjectives in -e drop the -e of the stem in declension, as: müde, tired: müd-er, müd-e, müd-es, etc.
- 3. If several Adjectives precede the same substantive, all follow the same form, as:

guter, alter, roter Wein, etc., good, old, red wine.

Decline throughout in German: sick child, high tree, long lesson, beautiful broad stream, young woman, lazy horse, tired boy.

# 103. Conjugation of Strong Verbs.

Verbs in German are either Strong or Weak. The Weak Verbs, which indicate change of tense by the addition of a termination (usually without change of vowel), as: [ob-en, Iobte, gelob-t, have been treated in Lessons IX, X.

- 104. The Strong Verbs, on the other hand, indicate the change of tense by a change of the Root Vowel without adding a termination, as: fing-en, to sing, Impf. fang; bleiben, to remain, Impf. blieb.
- 105. The Past Participle in Strong Verbs ends in -en (not -et), usually also with change of Vowel, as: sing-en, P. Part. ge-sing-en; bleiben, P. Part. ge-blieb-en; but geben, P. Part. ge-geben.

Remark. — This change of Root-Vowel is called 'Ablaut,' and is common to English and German. Compare Eng. sing, sang, sung; give, gave, giv-en.

# 106. PARADIGM OF SIMPLE TENSES OF fingen, to sing. Principal Parts.

Infin. fing-en Impf. fang P. Part. ge-fung-en Indicative. Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

ich finge, I sing
bu fing(e)ft, thou sing-cst
er fing(e)t, he sing-s
wir fingen, we sing
ihr fing(e)t, ye sing
fie fingen, they sing
ich fingen

# IMPERFECT.

(Ind. Stem with Umlaut, where possible.)

ich fang, I sang ich fänge du fang(e)st, thou sangst du fängest er si wir ibr

fie fangen, they sang

Indicative.	Subjunctive
ang, he sang	er fänge
fangen, we sang	wir fängen
fang(e)t, ve sang	ihr fänget

Imperative.

fie fängen

fing(e) [bu], sing [thou] finge er, let him sing fingen wir, let us sing fing(e)t [ihr], sing [ye] fingen fie, let them sing

OBSERVE: The *Person* endings are the same throughout as in the paradigm of loben, in which -te of the Impf. is a Tense ending (see Lessons IX, X); this is shown by the following:

107. Table of Endings of Strong Verbs in Simple Tenses.

Prese	Imperfect.		Imperative.	
Indic. Subj.		Indic.	Subj.	
Sing. 1.—e	—е		—е	
2. —(e) ft	-est	—(e)ft	—cft	—(e)
3. —(e)t	—е		—е	—е
Plur. 1. —en	—en	-en	-en	-en
2. —(c)t	-et	—(c)t	—et	—(e)t
3. —en	-en	—en	—en	—en

OBSERVE: 1. The changed Vowel of the Imperfect, and absence of person endings in 1. and 3. sing.

- 2. The Umlaut of the Imperfect Subjunctive.
- The persistent -t of the Subjunctive (Imperf. as well as Pres.)

REMARKS.— 1. The -e of the termination in the 2. Sing. of the Pres. and Impf. Ind. is only retained in Strong Verbs after b, t, or a sibilant, as: id reit-e, bu reit-est; id preise, bu preisest; and in the 3. Sing. Pres. Ind., and 2. Plur. Pres. and Imps. Ind. after b, t, as: er reit-et, ihr reit-et, ihr ritt-et; but er preiset, ihr preiset, ihr preiset.

2. The compound tenses of a Strong Verb are formed precisely like those of a Weak Verb, some being conjugated with haben, others with sein; hence it is only necessary to know the Inf., Impf. and P. Part., and in some cases the 2. Sing. Imper., in order to conjugate a Strong Verb throughout.

108. Paradigm of Compound Tenses of fingen, to sing (with haben); fallen, to fall (with fein).

Indicative.

PERFECT

Subjunctive.

(Pres. of  $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{haben} \\ \text{fein} \end{array}\right\}$  + P. Part. of  $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text{fingen} \\ \text{fallen} \end{array}\right\}$ )

ich habe gesungen, I have sung ich habe gesungen bu hast gesungen, thou hast sung, etc. bu habest gesungen, etc. ich sei gesallen, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

(Imperf. of 
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} haben \\ fein \end{array} \right\}$$
 + P. Part. of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} fingen \\ fallen \end{array} \right\}$ )

ich hatte gefungen, I had sung, etc. ich hätte gefungen, etc. ich war gefallen, I had (was) fallen, etc. ich wäre gefallen, etc.

#### FUTURE.

(Pres. of werden + Infin. of { fingen } )

ich werde singen (fallen), I shall sing ich werde singen (fallen) (fall)

bu wirst singen (fallen), thou wilt sing bu werbest singen (fallen), (fall), etc. etc.

Indicative. FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of { haben } + P. Part. of { fingen } )

ich werde gefungen haben, I shall have ich werde gefungen haben sung

bu wirst gesungen haben, thou wilt have sung, etc.

bu werdest gesungen haben, etc.

ich werbe gefallen fein, I shall have (be) fallen, etc.

id werde gefallen fein. etc.

Conditional.

COMPOUND.

SIMPLE. (Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. of fingen, fallen) ich würde fingen (fallen), I should sing (fall), etc.

P. Part. of fingen, fallen) ich würde gesungen haben, etc. ich würde gefallen fein, etc.

Infin. Perf.

(P. Part. of { fingen } + Pres. Infin. of { haben } )

gesungen (zu) haben, to have sung gefallen zu sein, to have (be) fallen

- 109. Compound Verbs. Compound Verbs are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are derived; those having one of the inseparable particles be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, ber-, ger-, do not take the prefix ge- in the P. Part., as: be-singen, P. Part. be-sungen (compare be-gablen, P. Part. be-zahlt, § 35, Rem. 6), and in the Inf. take zu before the prefix; other compounds take the prefix ge- and the particle au between the prefix and the verb (Part. or Inf. respectively).
- 110. The Strong Verbs are divided into classes, according to the 'Ablaut,' or Vowel-changes, of the root (see § 105, Rem., above). These classes, with the verbs belonging to each, are given in the following Lessons (XXII-XXXI).

## 111. SHORTER FORMS OF THE CONDITIONAL.

The Impf. and Plupf. Subj. are frequently used in all Verbs instead of the Simple and Compound Conditional respectively, thus:

ich hätte = ich würde haben; ich fänge = ich würde singen; ich hätte gehabt = ich würde gehabt haben; ich hätte gesungen = ich würde gesungen haben.

NOTE. — These shorter forms are always to be preferred in the Passive Voice (Less. XXI), and in the Modal Auxiliaries (Less. XXXIV).

#### VOCABULARY.

help (serve) one's self, fich singer, ber Sänger, die Säns bedienen aerin acknowledge, confess, befen= liberal, generous, freigebig friendly, kind, freundlich nen catch cold, fich erfälten fresh, frisch glad, froh nominate, appoint, ernennen fill, füllen hard, hart spread out, fich verbreiten hoarse, heifer bough, branch, der Aft\* bad, schlecht ink, die Dinte or Tinte black, schwarz company, die Gefellichaft brave, valiant, tapfer governor, der Gouverneur' true, faithful, treu concert, das Konzert' weighty, important, wichtig queen, die Königin at last, finally, endlich paper, das Papier yes (emphatic), yes indeed, advice, counsel, ber Rat ja wohl

Idioms: To appoint (as) governor, jum Gouverneur ernennen; cheerfully, frohen Mutes (genitive with adverbial force); good morning, guten Morgen (i. e., Ich müniche Ihnen einen guten Morgen).

#### EXERCISE XX.

A. 1. Mein Messer ist von gutem, hartem Stahle. 2. Hohe Bäume haben gewöhnlich große Uste. 3. Was für Pferde haben

Sie gekauft? Ich habe schwarze und weiße Pferde gekauft. 4. Rullen Sie gefälliaft mein Glas mit frifdem Baffer. 5. Tapfere Solbaten eilen froben Mutes in die Schlacht. 6. Zwei glückliche Menschen wohnen in jenem Saufe. 7. Saben Sie etwas Neues in der Stadt gehört? Ja wohl, viel Neues, aber nichts Inte= reffantes. 8. hier ift guter Rafe und frisches Brod; bitte, bedienen Sie fich. 9. Wer du bift zeigt beine Gefellschaft. 10. Guten Morgen, Berr Braun, ich hoffe, daß wir heute schönes Wetter haben werden. 11. In welchem Sahre ernannte die Königin ben Grafen von Dufferin jum Gouverneur von Canada? 12 3ch habe autes Papier, aber meine Feber ift schlecht. 13. Die Rinder liebten meinen Onfel, weil er nie mude wurde, ihnen schone Weschichten zu erzählen. 14. Gie haben endlich befannt, baß Gie Unrecht haben. 15. Ich habe mich erfältet; wenn ich jest fänge, würde ich heiser werden. 16. Ich habe schon oft das Lied gehört, welches die Sängerin im Ronzert gefungen hat. 17. Gute Bücher find treue Freunde, die immer Rat für uns haben. 18. Wenn wir fleißig find, so werden unsere Lehrer uns Inben.

B. 1. Have you black ink or red? I have black. 2. Rich people are not always generous, and generous people are not always rich. 3. What kind of neighbours have you? We have friendly neighbours. 4. Please fill my glass with pure fresh water. 5. High mountains and beautiful valleys spread out before our eyes. 6. I have something important to say to you. 7. New friends are not always good friends. 8. This mother buys her children something useful. 9. Have you white paper or blue? I have white, but my brother has blue. 10. I like to hear the singer, who sang at (in) the concert yesterday. 11. My sister did not sing at the concert, because she was hoarse. 12. If she had not been hoarse, she would have sung.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XX.

1. Weshalb liebten die Kinder meinen Onkel? 2. Wer wohnt in jenem Hause? 3. Was hat die Mutter ihren Kindern gekauft? 4. Was für Papier haben Sie für mich gekauft? 5. Warum sangen Sie nicht? 6. Womit haben Sie mein Glas gefüllt?

#### LESSON XXI.

#### THE PASSIVE VOICE.

112. The Passive Voice is formed by means of the various tenses of the auxiliary verb werden, to become (see § 19) + the Past Participle of the Verb to be conjugated, as in the Paradigm below.

# Principal Parts of werden:

Infin. werden Impf. wurde (ward) Past Part. geworden

Note. — The perfect tenses of werden are formed with scin (see § 53, a), Perf. 3d, bin geworden; Plupf. id, war geworden, etc. For the formation of the future and conditional, see scin (§ 52).

PARADIGM OF THE PASSIVE VOICE OF loben, to praise.

Indicative. Subjunctive.

(Pres. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I am (being) praised, etc. I (may) be praised, etc. ich werde ich werde du wirst du werdest er wird er werbe gelobt gelobt wir werben mir werben ihr werbet ihr werbet fie werben fie werben

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

#### IMPERFECT.

(Imperf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I was (being) praised, etc. I might be (being) praised, ich wurde (ward) ich würde Tetc. bu wurdest (wardst) bu würdest er wurde (ward) er würde gelobt gelobt wir wurden mir mürden ibr wurdet ihr würdet fie wurden fie würden

#### PERFECT.

(Perfect of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

(Part. of werden omits ge-)

I have been praised, etc. I (may) have been praised, ich bin ich sei Tetc. du bist du feiest er ist er fei gelobt worden gelobt worden wir sind wir seien ihr feid ihr seiet fie find fie feien

## PLUPERFECT.

(Plupf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I had been praised, etc. ich war gelobt worden bu warst gelobt worden, etc.

I might have been praised, ich wäre gelobt worden [etc. du wärest gelobt worden, etc.

#### FUTURE.

(Future of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I shall be praised, etc.
ich werde gelobt werden
du wirst gelobt werden, etc.

I shall be praised, etc.
ich werde gelobt werden
bu werdest gelobt werden, etc.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(Fut. Perf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I shall have been praised, etc. I shall have been praised, etc. ich werde gelobt worden sein du wirst gelobt worden sein, etc.

ich werde gelobt worden fein du werdest gelobt worden sein etc.

I should have been praised

ich würde gelobt worden fein

Conditional.

(Cond. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

SIMPLE.

COMPOUND.

I should be praised, etc. ich würde gelobt werden bu würdest gelobt werden, etc.

du würdest gelobt worden sein etc.

Infinitive. (Infin. of werben + P. Part of loben.)

Pres. to be praised gelobt (zu) werden Perf. to have been praised gelobt worden (zu) fein

Participles. (Part. of werben + P. Part of loben.) Pres. being praised nelobt werdend Past. been praised gelobt worden

Imperative.

(Imper. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

be praised, etc. werde gelobt werde er gelobt werden wir gelobt werdet gelobt werden sie gelobt

REMARKS. - 1. The shorter forms, i. e. Impf. and Plupf. Subj. (see § 111, and Note), are commonly used for the longer forms with wurde in the conditional.

- 2. Observe the omission of the ge- in the P. Part, of werden (morden for ge-morden) when used as auxiliary of the passive voice.
- 3. The personal agent with the passive voice (which is the subject of the active verb) is denoted by the preposition bon (Engl. by), as:

Der unartige Rnabe wird bon feinem Lehrer bestraft. The naughty boy is being punished by his teacher.

4. The auxiliary participle morben is omitted whenever the state of the subject may be regarded as still continuing, thus:

Das Haus ift gebaut,

The house has been (is) built (and is still standing).

- 5. The Engl. 'I am,' 'I was,' etc., as part of the passive auxiliary 'to be,' must be rendered into German as follows:
- (a) By the proper tense of werden when they are equivalent to 'I am being,' 'I was being,' etc., as:

The child is (i. e., is being) punished by its parents, Das Rind wird von feinen Eltern beftraft;

The dinner was being served, when we arrived, Das Mittagseffen wurde ferviert, als wir ankamen :

or when the verb, being turned into the active voice, is in the present or imperf. tense respectively, as:

The boy is (was) always punished by the teacher,

when he is (was) naughty,

Der Knabe wird (wurde) immer vom Lehrer bestraft, wenn er unartig ist (war);

Active: The teacher always punishes (pres.) or punished (impf.) the boy, when he is (was) naughty, Der Lehrer bestraft (bestrafte) immer den Knaben, wenn er unartig ist (war).

- (b) By the proper tense of fein (with or without worden, see last Remark), when they are equivalent to 'I have been,' 'I had been,' etc., or when the verb, being turned into the active, would be perf. or pluperf. respectively, as:

Passive: { I am (= have been) invited to the party, I show bin zur Gesellschaft eingeladen (worden);

Active: { They have invited (perf.) me to the party, Man hat mich zur Gesellschaft eingeladen.

Passive: { The dinner was (= had been) served, when we arrived, Das Mittagsessen war serviert, als wir ankamen;

Active: { They had served (plupf.) the dinner, etc., Man hatte das Mittagsessen ferviert, u. s. w.

The following examples will serve to show more clearly the proper use of the various forms of the passive:

(a) Die Läden werden jest geschlossen. The shops are being shut now (present).

(b) Die Läden sind diese Boche früher geschlossen worden,

The shops have been shut earlier this week (perfect).

(c) Die Läden sind jest geschlossen, The shops are (and remain) shut (past state, continuing in the

present).

- (a) Der Solbat wurde von einer Rugel verwundet, The soldier was wounded by a ball (a ball wounded
- him, impf.).

  (b) Der Soldat war von einer Rugel verwundet worden,
  The soldier had been wounded by a ball
  (pluperf.).

  (c) Der Soldat war schwer verwundet, The soldier was
  severely wounded (and still suffered from his
  - wound: past state, continuing in the past).

3. {
 (a) Diese Brücke wurde vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge was built ten years ago (they built it then, that is the date of its being built, impf.)
 (b) Diese Brücke war vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge was built ten years ago (and is still standing: past state, continuing in the present).

## EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

- A. Turn the following sentences into German: 1. This house was built by my father. 2. My window is broken (gebrochen). 3. The child is washed (gemaiden). 4. This man is esteemed by everybody (jedermann). 5. The garden must be sold. 6. The enemy was beaten (gefch (agen).
- B. Turn the following sentences into the passive: 1. Worans machen wir Meffer? 2. Robert Stevenson hat die Victoria-Brücke bei Montreal gebaut. 3. Mein Bruder hat mir diese Uhr geschenkt. 4. Die Feinde bombardierten die Stadt. 5. Der Lehrer hatte den Anaben beftraft, weil der Rnabe fein Buch verloren (lost) hatte. 6. Dein Bater wird bich loben.

#### LIMITATIONS OF THE PASSIVE VOICE. 113.

1. Only the direct object of a transitive verb can become the subject of the passive verb; thus we say in the

> Active: Mein Bater liebt mich; and in the Passive : 3ch werde von meinem Bater geliebt.

But the sentence:

'I have been promised help by him' = Sulfe ift mir von ihm versprochen (promised) worden, since in the

Active: Er hat mir Sulfe versprochen (promised),

bulfe is the direct, but mir the indirect object. Hence it follows, that

2. Intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive, thus:

I am allowed = Es wird mir erlaubt (Lat. mihi permittitur);

He has been helped = Es ist ihm geholfen worden.

This impersonal passive is also used in expressing an action without specifying any agent, as:

Es wurde geftern Abend viel gefanzt,

There was a great deal of dancing yesterday evening.

Note. — The pron. es in these constructions is omitted if any other member of the sentence precedes the verb, as:

Mir wird erlaubt ; Geftern Abend murde, etc.

## 114. Substitutes for the Passive Voice.

The passive voice is much less frequently used in German than in English, particularly in the longer forms. It is often replaced, especially with intransitive verbs:

(a) By the indefinite pronoun man (Fr. on, see Less. XXVII), with the verb in the active voice, as:

Man glaubt ihm nicht, He is not believed; Man kann ihm nicht trauen, He cannot be trusted.

(b) By a reflexive verb, as:

Der Schlüssel wird sid finden, The key will be found; and particularly with lassen, as:

Das läßt sich leicht machen, That can easily be done.

## VOCABULARY.

to conquer, overcome, err'bern believe, glauben (intr., + dat. of person) wait (for), warten (auf + acc.) workman, ber Ar'beiter visit, visitors, ber Besuch mill, die Mühle beef, das Nindfleisch courage, die Tapferkeit untruth, falsehood, die Un's wahrheit as, als once, ein'mal this evening, heute Abend as soon as, sobald' carefully, forg'fältig severely, ftreng little, wenig

Idioms: As a child, when (I etc. was) a child, als Kind; This house is for sale (lit., to sell, to be sold), dieses Haus ist zu verkausen; to have visitors, Besuch haben.

### EXERCISE XXI.

- A. 1. Diefes Bild wurde von meiner Schwefter gemalt, und es ift viel gelobt worden. 2. Die Stadt ift vom General bombardiert und erobert worden. 3. Wir werden bestraft werden, wenn wir unsere Lettion nicht forafältig lernen. 4. Die Läden find gefchloffen, denn heute ist (ein) Feiertag. 5. Ift bas Saus neben ber Mühle verfauft? 6. Sawohl, es wurde gestern von Ihrem Neffen gekauft. 7. Von wem wurde das Kind gerettet, als das Haus brannte? 8. Es wurde von einem Arbeiter gerettet, welcher wegen seiner Tapferkeit von den Leuten gelobt wurde. 9. Wäre der Anabe nach Saufe geschickt worden, wenn er nicht unartig gewesen wäre? 10. Neben bem Hause unseres Nachbars wird eine Rirche gebaut. 11. Es wurde gestern Abend viel bei uns gefungen und gespielt, benn wir hatten Befuch. 12. Ift das Rindfleisch geschickt worden, welches ich bestellt habe? 13. Der Lehrer fagte, daß er mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden sei. 14. Das Bild ware von den Rünstlern nicht gelobt worden, wenn es nicht sehr schön gewesen wäre. 15. Als Rind wurde ich immer von meinem Bater streng bestraft, wenn ich eine Unwahrheit fagte. 16. Wird es uns erlaubt fein, unfere Aufgaben zu verbrennen, wenn wir damit fertig find? 17. Es wird heute viel gespielt, aber wenig studiert, weil wir morgen feine Schule haben. 18. Es ist mir nichts davon gesagt worden. 19. Wir wurden nicht gelobt, weil wir nicht fleißig waren. 20. Sobald die Lektionen gelernt find, werden wir einen Spaziergang machen.
- B. 1. Our parents love us.
  We are loved by our parents.
  By whom was this letter brought?
  It was brought by a messenger.
  Our house is built, and we are already living in it.
  Is the dinner served? No, it is being served

now. 7. Was the soldier in the hospital wounded, or was he ill? 8. He had been wounded by a bullet. 9. The carriages of the count will be sold to-day. 10. His horses are already sold. 11. Why is this boy not believed? 12. He is not believed because he once told an untruth. 13. It is agreeable to be praised. 14. My sister is learning the song, which was sung at (in) the concert yesterday.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXI.

1. Wer hat dieses Rindfleisch gebracht? 2. Wann wird uns erlaubt werden, im Garten zu spielen? 3. Ist das Haus neben der Kirche verkauft? 4. Wird heute Abend viel studiert werden? 5. Von wem wurde der Knabe nach Hause geschickt? 6. Ist dieses Bild zu verkaufen?

### LESSON XXII.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES: WEAK AND MIXED. - STRONG VERBS: beißen Model.

115. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES: SECOND FORM.

If preceded by the Definite Article or by any determinative word of the bicier Model, the Attributive Adjective follows the Weak Declension, and takes—e in the Nominative Sing. of all Genders, and in the Accusative Sing. Feminine and Neuter; otherwise—en throughout, thus:

WEAK DECLENSION OF gut, good.

		Singular.		Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	gute	gute	gute	guten
Gen.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Dat.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Acc.	guten	gute	gute	guten

## SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

## Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	the good man	the good woman	the good child
Nom.	ber gute Mann	die gute Frau	das gute Kind
Gen.	des guten Mannes	der guten Frau	des guten Kindes
Dat.	bem guten Manne	der guten Frau	dem guten Kinde
Acc.	den guten Mann	die gute Frau	das gute Kind

### Plural.

### ALL GENDERS.

Nom. die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder Gen. der guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder Dat. den guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern Acc. die auten Männer, Frauen, Kinder

Observe: Words of the bicier Model having (as far as possible) a full set of endings showing gender, etc., the adjective has as few of such distinctive endings as possible.

## Further examples:

bieser gute Mann, this good man bieses guten Mannes, of this good man, etc. jene gute Frau, that good woman jener guten Frau, of that good woman, etc. welches guten Kind, which good child welches guten Kindes, of which good child, etc.

REMARK. — Two or more adjectives qualifying the same substantive follow the same form (compare § 102, Remark 3, above), as:

der gute, alte, rote Wein, guter, alter, roter Wein.

Decline throughout in German: the sick child; that high tree; which long lesson; this beautiful, broad stream; that young woman; this lazy horse; which tired boy.

116. Third Form. — If preceded by the Indefinite Article or by any determinative word of the mein Model, the Attributive Adjective follows the biefer Model in the Nominative and Accusative Sing. of all Genders; otherwise, it takes —cu (i. e., follows the Weak Declension) throughout, thus:

# MIXED DECLENSION OF gut, good.

Singular.				Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	gut <b>er</b>	gute	gut <b>es</b>	guten	
Gen.	guten	guten	guten	guten	
Dat.	guten	guten	guten	guten	
Acc.	guten	gute	gut <b>es</b>	guten	

## SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

# Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	a good man	a good woman	a good child
Nom.	ein guter Mann	eine gute Frau	ein gutes Kind
Gen.	eines guten Mannes	einer guten Frau	eines guten Kindes
Dat.	einem guten Manne	einer guten Frau	einem guten Kinde
Acc.	einen guten Mann	eine gute Frau	ein gutes Kind

OBSERVE: This form differs from the weak form only in the Nom. Sing. Masc., and Nom. and Acc. Sing. Neut., where words of the mein Model have no distinctive endings. The adjective must consequently have the missing sign of gender and case.

The Plural of this form is the same as that of the Weak Declension, but, as ein has no Plur., the full declension of Substantives with mein is given here:

# Singular.

MASC. FEM. NEUTER. my good sister my good brother my good child N. mein auter Bruder meine gute Schwester mein gutes Rind G. meines auten meiner auten meines auten Brubers Schwester Rinbes D. meinem guten meiner guten meinem auten Schwester Bruber Rinde

A. meinen guten Bruder meine gute Schwester mein gutes Kinb

# Plural.

#### ALL GENDERS.

Nom. meine guten Brüber, Schwestern, Kinder Gen. meiner guten Brüber, Schwestern, Kinder Dat. meinen guten Brübern, Schwestern, Kindern Acc. meine guten Brüber, Schwestern, Kinder

## 117. COMPOUND VERBS WITH SEPARABLE PREFIX.

1. The prefixes \(\(\text{ir}\)-, \(\text{er}\)-, etc. (see \§ 35, Rem. 6), hence called Inseparable Prefixes, are never separated from the verb; other prefixes (chiefly the Prepositions) are Separable, but only in Principal Sentences with Simple Tense, as:

Der König schickte zwei Boten aus, The king sent out two messengers. Mein Bruder reist morgen ab, My brother sets out (= departs) to-morrow.

NOTE. — These Prefixes contain an idea distinct from that of the verb, and hence, if retained before the Verb in the cases above, would throw the verb out of its place as Second Idea of the Principal Sentence.

2. The ge- of the P. Part. and zu in the Infin. follow the prefix, making together but one word, as:

Die Boten des Königs sind abgereist, The messengers of the king have departed. Mein Vater wünscht morgen abzureisen, My father wishes to depart to-morrow.

- 3. The principal accent is on the Verb when the Prefix is Inseparable; on the Prefix when Separable, as: besu'chen, verstau'fen; but aus'schien, ab'reisen.
- 4. The principal parts of Separable Compound Verbs should therefore be given as in the following examples:

Infin.	IMPF.	P. PART.
an'greifen, to attack	griff an	angegriffen
ab'schneiden, to cut off	schnitt ab	abgeschnitten

# 118. STRONG VERBS: beißen Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	beißen	bĭß	gebiffen
Engl. Analogy:	bite	bĭt	bitten
Ablaut:	ei	ĭ	ĭ

#### LIST.

NOTES. — r. Compounds are only given in the Lists when the simple Verb is not found in the strong form.

2. R. = Reflexive; N. = Neuter, i. e., conjugated with sein only; N. A. = Neuter and Active, i. e., with sein or saben; W. indicates that the Weak form is also used without difference of meaning.

beißen, bite	biß	gebiffen
(er)bleichen (W. N.), turn pale	erblich	erblichen
(be)fleißen (R.), apply one's self	befliß	beflissen
gleichen, resemble, be equal to	glich	geglichen
gleiten (N.), glide	glitt	geglitten
greifen, grasp, seize	griff	gegriffen
fneisen, pinch	fniff	gekniffen
leiden, suffer	litt	gelitten

pfeifen, whistle	pfiff	gepfiffen
reißen, tear	riß	geriffen
reiten (N. A.), ride	ritt	geritten
schleichen (N.), sneak	<b>f</b> dflid	geschlichen
schleifen, grind	schliff	geschliffen
schmeißen, fling	<b>s</b> chmiß	geschmissen
schneiden, cut	schnitt.	geschnitten
schreiten (N.), stride	<b>s</b> chritt	geschritten
streichen, stroke	ftrich	gestrichen
streiten, contend	ftritt	gestritten
weichen, yield	wich	gewichen

REMARKS.—1. The root vowel being shortened in the Impf., the following consonant, if single, is doubled; and stems in -b (schneiben, leiben) change b into tt.

- 2. Those whose stem ends in f change f into f in the Impf. (unless final) and P. Part., as: beißen, ich bif, wir biffen, gebiffen.
- 3. The following Verbs are weak when they have a different meaning, as below:

bleichen (trans.), bleach	bleichte	gebleicht
schleifen, drag; raze (to the ground)	schleifte	geschleift
weichen, soften, soak	weichte	geweicht

4. Begleiten, to accompany, is no compound of gleiten, to glide, but of leiten, to lead (weak, = be-ge-leiten); verleiden, to make disagreeable, spoil (not from leiden, but Leid) is weak.

## VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, ab'reisen cut off, ab'schneiben paint (not pictures), an's streichen slip, slide, auß'gleiten comprehend, understand, bes greifen seize, ergreifen fear, sich fürchten (vor + dat.)
tear (to pieces), zerreißen
pass (time, etc.), zu'bringen
Cinderella, Aschenputtel
barber, ber Barbier'
idea, notion, ber Begriff
steamer, steam-boat, bas

Dampfschiff
thief, der Dieb
grass, das Gras
hair, das Haar
hay, das Heu
huntsman, hunter, der Jäger
illness, die Arankheit
fever, das Fieber
slipper, der Pantoffel
rain, der Regen
rheumatism, der Rheumatismus

piece, das Stück
little piece, das Stückhen
traveller, der Wanderer
tooth, der Zahn\*
toothache, das Zahnweh
evil, angry, cross, böfe
joyous, merry, fröhlich
smooth, slippery, glatt
golden, of gold, golden
violent, heavy (of rain), heftig
naughty, ill-behaved (of
children), un'artig
true, wahr
furious, wü'tend

on that account, beswegen

the day before vesterday, por's

of it. davon

aestern

Idioms: To be on the point of (be about to), im Begriffe fein. You are tired, are you not? Sie find mude, nicht wahr? So are we, Wir find es auch. Georgo has torn my coat, Georg hat mir den Noch geriffen.

#### EXERCISE XXII.

A. 1. Der General M. ritt auf einem schwarzen Pferde durch die Straßen Torontoß (von Toronto). 2. Wie haben Sie die Zeit auf dem Lande zugebracht? 3. An was für einer Krankheit hat Ihr Vater so lange gelitten? 4. Sie sind müde, nicht wahr? Wir sind es auch. 5. Als mein Bruder jung war, hatte er schlechte Zähne und litt sehr an Zahnweh. 6. Der schwarze Hund unsser(e)s Nachbars ist böse; er hat vorgestern ein kleines Kind gebissen. 7. Unsser) alten Nachbarn begleiteten uns nach dem Hafen, als wir abreisten. 8. Wo wohnt der Barbier, der Ihnen das Haar geschnitten hat? 9. Mein altes Messer schneidet jetzt aut, denn der Diener hat es gestern geschliffen. 10. Als ich vor

ber Schule über die glatte Straße schritt, glitt ich aus und zerriß mir den neuen Nock. 11. Als der Dieb im Begriffe war, ins Haus zu schleichen, ergriff ihn der Diener. 12. Unser alter Nachsbar litt lange an (am) Rheumatismus, und war deswegen immer zu Hause. 13. Der General ritt mit seinen Offizieren über die Brück. 14. Der böse Anabe auf dem Apfelbaum riß die reisen Äpfel vom Baume und schmiß sie auf die Erde. 15. Mein junger Nesse, der auf der Universität war, hat am Fieder gelitten, aber er ist jetzt wieder wohl. 16. Aschenputtels Schwester schnitt sich (dat.) ein Stück vom Fuße ab, weil er zu groß für den goldenen Pantossel war. 17. Ich din schnell nach Hause geritten, weil ich mich vor dem wütenden Sturme fürchtete. 18. Der Wanderer schritt frohen Mutes durch den grünen Wald und pfiff ein fröhliches Lied. 19. Dieses Messer ist nicht scharf; wann wurde es geschlissen?

B. 1. Where is the old knife that you ground? 2. When Mary was young she resembled her mother. 3. The bears sneaked (perf.) into the wood, but the hunters followed (perf.) them. 4. Where does the painter live who painted (perf.) our house? 5. The industrious countryman cut (perf.) the grass yesterday, and is making hay to-day. 6. Why are you crying, Charles? I am crying because George pinched (perf.) me. 7. The rain spoiled my (dat. + def. art.) journey to the country. 8. The steamer has whistled already. Now I shall say farewell. 9. Little Charles is a naughty child; he has torn his (dat. of refl. pron. + art.) new dress. 10. Old people often suffer from rheumatism. 11. Have you understood what he said? 12. The gardener was burning the boughs, which he had cut from the trees. 13. I have quarrelled with my old friend, because he was wrong. 14. This blue ribbon is too long, please cut a little of it off for me. 15. Why is Charles crying? He has been bitten by a dog.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXII.

1. Was für einen Hund hat Ihr Nachbar? 2. Wie würden Sie die Zeit zubringen, wenn Sie reich wären? 3. Was machte der Wanderer, als er durch den Wald schritt? 4. Wo wohnen Sie jetzt? 5. Wann werden Sie Heu machen? 6. Weshalb sind Sie so schnell nach Hause geritten?

### LESSON XXIII.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. - STRONG VERBS: bleiben MODEL.

119. Possessive Pronouns.

r. The Possessive Pronouns are used when no substantive is expressed, as:

The hat is mine (*Pronoun*); but: It is my hat (*Adjective*).

- 2. They are formed from the stems of the corresponding Possessive Adjectives by adding certain endings, as follows:
  - (a) Endings of bieser Model (without article), as:

Singular.			Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
	mein <b>er</b>		mein(e)\$	meine, mine
Gen.	meines	meiner	meincs	meiner, of mine
Dat.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen, (to, for) mine
Acc.	meinen	meine	mein(e)&	meine, mine

OBSERVE: In the Nom. and Acc. Neuter, -e of the ending may be omitted.

So for the other persons:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Sing.	beiner	bein <b>e</b>	beines, thine
	feiner	fein <b>e</b>	feincs, his, its
	ihrer	ihre	ihres, hers (its)

Dlugal

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Plur.	uns(e)rer	unf(e)re	unf(e)res, ours
	eu(e)rcr	eu(e)re	eu(e)res, yours
	ihrer	ihre	ihres, theirs
	(Threr	Ihre	Ihres, yours)

Cincalan

(b) Preceded by the Definite Article, and hence with endings of Weak Adjective, thus:

Singular.			L turat.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
	N. ber meine	die meine	das meine	die meinen, mine
	G. des meinen	der meinen	des meinen	ber meinen, of mine
	D. dem meinen	der meinen	dem meinen	ben meinen, (to, for) mine
	A. ben meinen	die meine	das meine	die meinen, mine

So: ber, bie, bas beine, thine ber, bie, bas eu(e)re, yours ber, bie, bas ihre, hers, (its) ber, bie, bas ihre, yours) ber, bie, bas unf(e)re, ours

(c) Preceded by Definite Article, with ending -ig + Weak terminations, thus:

## Singular.

MASC. FEM. NEUTER.
Nom. der meinige die meinige das meinige
Gen. des meinigen, etc. der meinigen, etc. bes meinigen, etc.

### Plural.

#### ALL GENDERS.

Nom. die meinigen, mine Gen. der meinigen, of mine, etc.

So: ber, bie, bas beinige, thine ber, bie, bas seinige, his, its and so on for the other persons.

Note. — 1. In unfrige and eurige the -e of the stem is always omitted.

REMARK. - 1. These forms are interchangeable, without difference in meaning, as:

I have my book, but I have not yours,

I have my book, but I have not 3 afree) & 3free) & das Ihree bas Ihrige.

His letter is here, but ours is not here,

Sein Brief ist hier, aber { uns(e)rer } ist nicht hier.

- 2. When a Possessive Pronoun is used as predicate, it may be replaced by the Possessive Adjective without ending, as: This book is mine, Dieses Buch ift mein.
  - 3. Observe the following idiomatic uses of the Poss. Prons.:
    - (a) Ich werde das Meinige (neuter sing.) thun, Is shall do my part, my utmost.
    - (b) Die Meinigen, Die Seinigen (Plur.), My, his friends, family.
    - (c) A friend of mine = Einer von meinen Freunden. This friend of mine = Diejer mein Freund.

STRONG VERBS: bleiben Model. 120.

	Infin.	IMPF.	P. Part.
Germ. Model:	bleiben	blicb	geblieben
Eng. Analogy:	wanting		
Ablaut:	ei	ie	ie

### LIST.

bleiben (N.), stay, remain	blieb	geblieben
(ge)beihen (N.), thrive	gedieh	gediehen
leihen, lend, borrow	lieh	geliehen

meiden, avoid	mieb	gemieden
preisen, praise	pries	gepriefen
reiben, rub	rieb	gerieben
scheiden (N. A.), part (intr. and trans	.) schied	geschieden
scheinen, shine; seem, appear	schien	geschienen
schreiben, write	schrieb	geschrieben
schreien, scream, shout	schrie	geschrieen
schweigen, be silent	schwieg	geschwiegen
speien, spit	spie	gespieen
steigen (N.), mount, ascend	ftieg	gestiegen
treiben, drive	trieb	getrieben
weisen, show, point out	wies	gewiesen
zeihen, accuse	zieh	geziehen

#### Vocabulary.

to copy, ab'schreiben hang up, auf'hängen ascend, besteigen (trans.) prove, demonstrate, be= weisen appear, erscheinen shine, glitter, glänzen descend, herab'steigen guard, keep, hüten rule, reign, govern, regieren write (to), schreiben (dat. or an + acc.) climb, steigen (auf + acc.) pardon, excuse, verzeihen remain behind, zurüd'bleiben cold, die Erfältung family, die Familie herd, flock, die Berde

heat, die Site last, der Leisten pepper, ber Pfeffer shepherd, ber Schäfer shoemaker, cobbler, ber Schuster silence (act of keeping s.), das Schweigen speaking (act of), das Sprechen throne, der Thron pasture, pasturage, die Weide fifty, funfzig, fünfzig bright, brightly, hell loud, loudly, laut correct, richtig round, rund bad, schlimm strong, severe, start

Idiom: Up to the present time, still, nuch immer.

#### EXERCISE XXIII.

- A. 1. Es ift nicht Alles Gold, was glänzt. 2. Sprechen ift Silber, Schweigen ift Gold. 3. Schufter, bleib' bei beinem Leisten. 4. Seit acht Tagen bin ich wegen einer ftarten Erfältung ju Saufe geblieben. 5. Gine von meinen Coufinen ift jest bei uns auf Befuch. aber fie bleibt nicht lange. 6. Was für Tiere find in jenem Walbe? Es find Baren. 7. Die Mutter und ihre Tochter weinten heftig, als sie von einander schieden. 8. Mein Dheim blieb wegen ber großen Site mit seiner Familie auf bem Lande. 9. Karl hat an seinen Bater geschrieben, und ich bin im Begriffe an den meinigen zu schreiben. 10. Der König schwieg und schien traurig zu fein, als er bie schlimme Nachricht hörte. 11. Bitte, verzeihen Sie mir, daß ich Ihnen noch nicht geschrieben habe. 12. Wo haben Sie Ihren hut aufgehängt? Ich habe ihn neben ben Ihrigen gehängt. 13. Als wir auf ben Berg ftiegen, fchien bie Sonne ichon hell. 14. Welche von biefen Buchern wunfchen Sie? Ich wünsche bie meinen. 15. Wir wurden auf bem Lande geblieben fein, wenn unfere Freunde auch geblieben wären. 16. Die Herden wurden auf die Weide getrieben, als wir vom Berg berabstiegen. 17. Es ift uns bewiesen worben, bag bie Erde rund ift. 18. Bor funfzig Sahren bestieg die Königin Victoria ben Thron, und fie regiert noch immer. 19. Burben Sie nach Europa reisen, wenn ich gurudbliebe, um Ihr haus zu hüten? 20. Die Knaben pfiffen und schrieen, als fie auf ben Berg ftiegen.
- B. 1. George has black ink, but mine is red. 2. Mary's sister and mine are learning German. 3. We have looked for William's books and ours everywhere. 4. Your exercise is not correct, copy it. 5. Whose gloves have you? I have mine and yours. 6. Why did the boy shout so loud? 7. To whom were you writing the long letter yesterday? 8. I have black eyes, but yours are blue. 9. In what year did Goethe's 'Faust' appear? 10. Waiter, please bring me the vinegar and the pepper. 11. This lead-pencil is mine, where is

yours? 12. Your aunt and mine are neighbours. 13. The professor seemed not to be at home, for his windows and shutters were not open. 14. I should write to him, if he wrote to me. 15. I was writing to my mother and Charles was writing to his when the postman brought us the letters.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Seit wann sind Sie schon zu Hause geblieben? 2. Was machten die Schäfer, als wir vom Berge herabstiegen? 3. Wann bestieg die Königin Victoria den Thron? 4. Was für Tinte haben Sie? 5. Für wen ist dieser lange Brief? 6. Welches sind die Namen der Monate?

### LESSON XXIV.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES (concluded): TABLE, GENERAL REMARKS.—STRONG VERBS: jújießen and jeújien models.

**121.** Table of Adjective Endings.

I. Strong.				
Sin	Plural.			
MASC.	M. F. N.			
N. —er	—е	cs	—е	
G. —eß(en)	-er	-es (en)	er	
D. —em	-er	-em	-en	
A. —en	—е	—es	—е	
0		.01 0	C+	

OBSERVE: -en for -es in Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter before strong substs.

### II. WEAK.

Singular.   Plur,				
	9		-	
		NEUT.	1	
-	—е	—e	—en	
—en	—en	-en	—en	
-en	—en	—en	—en	
-en	—e	e	-en	

OBSERVE: Persistent -1, except Nom. Sing. of all genders, and Acc. Sing. Fem. and Neuter.

### III. MIXED.

S	Plural.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	M. F. N.
Nom. —er	—е	—e\$	—en
Gen. —en	—en	—en	—en
Dat. —en	-en	-en	-en
Acc. —en	—е	—eŝ	—en

OBSERVE: Same as Weak (II), except Nom. Sing. Masc. and Nom. Acc. Sing. Neuter.

## 122. GENERAL REMARKS ON ADJECTIVES.

- 1. Participles used attributively are employed and declined as Adjectives, as: geliebter Bater, beloved father; bas weinende Kind, the weeping child; meine geehrte Mutter, my honoured mother.
- 2. Adjectives and Participles used as Substantives vary their declension according to the rules for Adjective Declension, but are spelt with capital letters, as: ber Rranfe, the sick man, patient; Fem. bie Rranfe, the sick woman; Plur. bie Rranfen; ein Rranfer, a sick man, patient; pl. Rranfe, sick people, patients.

REMARKS.—I. Many words, the English equivalents of which are Substantives only, are Adjectives in German, as: ber Frembe, the stranger, foreigner, Pl. die Fremben, but ein Frember, Pl. Frembe; ber Reisende, the traveller, ein Reisender, etc. These Adjective-Substantives, when Masc. and preceded by the Definite Article, have the same inflection as the Weak Declension.

2. Names of languages from Adjectives are not declined when used without the article, as:

Bas ift dies auf Deutsch? What is this in German?

- 3. Adjectives of colour used substantively are indeclinable, or add -# in the Gen. Sing., as: bas Grün, bes Grün(\$).
- 4. If the Substantive is not expressed, the Adjective shows by its ending the gender, number and case, as:

Ein kleiner Mann und ein großer, A little man and a tall one.

Note. — The English 'one' is in these cases not to be translated into German.

- 5. If a Substantive is preceded by a succession of Adjectives, they all follow the same form, as: guter, alter, roter Bein; der gute, alte, rote Bein; eines guten, roten Beines.
- 6. Adjectives whose stem ends in -cl, -cn, -cr, as: ebel, noble; golben, golden; heiser, hoarse, drop -c of the stem when inflected; those in -cl, -cr may drop -c of the termination instead, unless the termination is -c, -cr, or -cs, as: bas golbne Bauer; ber eblen or ebeln Frau; bem heisen or heisern Sänger.
- 7. The Adjective hoch, high, drops & when inflected, as: ber hohe Baum, the high tree.
- 8. Adjectives can generally be used without change as adverbs, as: Instig, merry, merrily; angenesim, agreeable, agreeably; gut, good, well.
- 9. Adjectives (so-called) in -er from names of places are indeclinable, as: die Londoner Zeitung, the London newspaper; Hamburger Schiffe, Hamburg ships; ein Pariser Handschuh, a Paris glove.

Note. — These adjectives correspond to the English use of the proper names without inflection. They are really substantives in the Gen. Plur., thus: die Londoner Zeitung is strictly die Zeitung der Londoners, the newspaper of the Londoners. Hence they are spelt with a capital letter.

gegoffen

gießen, pour

ro. After personal pronouns, the Adjective follows the strong declension except in the Dat. Sing. and Nom. (and sometimes Acc.) Plur., as:

(for) me, poor man; you good people; us little children. mir armen Manne; ihr guten Leute; uns kleine(n) Kinder.

ri. The Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII) etwas, nichts, viel, are Substantives, and therefore not determinative words, and the following adjective has the strong declension, as: etwas Gutes, something good; nichts Ungenehmes, nothing pleasant.

Observe: The Adjective is here used as substantive, and therefore spelt with a capital.

- 12. After the Indefinite Numerals in the Plural (see Less. XXIX) alle, all; einige (etliche), some; manche, many; mehrere, several; solche, such; viele, many; wenige, few, the Adjective may have either the weak or the strong ending.
- 13. After the interrogative welds in the plural, the strong declension is also found in the adjective; and the exclamatory weld is generally uninflected before an adjective, which then always has the strong form, as:

Welch großes Vergnügen! What (a) great pleasure!

## 123. Strong Verbs: ichießen Model.

120	D11(01(0	· LILLDS ·	justellen zuzoaren	
		Infin.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. M	odel:	schießen	fфŏв	geschössen
Engl. An	alog <b>y:</b>	(shoot)	shŏt	shŏt
Ablaut:		ie	ŏ	ŭ
-	a	LIS	3 T.	
ver)drießen,	vex		verdroß	verdroffen
ließen (N.),	flow		floß -	geflossen

gob

glimmen, glow	glomm	geglommen
flimmen (W. N. A.), climb	flomm	geklommen
friechen (N.), creep	frod	gefrochen
genießen, enjoy	genoß	genoffen
riechen, smell (tr. and intr.)	roch	gerochen
(er) schallen (W. N.), sound, resound	erscholl	erschollen
faufen, drink (of beasts)	foff	gesoffen
schießen, shoot	schoß	geschoffen
schließen, lock, shut	schloß	geschlossen
steden (W.), boil (intr.)	fott	gesotten
sprießen (N.), sprout	fproß	gesprossen
triefen (N.), drip	troff	getroffen

REMARKS. - 1. Observe, as under the beißen Model (§ 118, Rem. 1, 2) the doubling of consonants and the interchange of fi and fi: also the change of b into tt (as in leiden, schnei= ben, ib. Rem. 1).

- 2. Rächen, 'to avenge,' is weak but has also P. Part. gerochen.
- 3. Saufen has also fäufft, fäuft in the Pres. Indic. 2. 3. Sing.
- 4. The simple verb schaffen is usually weak (schaffte, ge= Schallt).
  - 5. In fieden the weak P. Part. (gefiedet) is rare.

#### 124. STRONG VERBS: fechten Model.

2.3. S. PR. IND. INFIN. P. PART. IMPF. 2. S. IMPER. Germ. Model: fechten fichtst ficht sicht focht gefochten Engl. Analogy: wanting Ablaut: e n ø

#### LIST.

fechten, fight fichtst, ficht, ficht aefochten focht flechten, weave, twine flichtst, flicht, flicht flocht geflochten (er)löschen (N.), be- (erlischest) erlischt erlosch erloschen come extinguished (erlisch) melfen (W.), milk (milfit, milft, milf) molf aemolfen quellen, gush forth (quillit, quillt, quelle) quoll gequollen schmelzen (N.), melt (schmilzest) schmilzt fchmol3 geschmolzen (intr.) (fcbmila) schwellen (N.), swell (schwillft) schwillt Idiwoll geschwollen (schwill)

REMARKS. — I. Rare forms are enclosed in ( ).

- 2. The simple verb löschen, 'to extinguish' (tr.), is weak (löschte, gelöscht), as are also its separable compounds, e. g., aus löschen.
- 3. Schmelzen (intr.) has also the forms (schmelzest), schmelzt (schmelze).
- 4. Schmelzen, 'to smelt' and schwellen, 'to cause to swell' (trans.), are weak.

## VOCABULARY.

extinguish, put out, aus'löschen water (flowers, etc.), begießen prescribe, verschreiben flow past, vorü'bersließen close, shut, zu'schließen exhibition, die Aus'stellung health, die Gesundheit drink, beverage, das Getränk cow, die Kuh\* maid, maid-servant, die Magb\* mid-day, noon, der Mittag pain, der Schmerz

snow, ber Schnee
eight, acht
celebrated, famous, berühmt
blind, blind
healthy, healthful, gefund
dear, lieb
Limburg (adj.), Limburger
dead, tot
Toronto (adj.), Torontoer
thereon, daran
past, by, vorüber

Idioms. 1. To go past the house, am haufe vorübergehen. 2. In German, auf Deutsch or im Deutschen.

#### EXERCISE XXIV.

- A. 1. Wie wurden Gie biefe Wörter auf Deutsch schreiben? 2. Ich habe meinen Brief geschlossen und werde ihn jest nach ber Boft bringen. 3. Des Morgens fteigen die fleinen Bogel zum Sim= mel auf und fingen luftig. 4. Welch großes Bergnügen, gute Ge= fundheit zu genießen! 5. Gin fleiner Strom floß luftig an unferem Saufe porüber. 6. Der Fuß des Rranten ift geschwollen und er leibet fehr baran. 7. Unfer geehrter Professor ist feit acht Sahren tot. 8. Der Doktor hat bem Kranken guten, alten, roten Wein verschrieben. 9. Die Zeitungen erzählen viel von der Torontoer Ausftellung. 10. Der Regen quoll vom Simmel und löschte bas alimmende Reuer aus. 11. Unfere Soldaten fchloffen die Stadt= thore und fochten tapfer gegen ben Feind. 12. Die Mägde baben Die Rühe gemolfen und jetzt begießen fie die Blumen. 13. Bitte, schweigt, ihr guten Leute, benn die Kranken leiden jett große Schmerzen. 14. Burbe ber Lehrer bofe werden, wenn ber Schüler feine Aufgabe gerriffe? 15. Der Schäfer hat bem Reifenden ben Weg nach der Stadt gewiesen. 16. Würde es Ihnen die Reise verleiden, wenn ich guruckbliebe? 17. haben Sie die prächtigen Blumen gefehen, die wir bem Rranten ichiden? 18. Der Schnee schmolz und bas Waffer troff von ben Bäufern, als bie Sonne gegen Mittag warm ichien. 19. Der Blinde, ber neben uns wohnt, flocht zwei Körbe für meine Mutter. 20. Der junge und ber alte Frembe, die im Balbe jagten, haben viele Bogel ge= schoffen. 21. Bon wem find die Blumen beaoffen worden? Sie find bom Gartner begoffen worden.
- B. 1. The golden slipper was too small for Cinderella's sisters. 2. Paris gloves and Limburg cheese are famous everywhere. 3. The huntsman shot a hare and brought it home. 4. Our neighbours are not at home, for their doors and windows are closed. 5. I do not believe every story I hear. 6. Please, dear mother, tell us little children something new and pretty. 7. If Charles tears his new book, his mother

will be very angry. 8. He seemed not to hear what I said to him. 9. These flowers are for the patients in the hospitals. 10. (The) green is agreeable for those who have weak eyes. 11. The horse is drinking the water which we have brought him. 12. Pure fresh water is a healthful beverage. 13. A week ago I was at (in) a concert, where this singer (f.) sang. 14. When the weather becomes cold, the dogs like to creep behind the stove. 15. The travellers enjoyed the beauty of the landscape, when they were ascending the high mountain. 16. Please tell me how this word is written in German.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Haben Sie Ihren Brief schon geschlossen? 2. Wie lange ist Ihr geehrter Professor schon tot? 3. Was hat der Doktor der Kranken verschrieben? 4. Weshalb wurde der Lehrer böse? 5. Wer hat diese Vögel geschossen? 6. Was hat der Jäger mit dem Hasen gemacht, welchen er im Walde geschossen hat?

## LESSON XXV.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. — STRONG VERBS: frieren model.

125. Comparison of Adjectives.

In German, as in English, the degrees of comparison are formed by adding to the Positive:

-er to form the Comparative, and -(e) it " " Superlative, as:

neu, new neuer, newer neu(e)st, newest reich, rich reicher, richer reichst, richest angenehm, agreeable angenehmer, more agreeable angenehmst, most agreeable REMARKS. — r. Monosyllabic adjectives with a, v, u (not au) generally take Umlaut (but with many exceptions, given in App. K.), as:

Ianglängerlängstfurzfürzerfürzest

- 2. The syllables -er, (e) it are added to every adjective, without regard to its length, as in the case of angenehm (given above, but see § 161, note).
- 3. Adjectives used attributively in the Comparative or Superlative degree are declined, and add the usual endings after the syllables -er, -eft respectively, as:

der reichere Mann ein reicherer Mann mein ältestes Kleid liebster Freund

• 4. Participles are compared like adjectives, as:

geliebt, beloved geliebter geliebtest

- 5. -e of the Superlative ending is retained only after b, t or a sibilant (j, jh, z, ß, x), as: alt, Superl. ältest; but groß always has Superl. größt.
- 5. Adjectives in -e, -el, -en, -er drop e of the stem in the Comparative, as: träge, träger, trägst; edel, edler, edelst.

### 126. THE COMPARATIVE.

- 1. 'Than' = als after the Comparative.
- 2. The compound form with mehr (Engl. 'more') is never (except with the adjectives given in § 161) used in German (as it is in Engl. with polysyllabic adjectives), unless when two adjectives (i. e., two qualities of the same object) are being compared, as:

Er ist mehr schwach als krank, He is more (i. e., rather) weak than ill. 3. Comparison of equality:

I am (just) as rich as he, Ich bin (eben) jo reich wie er.

4. 'The...the' before comparatives = je, besto or um so — je (besto or um so), as:

The longer the nights, the shorter the days, Je (besto) länger die Nächte, je (besto) fürzer die Tage.

5. When the comparative is declined, the omission of e of the stem takes place just as in Adjectives in -er, as:

den reicher(e)n Mann, etc.

Note.—The syllable -et may occur three times successively at the end of the same adjective, viz.: 1° as part of the stem, e. g., heiser, hoarse; 2° as inflection of comparison, e. g., heis(e)rer, hoarser; 3° as ending of strong adjective declension, e. g., ein heis(e)rerer Sänger, a hoarser singer.

## 127. THE SUPERLATIVE.

- 1. The Superlative is not used, even as *Predicate*, in the undeclined form, but:
- (a) If the substantive is expressed, or if the substantive of the preceding clause can be supplied, the (weak) adjective form with definite article is used, as:
  - This river is the broadest in America (i. e., the broadest river), Dieser Fluß ist der breiteste in Amerika (der breiteste Fluß).
  - The days in June are the longest (days) in the whole year, Die Tage im Juni sind die längsten (Tage, understood) im ganzen Jahre.
  - This earthquake was the most severe that we have had, Dieses Erdbeben ist das heftigste, welches wir gehabt haben.

(b) If no substantive can be supplied, the adverbial form preceded by am is used, as:

The lake is broader than the river, but the sea is the broadest (observe not 'the broadest lake, river or sea'), Der See ist breiter als ber Fluß, aber die See ist am breitesten.

The days are longest (i. e., 'at the longest,' not 'the longest days') in June, Im Juni sind bie Tage am längsten.

The earthquake was most severe on Monday, Am Montag war das Erdbeben am heitigsten (not 'the severest earthquake').

Note. — The superlative may be strengthened by prefixing affer, as: bas afferheftigfte, am afferheftigften.

2. In the preceding examples, the superlative ascribes a quality to the object in the highest degree in comparison (expressed or implied) with, or relatively to, a number of other objects, and is hence called the Relative Superlative. But the English superlative with most often merely ascribes the quality in an eminently high degree, without instituting any comparison. When so used, it is called the Absolute Superlative, as:

Your father was most kind (i. e. = 'exceedingly kind,' not = 'kindest')

The Absolute Superlative is rendered in German by an adverb of eminence, such as fehr, very; höchst, äußerst, exceedingly, prefixed to the adjective in the positive, as:

Ihr Bater war sehr (höchst, äußerst) gütig, Your father was most (very, exceedingly, extremely) kind. 3. The superlative is commonly used in German of two objects (which is not admissible in Engl.), as:

Der (größere or) größte von diesen zwei Knaben, The taller of these two boys.

### 128. Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs are compared like adjectives, the superlative form being that with am, as:

angenehm, agreeably angenehmer, more agreeably am angenehmsten, most agreeably

## 129. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

gut, good besser best (different root)
hoch, high höher höchst (drops e in Compar.)
nah(e), near näher nächst (nearest, next; inserts e in Superl.)

wiel, much mehr meist (different root)
wenig, little (of quantity) minder mindest (different root)

Notes.—1. Mehr is used as adverb of quantity only. For the Subst. mehrere, Pl. mehrere 'some, several,' see §§ 152, 175.

2. Wenig also has the regular forms weniger, wenigst.

### **130.** Defective Comparison.

The following Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from adverbs, etc. (some of which are obsolete):

(außen, without, adv.) äußer, outer äußerst, outermost utmost, extreme (ehe, before, conj.) (eher, sooner, adv.)  $\begin{cases} chest, soonest \\ erst, first \end{cases}$  (hinten, behind, adv.) hinter, hinder inner, inner innerst, innermost

(laß, late, obsolete)		lett, latest, last
(mittel, middle)	mittler, middle	mittelst, middle
(nib, below, obsolete)	nieder, lower	niederst, lowest
(oben, above, adv.)	ober, upper	oberst, uppermost
(unten, below, adv.)	unter, lower	unterst, lowest,
		undermost
(vorn, before, adv.)	vorder, fore	vorderst, foremost

131. Strong Verbs: frieren Model.

	Infin.	IMPF.	P. Part.
Germ. Model:	frieren	frör	gefrören
Engl. Analogy:	freeze	frõze	frözen
Ablaut:	ie, etc.	õ	ō

Note. — The long o is what distinguishes this Model from the shiesest Model (§ 123).

## LIST.

# A. (Infin. ie, ü.)

biegen, bend	Бод	gebogen
bieten, bid, offer	bot	geboten
fliegen (N.), fly (on wings)	flog	geflogen
fliehen (N.), flee (escape)	floh	geflohen
frieren (N. A.), freeze, be cold	fror	gefroren
heben, lift, raise	hob, hub	gehoben
(er)fiesen, (er)füren, choose	erfor	erforen
lügen, lie (tell a falsehood)	log	gelogen
(ver) lieren, lose	verlor	verloren
schieben, shove, push	schob	geschoben
schivören, swear	schwor, schwur	geschworen
(be) trügen, deceive, cheat	betrog	betrogen
wiegen, weigh, have weight (intr.)	wog	gewogen
ziehen (N. A.), pull (tr.); move (intr.)	30 g	gezogen

REMARKS. — 1. Biegen, bieten, fliegen, fliehen, ziehen, have also the forms (now used only in poetry) with eu for ie in the

- 2. and 3. Sing. Pres. Ind. and 2. Sing. Imper., as: beugft, beugt, beug; fleuchft, fleuch; zeuchft, zeuch.
  - 2. Wiegen, to rock, is weak (wiegte, gewiegt).
  - 3. Observe the change of h into g in ziehen, zog, gezogen.

# B. (Infin. e, ä.)

scheren, shear	fd;or	geschoren
weben (W.), weave	wob	gewoben
wägen, weigh (trans.)	wog	gewogen
(be) wegen, induce, persuade	bewog	bewogen

REMARK. — Bewegen, 'to move (set in motion)' is weak (bewegte, bewegt).

### VOCABULARY.

to offer, an'bieten
abolish, annul, cancel, auf'=
heben
put off, delay, postpone, auf'=
fchieben
remove (neut.), aus'ziehen
prefer, vor'ziehen (dat. of pers.)
fly away, weg'fliegen
roof, das Dach
colour, die Farbe
hunger, der Hunger
cook, der Koch\*

metal, das Metall'
red (subst.), das Not
sparrow, der Sperling
part, portion, der Teil
shore, dank, das Ufer
on that account, therefore,
deshalb
yet, still (in spite of all), doch
straight, gerade (adj.)
exactly, just, gerade (adv.)
as soon as, sobald

Idioms: 1. I prefer gold to silver, Ich ziche bas Gold dem Gilber vor.

8. I like the winter in Canada, Ich habe den Winter in Canada gern.

### EXERCISE XXV.

A. 1. Ein Sperling in der Hand ist besser als zwei auf dem Dache. 2. Marie ist jünger als Louise, aber sie ist doch größer.

- 3. Hunger ift ber beste Roch. 4. Der junge General B. ist ein tapfrerer Beld als fein Bater. 5. Die Reifenden fchoben bas Boot vom Ufer und ruderten über den Fluß. 6. Aufgeschoben ift nicht aufgehoben. 7. Welches von diefen Mädchen ist das größte? 8. Je höher ein Bogel fliegt, je fleiner scheint er zu werben. 9. Der Fremde hat mir mehr für mein haus angeboten als Sie, aber ich glaube nicht, daß er fo gut bezahlen wurde. 10. Se fleißiger wir find, besto mehr lernen wir. 11. Im Commer habe ich bas Land gang gern, aber im Winter ziehe ich die Stadt vor. 12. Mir Un= gludlichen ift ber Tuß erfroren, als ich nach Saufe ritt. 13. Go= bald wir unfer Haus verkauft hatten, zogen wir aus. 14. Als ich auf dem Lande war, wog ich mehr als ich jett wiege. 15. Es ist wahr, daß die reichsten Leute nicht immer die glücklichsten find. 16. Der Regen, welcher uns die Reise verleidet hat, war mehr nütlich als angenehm. 17. Die Mutter hob die Stücke von dem Glas auf, welches ihr unartiges Rind auf die Erde geschmissen hatte. 18. Diefer Anabe hat feine Eltern betrogen, und beshalb ift er unglücklich. 19. Frieren Gie, Berr Brofeffor? Sett nicht, aber ich fror, als ich auf ber Strafe war. 20. Der Sager hat den Logel geschoffen, gerade als er auf den Baum flog. 21. Von wem wurde Ihr Haus gefauft? 22. Von einem Fremden, ber feit vierzehn Tagen bei meinem Better auf Be= such ist.
- B. 1. Lead is a heavy metal, but gold is the heaviest.
  2. This painter is not so famous as his father, but his pictures are just as fine.
  3. George lost his parents when he was still very young.
  4. Those students have lost a great deal of time, but now they are studying more industriously.
  5. The bird flew away, just as the huntsman was on the point of shooting it.
  6. When is the weather coldest in Canada? In the month of January it is coldest.
  7. Which bird flies fastest?
  8. The useful is better than the beautiful.
  9. What kind of a dog has the huntsman lost?
  10. Iron is heavy, lead

is heavier, but gold is heaviest of all. 11. Green is a more agreeable colour for the eyes than red. 12. If the stick is too long, cut a piece of it off. 13. The upper part of the city of Quebec is much finer than the lower. 14. The weather seems to be warmer to-day, but it froze (perf.) yesterday. 15. When I was younger, I weighed more than my brother, but now he weighs more than I. 16. The upper part of the city of Quebec was built earlier than the lower part.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXV.

1. Ist der junge General ein tapferer Mann? 2. Ziehen Sie das Land der Stadt vor? 3. Weshalb ist der Knabe so traurig? 4. Wann hat der Jäger den Vogel geschossen? 5. Welche Studenten lernen am meisten? 6. Welches ist besser, reich und unglücklich oder arm und glücklich (zu) sein?

## LESSON XXVI.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. - STRONG VERBS:
fingen MODEL.

## 132. Demonstrative Pronouns.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are:

- 1. der, die, das, that
- 2. diefer, diefe, diefes, this, that
- 3. jener, jene, jenes, that, yonder
- 4. derjenige, Diejenige, basjenige, that
- 5. ber nämliche, die nämliche, das nämliche, the same
- 6. berselb(ig)e, dieselb(ig)e, dasjelb(ige), the same

- 7. fold(er), fold(e), fold(es), such, such a
- 8. Desgleichen, bergleichen, of that kind (of those kinds)

REMARK. — These may all be used either as Substantive or Adjective Pronouns, except besgleichen (see § 139, 1, below).

133. r. Der, bie, bas, used adjectively (i. e., before a substantive), is declined like the Definite Article (which is merely the demonstrative adjective weakened and unemphasized), as:

Der' Mann, that man. Der Mann', the man'.

2. When used substantively it is declined thus:

	Singular.		Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	ber	bie	bas	bie
Gen.	dessen	beren	bessen	berer (beren)
Dat.	bem	ber	bem	benen
Acc.	ben	die	bas	die

Note. - The form beren (Gen. Pl.) is only used as = 'of them,' as:

How many children have you? I have seven of them. Wie viele Kinder haben Sie? Ich habe deren fieben.

134. Dieser and jeuer both follow the bieser Model (see § 6), but bies is used for bieses in the Neuter Nom. and Acc. Sing. when used substantively, as:

Dies ift mein Buch, Er hatte bies nicht gehört, This is my book. He had not heard this.

bicier = this (the nearer of two objects, hence also =) the latter, as:

jener = that, yonder (the more remote of two objects, hence also =) the former;

Dieser Baum ist groß, aber jener ist größer, This tree is large, but that (one) is larger. Sener Baum, yonder tree (pointed out as remote).

Rarl und Bilhelm sind Brüber; dieser ist fleißig, jener ist träge, Charles and William are brothers; the latter is diligent, the former is idle.

135. 1. Derjeuige is declined in both parts, like the Definite Article followed by the adjective form jenig with weak endings, thus:

		Singular.		Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	berjenige	biejenige	basjenige	Diejenigen
Gen.	besjenigen	berjenigen	desjenigen	berjenigen
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

- 2. Der or berjenige is used :
  - (a) before a genitive case, as:

I have your hat and that of your brother (your brother's);

NOTE. — The demonstrative may also be omitted in this construction, as in English; or the simple ber may be used.

(b) before a relative clause, as:

Der(jenige), welcher zufrieden ist, ist glücklich, He who is contented, is happy.

Die(jenige) Frau ist am schönsten, welche gut ist, That woman is most beautiful, who is good.

Ihr Haus und das (jenige), worin wir wohnen, Your house and that in which we live.

Note.—In sentences like the first, where ber(jenige) is used substantively, the demonstrative and relative together may be replaced by the compound relative wer, thus:

Mer zufrieden ift, ift glüdlich.

136. Derselbe (berselbige) = 'the same,' as: the same hat, berselbe hat; and is declined like bersenige, in two parts, written as one word, thus:

		Singular.		Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	berfelbe	dieselbe	basselbe	diefelben
Gen.	desjelben	derfelben	besselben	berfelben
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

(For examples of its use see § 143, 2-4, below).

Note. — Selbig is sometimes used without article, with strong endings: [elbiger, -e, -es.

- 137. Der nämliche sometimes replaces berfelbe.
- 138. 1. Sold, when used alone, follows the dieser Model, as: sold or Bein, such wine; sold of Brot, such bread.
- 2. After ein, it follows the mixed declension of adjectives, as:

Nom. ein solcher Bein, such a wine Gen. eines solchen Beines, of such a wine, etc.

3. Before ein, folch is always, and before an adjective, generally, uninflected, as:

Sold ein Bein; fold guter Bein, or folder gute Bein.

Note. — The adjective has the *strong* endings when fold is uninflected, otherwise it has the *weak* endings, except in the plur., where it sometimes has the *strong*.

2. Sold with ein is often replaced by io, as:

Co ein Bein ; ein fo guter Bein.

139. 1. Desgleichen is used as an indeclinable neuter substantive (never as adjective), thus:

Ich hatte besgleichen nie gehört,

I had never heard that sort of thing (anything of that kind).

Note. — Desgleichen is also used adverbially, = 'in the same way, also.'

2. Dergleichen is used both substantively (referring to a fem. or plur. noun) and adjectively. In the latter case it is invariable, standing before substantives of any gender and number, as:

Dergleichen Wein, Dergleichen Weine, Wine of that sort.

Note. — The phrase: und dergleichen mehr (abbrev. u. dgl. m.) is used for und so weiter (u, j, w.) = et catera

GENERAL REMARKS ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

140. The English 'that' is rendered in German:

### I. As Demonstrative Pronoun:

(a) Most generally by ber or biefer, when there is no contrast with any other object, thus:

That man, ber' Mann or biefer Mann.

- (b) By ber or berjenige before a genitive case or a relative clause (see § 135, 2, above).
- (c) By jener, when the object is distinctly pointed out as remote (= yon, yonder), or as more remote than another, thus:

Jener Baum, That tree (over yonder). Dieses Haus und jenes, This house and that one.

2. As Relative by der or welcher (see § 95), thus:
The book that I have, Das Buch, das (welches) ich have.

3. As Conjunction by baß, thus:

I shall tell your father that you are diligent, Ich werde deinem Bater sagen, daß du fleißig bist.

141. The neuter pronouns bas, bici(cs), jenes are used (like cs, see § 39, 1, and welfjes, § 82, Rem. 2) before the verb

'to be,' representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as:

Das ist mein Bruder, That is my brother.

Dici (ce) ist Ihre Schwester, This is your sister.

Senes find feine Bücher, Those are his books.

142. Der and jener, when referring to inanimate objects, are often replaced by the adverb ha(r), 'there,' before prepositions (compare § 38, Rem. 5) and diefer by hier, as:

Ich habe nichts bamit zu thun,

I have nothing to do with that (therewith).

Siermit muß ich schließen,

With this (herewith) I must close.

Note. — This substitution is not made before a relative, as In dachte an das (not daran), was Sie sagten, I was thinking of that which (what) you were saying.

# 143. Use of Demonstratives to replace Personal Pronouns.

r. The neuter gen. beffen replaces that of the neuter pers. pron. (seiner) referring to things, as:

Ich erinnre mich bessen nicht,

I do not recollect it (seiner = him, of him).

2. The genitive of ber and that of berieffe are frequently used to replace the possessive adjective of the 3. person, in order to avoid ambiguity, as:

Der Graf war mit seinem (bes Grafen) Jäger und bessen (bes Jägers) Hunden (or mit den Hunden besselben) auf der Jagd, The Count was at the hunt with his (the Count's) huntsman and his (the huntsman's) dogs.

Note. - Mit feinen Hunden would mean 'with the Count's dogs.'

3. Dericibe is used in other cases also to prevent ambiguity (also birier in the same way), as:

Mein Bruber ist bei meinem Freunde, und berselbe (or bieser) achtet ihn sehr; or: er (mein Bruber) achtet benselben sehr, My brother is at my friend's, and he (the latter, the friend) esteems him (my brother) very much; or: he (my brother) esteems him (my friend) very much.

4. Derielbe also replaces the personal pronouns, to prevent repetitions like ihn — Ihnen, Sie — sie, etc., as:

Dieser Wein ist gut, ich kann Ihnen benselben (for ihn Ihnen) empschlen, This wine is good, I can recommend it to you.

144.	STRONG	VERBS:	fingen	Model.
------	--------	--------	--------	--------

Engl. Analogy:	sing	sang	sung
Engl. Analogy:	sing	sång	sung
Engl. Analogy:	sĭng	săng	sŭng
Germ. Model:	fingen	fäng	gefüngen
	Infin.	IMPF.	P. PART.

#### TIST

LISI.		
binden, bind	band	gebunden
dringen (N.), press	brang	gedrungen
finden, find	fand	gefunden
flingen, ring, sound	flang	geklungen
(ge)lingen (N.), succeed (impers.,	gelang	gelungen
with dat. of pers.)		
ringen, wring (the hands, etc.)	rang	gerungen
schlingen, twine; swallow	schlang	geschlungen
schwinden (N.), vanish	schwand	geschwunden
schwingen, swing	schwang	geschwungen
singen, sing	fang	gefungen
sinken, sink	fank	gesunken
springen (N. A.), spring, leap	sprang	gesprungen
trinfen, drink (of human beings)	trank	getrunken
winden, wind	wand	gewunden
awingen, force	zwang	gezwungen

#### VOCABULARY.

to press in, penetrate, ein's escape, entfliehen [bringen invent, erfinden remember, sid) erinnern (+gen. of thing) drown, be drowned, ertrinsen spring upon, log'springen (auf + acc,) mean, suppose, meinen

oblige, verbinden

vanish, verschwinden

on board, am Bord
grammar, die Gramma'tik
dealer, der Händler
lion, der Löwe
diver, der Taucher
telephone, das Telephon'
clever, geschickt
prudent, cautious, vor'sichtig
unfortunately, leider
below, unterhalb (+ gen.)
never yet, noch nie

#### EXERCISE XXVI.

A. 1. Dies ist mein Better aus Montreal : fennen Sie ibn? 2. Jawohl, diefen kenne ich gang gut, aber nicht ben, ber mir gestern ben Brief gebracht hat. 3. Ein bofer Knabe schwang sich auf den Apfelbaum im Garten seines Nachbars und schmiß die Apfel auf bie Erde. 4. In biefem Welbe haben die Bauern ichon bas Gras geschnitten, aber in jenem werden sie es erft morgen schneiben. 5. "Liebet die, die euch haffen." 6. Jenes find meine Sunde, aber bies find biejenigen, welche ber Jäger vor acht Tagen verloren hat, und die ich gefunden habe. 7. Erinnern Gie sich deffen, was ich Ihnen vom alten Schloß am Ufer bes Sees erzählt habe? 8. Dem wurde ich feinen Thaler leihen; ber wurde nie bezahlen. 9. Die Schäfer trieben ihre Herden über benfelben Berg auf welchen wir ftiegen. 10. Der Reisende stieg vom Pferde und band dasselbe an einen kleinen Baum. 11. Das Schiff ftieß an einen Felfen, bas Waffer drang ein, und das Schiff fant. 12. Ich habe mich befliffen, Latein zu lernen, aber es ist mir nicht gelungen. 13. Der Löwe war gerade im Begriffe auf den Reisenden loszuspringen, als ber Jäger ihn ichoß. 14. Rennen Sie Berrn Bell? Welchen Berrn Bell meinen Sie? 15. Denjenigen, ber bas Telephon erfunden

- hat. 16. Was ift aus meiner beutschen Grammatik geworden? Sie scheint ganz verschwunden zu sein. 17. Das sind schöne Erdbeeren; wo haben Sie dieselben gekauft? 18. Sie sind schön, nicht wahr? Solch prächtige Beeren sinden Sie nicht bei jedem Händler. 19. So heißes Wetter haben wir noch nicht gehabt. 20. Was wurde dir geantwortet, als du nach dem Kranken fragetest? 21. Man sagte mir, er sei ein wenig besser.
- B. 1. The patient is just as weak to-day as he was yesterday. 2. Such happy days I have never yet passed! 3. Where do you generally pass the winter? 4. Where is my pen? Have you found it? 5. This is my neighbour of whom you have already heard so much. 6. The ship has sunk, and the people who were on board have been drowned. 7. I was looking for my coat, but found my father's. 8. I should be very much obliged to you, if you sang me a beautiful song. 9. Which is poorer, he who has no money, or he who has no friends? 10. How should we escape if the boat sank? 11. Charles has already finished (the) learning (of) his lesson; he is cleverer than I thought. 12. The diver that jumped from the bridge has unfortunately been drowned. 13. It will have been a good lesson for us, if it makes us more prudent in future. 14. Is that a new song? No, it is the same that I sang a week ago at your house. 15. The St. Lawrence River is the broadest in Canada; below the city of Quebec it is broadest. 16. The patient is better to-day; he will be allowed to go out to-morrow.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Was ist aus dem Taucher geworden? 2. Ist Karl geschickter als Johann? 3. Was hat der böse Knabe gemacht? 4. Ist der Reisende dem Löwen entflohen? 5 Ist es Ihnen gelungen, Latein zu lernen? 6. Wessen Hunde sind das?

#### LESSON XXVII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. — STRONG VERBS: Spinnen AND helfen models.

145. Indefinite Pronouns.

The Indefinite Pronouns are:

(a) Substantive:

1. man (indecl.), one, they, people (Fr. on)
2. jedermann, everybody, everyone
3. jemand, { somebody, anybody some one, any one
4. niemand, { nobody, no one, no person not anybody, etc.
5. etwas, something, anything
6. nights, nothing, not anything
7. einer, one, some one
8. feiner, no one, none

} of things
only

(biefer Model) persons

(b) Adjective (also used substantively):

1. cinige, cfliffe (plur.), some, a few, several

2. jed (wed) er (jeglidjer), each (one), every one

3. manther, many (a one)
4. mehrere (pl.), several

5. viel, much, pl. viele, many

6. wenig, little, pl. wenige, few

7. welcher, some

(biefer Model) persons and things

and things

Remark. — The Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives are also used as Indefinite Numeral Adjectives (see Less. XXIX).

146. Man (spelt with small letter and one n, to distinguish it from ber Mann, the man, from which it is derived) is the Indefinite Personal Pronoun, and is used to make a statement without specifying any particular person. It is equivalent to Engl. 'one, they, we, you (indef.), people,' etc., (French on), or to the impersonal use of the passive voice, as:

Man sagt, One says; they, people say; or it is said. Man kann Öl und Wasser nicht zusammen mischen, One (we, you) cannot mix oil and water.

REMARKS. — 1. One's self (refl.) =  $\mathfrak{fid}$ ; one's =  $\mathfrak{fcin}$  (poss. adj.), as:

Man schämt sich seiner Fehler, One is ashamed of one's faults.

- 2. Man cannot be replaced by any other pronoun, as:

  Man wird müde, wenn man (not er) zu lange arbeitet,

  A man (one) gets tired, when he works too long.
- 147. Genermann is used in the Sing. only; it takes in Gen., but is otherwise uninflected, as:

Jedermanns Sache ist niemandes Sache, Everybody's business is nobody's business. Die Bibel ist ein Buch für jedermann (acc.),

The Bible is a book for everybody.

148. Semand and its negative niemand are used in the Sing. only, and are declined thus:

Nom. jemand niemand
Gen. jemandes niemandes
Dat. { jemandem { jemandem niemandem niemanden)}
Acc. jemand(en) niemand(en)

Note. — The uninflected forms are preferable for the Dat. and Acc., as:
Wir haven niemand (acc.) getadelt, We have blamed nobody.
Werden Sie es jemand (dat.) sagen? Shall you tell it to anybody?

149. r. Etwas is sometimes abbreviated to was, as:

Ich will bir was fagen, I will tell you something.

- 2. After cimas and mints, an adjective has the strong neuter ending -cs (see § 122, Rem. 11, above).
- 3. Etwas and nights are also used as Indefinite Numerals (see Less. XXIX, § 168).
  - 150. Giner (biefer Model), 'one, some one, any one,' is used:
  - r. In the Nom. Sing. Masc. = man.
  - 2. To supply the missing cases of man, as:

    Es thut einem (dat.) leid, von seinen Freunden zu scheiden.

    One is sorry to part from one's friends.
  - 3. Before a substantive, as:

Einer meiner Freunde (bon meinen Freunden), One of my friends.

Gin (e) & von diesen Büchern, One of these books.

4. To represent a preceding substantive, as:
Saben Sie ein Bud? Sa, ich habe ein (e) 8.

Have you a book? Yes, I have one.

Note. — The  $\mathfrak e$  may be dropped in the ending of the Nom. and Acc. Neut.

- 151. Reiner (bieser Model) is the negative of einer, and is used:
  - 1. As equivalent to niemand.
  - 2. Before a substantive, as:

Reiner von meinen Freunden, None (not one) of my friends.

3. To represent a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie ein Buch? Nein, ich habe fein (e) &.

Note. - Like einer, it may drop e in the Nom. and Acc. Neuter.

- 152. Ginige (etliche), mehrere, = 'some, a few, several,' as:
  Ginige von meinen Freunden, Some (a few) of my friends.
  Mehrere dieser Bücher, Several of these books.
- 153. **Seber**, jedweber, jeglicher (bieser Model) or ein jeder, etc. (def. art. + adj. with *mixed* declension) are used, especially in the Masc., for jedermann, as:

Die Bibel ift ein Buch für jeden.

(Gin) jeder ift feines Glüdes Schmied,

Every man (one) is the architect (lit. smith) of his own fortune.

154. Manther, 'many a one, many a person' (biefer Model), is used to express indefinite plurality, as:

Mancher benft, Many a one (person) thinks.

155. Welther (biefer Model) is used for 'some,' referring to a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie Brot? Ja, ich habe welches.

156. For biel and wenig see Less. XXIX, § 176.

157. When the Engl. 'anybody, anyone, anything,' = 'anybody, etc., at all' (indefinite and general), they are rendered by irgend jemand, irgend einer, irgend etwas, as:

Anybody (at all) will tell you, where I live, Grgend jemand (or einer) wird Ihnen sagen, wo ich wohne. In mit irgend etwas zufrieden, I am contented with anything (at all).

158. STRONG VERBS: spinnen Model.

	Infin.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model: Engl. Analogy:	fpinnen spin	ใหล้บท spăn	gespännen (spün)
(incomplete)			
Ablaut:	i	ă	ŏ

#### LIST.

(Note. — The Impf. Subj.	is also giv	en, on accoun	t of variations
occurring.)			
(be)ginnen, begin	begann	begönne	begonnen
rinnen (N.), flow	rann	ränne	geronnen
fcwimmen (N. A.), swim	fchwamm	schwämme schwömme	geschwommen
finnen, think	jann	fänne	gesonnen
spinnen, spin	fpann	{ fpänne { fpönne	gesponnen
(ge)winnen, win, gain	gewann	gewänne gewönne	gewonnen

Note. — Observe the subjunctive forms with vowel of P. Part. + Umlaut, instead of vowel of Impf. Ind.

# 159. Strong Verbs: helfen Model.

INFIN. Pr. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. | IMPF. Subj. P. PART.

Germ. Model: helfen hilfft, hilft, hilf half hulfe gehölfen Engl. Analogy: wanting.

Ablaut: e ĭ ň ä, ö or ü i

#### LIST.

(Note.—The 2. 3. sing. Pres. Ind., 2. sing. Imper., and Impf. Subj. are also given.)

bergen, hide birgst, birgt, birg barg bärge geborgen

bersten (N.), birstest, birst, birst barst börstest börstest börstest börstest börstest berdarbe verdurbe verdorben spoil (intr.)

breschen, thrash brischest, etc. {brasch bräsche bröschest broschest brosch

helfen, help	hilfst, etc.	half	hülfe _	geholfen
scold scold	schiltst, schilt, schilt	fchalt	schälte	gescholten
sterben, (N.), die	stirbst, etc.	starb	ftürbe	gestorben
werben, woo	wirbst, etc.	warb	würbe	geworben
werden (N.), become	wirst, wird, werde	{ ward { wurde	würde	geworden
werfen, throw	wirfst, etc.	warf	würfe	geworfen

REMARKS.— 1. Most of these verbs have  $\ddot{u}$  or  $\ddot{u}$  in the Impf. Subj. instead of  $\ddot{u}$ , which cannot be distinguished in sound from the e of the Pres. Ind.; thus sterbe and starbe would sound alike.

- 2. Berderben, when trans., is both strong and weak (versberbte, verderbt).
- 3. Werben has ward or wurde in the sing.; wurden only in the plur. (see § 19).
- 4. The Imperative never has the final -e in these verbs, except werbs.
- 5. Observe the omission of (c)t of 3. sing. Pres. Ind. in the verbs with stem in -t, -b.

## VOCABULARY.

to be or do (of health), sich befinden
restect, deliberate, sich besinnen
accomplish, leisten
remain over, be lest, ü'brig
bleiben
hide, conceal, verbergen
requite, reward, vergelten
complete, sinish, vollen'ben
throw away, weg'wersen

run away, vanish, zerrinnen the conduct, das Betragen poet, der Dichter barley, die Gerste oats, der Hafer sailor, der Matrose musician, der Musiser need, necessity, die Not\* dove, pigeon, die Taube plate, der Teller loss, der Verlust'\* embarrassment, perplexity, die Berle'genheit wheat, der Weizen evil. böse thereto, bazu' no longer, nicht mehr as, wie

Idiom: I like the country, 3th bin ein Freund bom Lande.

#### EXERCISE XXVII.

- A. 1. Wer zu viel redet, leistet wenig. 2. Derjenige, welcher zu viel redet, leistet wenig. 3. Dies sind meine Schuhe, aber jenes find (bie) Thre(n). 4. Wer jedermanns Freund ift, ist niemandes Freund. 5. Gin guter Chrift vergilt Bofes mit Gutem. 6. Es ift fo eben jemand bier gewesen. 7. Welches von biefen Banbern ziehen Sie vor, bas rote ober bas blaue? 8. Wen fuchst bu? Ich suche die arme Familie, beren Bater gestorben ist. 9. Haben Sie ichon Ihren Weizen gebroschen? Man drifcht heute ben Safer und die Gerste, aber man wird erst morgen ben Weizen breschen. 10. Es ift ein Berluft für bas ganze Land, wenn ein großer und guter Mann ftirbt. 11. Der große Knabe schämt sich feines Betragens und beshalb verbirgt er fein Geficht. 12. "Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen," bas ift, man verliert leicht, was man leicht gewinnt. 13. Die Erdbeeren, welche ich gestern faufte, sind verdorben. 14. Man hilft gern einem, der fich felbst hilft. 15. Hiermit schicke ich Ihnen bas Geld, welches Sie fo freundlich gewesen find, mir zu leiben. 16. Sind Sie ein Freund vom Schwimmen? Jest nicht mehr, aber ich schwamm gern, als ich junger war. 17. Der Ungludliche befann fich lange, schritt aber endlich an ben Rand bes Bootes und sprang ins Wasser. 18. Ift er ertrunken? Nein, er wurde von den Matrofen gerettet.
- B. 1. Good morning, Mr. Bell, how are you to-day? 2. Have you any money? Yes, to be sure, I have some, but not enough for my journey. 3. Where is the tree to which the traveller tied his horse? 4. People take cold easily when they are tired. 5. Schiller and Beethoven were Germans, the

latter was a great musician, the former a great poet. 6. Mr. A. is a lazy man; he would not work at all, if necessity did not force him to it. 7. We found the money we lost a week ago. 8. Many a one begins what he will never finish. 9. Mary, my child, throw that apple away; it is spoilt. 10. Have you shot many pigeons? We have shot only a few. 11. Except my brother and me nobody is at home. 12. The mother is scolding, because her naughty child has thrown a plate upon the ground. 13. Where is the River St. Lawrence broadest? 14. When the children had drunk, the cat drank the milk which remained over (was left). 15. The women on (an) the shore screamed and wrung their hands, when the boat sank in which their husbands were. 16. Has the money which was lost been found?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Wann wird man den Hafer dreschen? 2. Warum verbirgt der böse Knabe sein Gesicht? 3. Wem hilft man gern? 4. Sind Sie ein Freund vom Jagen? 5. Was für ein Mann ist Herr Bell? 6. Weshalb schilt die Frau?

# SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON D.

## ON CERTAIN ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

160. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES ONLY.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as predicates:

r. Derivatives in -en, -ern (denoting material), as; golden, of gold, golden; filbern, of silver. These are replaced in the predicate by the substantive with non, as:

Diese Ilhr ist non Silber, This watch is of silver.

- 2. Many in -ift and -lit, as: diebift, thievish; tierift, bestial; heutsterift, hypocritical; täglit, daily; jährlit, annual; wirklit, actual, real.
- 3. Those in  $-i\mathfrak{g}$  from adverbs of time and place, as: hentig, of to-day; hiefig, of this place.

## 161. ADJECTIVES USED AS PREDICATES ONLY.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as attributes:

- I. Those that are really nouns (though spelt with a small letter), such as: angst, afraid; feind, hostile; freund, friendly; seid, sorry; not, needful; nite, useful; solution, guilty.
  - 2. The following among others:

bereit, ready
eingebent, mindful
gewahr, aware
gar, cooked, done (of food)
gram, averse
gang und gäbe, current (of money, etc.)
trie, astray, wrong
teilhaft, partaking

Note. — Both these classes of adjectives are incapable of comparison in the ordinary way, and form the comparative and superlative by prefixing mehr and am meisten respectively, as:

Er murbe meinem Bruber immer mehr gram, He grew more and more averse to my brother.

Das that mir am meisten leid, I was most sorry for that (relative superl.).

#### 162. Remarks on certain Pronouns.

I. The pronouns wer, was are frequently followed by the demonstrative ber in the after clause, and always so when the latter (the seeming antecedent) is in a different case from that of the relative, as:

Mer hat, bem wird gegeben, To him that hath shall be (is) given.

2. The neuter pronouns e8, ba8, wa8, jebe8, alles are often used in the Nom. and Acc. Sing. in reference to a number of persons or things, especially if of different gender, as:

Männer, Weiber, Kinder, alles schrie um Hilfe, so saut es fonnte, Men, women, children, all cried for help as loud as they could; Früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will,

Those practice early, who would become masters.

Note. - Observe that the verb is singular.

3. Bas is sometimes used for warum? ('why?'), as:

Mas weinst du? Why dost thou weep?

4. The relative adverb mic ('as') after fold ein or so ein ('such a') is usually followed by a personal pronoun, agreeing in gender and number with the antecedent, as:

Such a man as we had never known.

Note.—The demonstrative fold or fo is often omitted, as indicated in the above example.

# LESSON XXVIII.

NUMERALS: CARDINALS AND ORDINALS. — STRONG VERBS: ipressen model.

# NUMERALS.

	IVUMI	CRALS.		
10	63. Cardinals.	164.	C	Ordinals.
1.	eins; ein(er), -c, -(es)	1st.	ber	: erste
2.	zwei	2nd.	11	zwei <b>te</b>
3.	drei	3rd.	**	britte
4.	vier	4th.	"	vierte
5.	fünf	5th.	**	fünfte
6.	fechs	6th.	"	sechste
7.	fieben	7th.	"	siebente
8.	acht	8th.	11	achte
9.	neun	9th.	**	neunte
10.	zehn	10th.	79	zehnte
11.	elf	11th.	89	elfte
12.	zwölf	12th.	11	zwölfte
	breizehn	13th.	19	dreizehnte
14.	vierzehn	14th.	**	vierzehnte
15.	fünfzehn or funfzehn	15th.	11	funf= or fünfzehnte
16.	sechzehn .	16th.	"	sechzehnte
17.	siebzehn	17th.	**	siebzehnte
18.	achtzehn	18th.	11	achtzehnte
19.	neunzeh <b>n</b>	19th.	"	neunzehnte
<b>2</b> 0.	zwanzig	20th.	"	zwanzigste
21.	ein und zwanzig	21st.	"	ein und zwanzigste
22.	zwei und zwanzig	22nd.	"	zwei und zwanzigste
30.	breißig	30th.	n	dreißigste
40.	vierzig	40th.	"	vierzigste
<b>5</b> 0.	funfzig or fünfzig	50th.	H	funfzigste or fünfa

60.	fedzig 1	60th.	ber	sechzigste
70.	sieb(en)zig	70th.	"	sieb(en)zigste
80.	achtzig	80th.	11	achtzigste
90.	neunzig	90th.	11	neunzigste
100.	hundert	100th.	11	hundertste
101.	hundert (und) eins	101st.	"	hundert und erste
123.	hundert (und) drei und	123rd.	**	hundert (und) drei
	zwanzig			und zwanzigste

#### Cardinals.

200. zwei hundert

300. drei hundert

1000. tausend

1001. tausend und eins

1036. tausend (und) sechs und dreißig

1887. { tausend (und) acht hundert (und) sieben und achtzig or achtzehnhundert sieben und achtzig

10,000. zehn taufend

100,000. hundert taufend

1,000,000. eine Million'

2,567,849. zwei Millionen, fünf hundert (und) sieben und sechzig tausend, acht hundert (und) neun und vierzig.

Interrogative Ordinal: ber wievielste? which (in order)? what day of the month? (See § 166, 3, Note 2).

## 165. Remarks on the Cardinal Numerals.

- 1. Gin only is declined throughout, thus:
  - (a) Before a substantive after the mein Model (§ 8), like the Indefinite Article, which is the same word unemphasized, as:

Gin' Mann, one man; ein Mann', a man.

NOTE. — The numeral ein is sometimes printed with a capital, or spaced out (= Engl. italics) to distinguish it from the Article, as:

Wir haben Ein' (ein) Buch, We have one book. Wir haben ein Buch', We have a book.

(b) Used substantively (see also § 150, above) without article, after biefer Model (§ 6), as:

Einer von meinen Freunden, One of my friends. Unfer einer, One of us (of our sort).

(c) After an article or other determinative word, like an adjective, as:

Der eine Bruder, The one brother. Mein einer Schuh, (The) one of my shoes.

NOTE. — With the definite article it may be used substantively also, as:

Der eine und der andere, (The) one and the other; and even in the plural (= some, one party), as:

Die einen sagten dies, die andern jenes,
Some (the one party) said this, others (the other party) that.

- (d) Gins is the form used in counting.
- 2. Zwei and brei may have -er in the Gen. and -en in the Dat. when not accompanied by any article, etc., as:

Aus zweier ober dreier Zeugen Mund kommt die Wahrheit, Out of the mouth of two or three witnesses cometh the truth.

Man kann nicht zweien Herren dienen, One cannot serve two masters.

NOTE. — The Gen. -er is necessary to show the case, but may be replaced by bon; but the Dat. -en before a substantive is rare, the -n of the substantive sufficiently showing the case.

3. Beide = 'both,' refers to two objects taken together, and is declined like an adjective in the Plur.: N. beide, G. beider, etc.; die beiden; meine beiden Brüder. It often

replaces zwei after determinative words, as in the last example. The neuter sing, form beides is also found, as:

Beides ift mahr, Both (things) are true.

Notes. - 1. Both of us = wir beibe(n) (we two).

- 2. 'Both' as conjunction = fowohl, etc. (See Less. XL.)
- 4. Other cardinals are not declined unless used substantively (see next section).
- 5. The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by adding -3chn (Engl. -teen) to the units (but sedzehn drops -\$).
- 6. The multiples of ten (20—90) add -zig to the units, zwanzig, dreißig being irregular, and sedzig dropping -s.
- 7. The units always precede the tens in compound numbers from 21 upwards, both being joined by the conjunction und 'and'; hence 25 = funf und hungig (Engl. 'five and twenty'); 156 = hundert fechs und funfaig, etc.
- 8. Sundert and Zaujend are generally used without ein before them, and the conjunction und may be omitted after them.
- 9. 'One by one, two by two,' etc. = je einer, je zwei (or je zwei und zwei), etc.
  - 10. The Cardinals may be used as substantives:
    - (a) With a substantive understood (as *simple* numbers only), with -e in Nom. Acc., -en in Dat., as:

Me viere, All fours.

Mit sedsen, With [a coach and] six [horses].

(b) As feminine substantives, of the spots on dice, etc., or of the figures 1, 2, 3, etc., see § 80, 2, (c), with plur. in -en, as:

Die Gins, the one-spot, figure one, plur. Ginsen.

(c) Hunbert and Taufend are used as collective substantives, declined after the Hund Model, § 21, (b), as:

Im ersten **Hundert**, In the first hundred. Tausende von Menschen, Thousands of men.

(d) Million is a fem. subst. of the weak declension.

## 166. Remarks on Ordinal Numerals.

- 1. The Ordinals are formed from the Cardinals by adding:
  - (a) Up to 19, -te, except ber erste, britte, achte.
  - (b) From 20 upwards, -ite, which in compound numbers is added to the last component only.

Note. - Der andere is the older ordinal for 'second.'

2. The ordinals after proper names (of sovereigns, etc.) are spelt with a capital letter, and must (with the article) be declined throughout, the proper name being undeclined, as:

Rarl der Erste, Charles the First.

Georg des Bierten, Of George the Fourth, etc.

Note. — The Roman Numerals I., II., etc., after names of sovereigns must always be read as def. art. + ord. num. in the proper case. Thus: Heinrich IV. — Heinrich der Vierte (Nom.); or Heinrich den Vierten (Acc.); but: der Thron Heinrich IV. — der Thron Heinrich des Vierten (Gen.); unter Heinrich IV. — unter Heinrich dem Vierten.

3. The ordinals are used adjectively before the names of the months, as:

Der achtzehnte August, The 18th [of] August.

Am zwei und zwanzigsten Juni, On the 22d [of] June.

Notes. — I. The figures I, 2, etc., before the months are to be read as ordinals, thus:

Am 1. Januar = am erften Januar.

Toronto, (b.) 25.(sten) April = Toronto, den (acc. of time, see § 184, 1) fünf und zwanzigsten April.

2. 'What day of the month is it?'

Der wievielfte ift heute? or: ben wievielften haben wir heute? 'It is the fifth.'

Es ift heute ber fünfte, or: Wir haben heute ben fünften.

167. STRONG VERBS: sprechen Model.

Germ. Models: { sprechen spricht, spricht, sprich sprach gespröchen spake spoken spake spoken tieble. Analogy: speak wanting spake spoken Ablaut:  $\tilde{\mathbf{c}}$  t,  $\tilde{\mathbf{c}}$   $\tilde{\mathbf{a}}$   $\tilde{\mathbf{o}}$ 

## LIST A. (i, a, p.)

brechen (N. A.), break brichst, etc. brach gebrochen nehmen, take nimmst, etc. nahm genommen (er)schrecken (N.), be erschrickst, etc. erschrak erschrocken frightened sprechen, speak sprichst, etc. sprach gesprochen stechen, sting (trans.) stickst, trifft, trifft traf getrossen

Remarks. — 1. Erschrecken, to frighten (trans.), is weak (ersschreckte, erschreckt).

2. Observe the dropping of h and doubling of m in nehmen, and the single consonant in the Imperfect of erschrecken and treffen.

# LIST B. (ie, a, p.)

(The Imperf. Subj. is also given.)

(ge)baren, bear, gebierst, etc. gebar gebare geboren bring forth

(be)fehlen, com- befiehlst, etc. befahl befühle befohlen mand

(emp)fehlen, re- empfiehlst, etc. empfahl empfühle empfohlen commend

ftehlen, steal ftiehlst, etc. stahl { ftähle gestohlen

Also:

fommen (N.), { fommst, kommt } fomm kam käme gekommen

REMARKS. — 1. The simple verb fehlen, to be wanting, to make a mistake, is weak (fehlte, gefehlt).

- 2. Rommen drops one m in Impf.
- 3. All verbs of this Model (A. and B.) drop the final -e of the 2. sing. Imper.

## VOCABULARY.

to add, abbieren
arrive (at), an'fommen (in +
dat.)
obtain, get, befommen
divide, bivibieren
celebrate, feiern
multiply, multiplicieren
subtract, subtrahieren
happen upon, meet with,
treffen
care, attention, die Acht
railway-station, der Bahnhof \*
holidays, die Ferien (pl.)
fishing, daß Fischen
prison, daß Gefängnis

hunting, das Jagen
James, Jakob
mile (German), league, die
Meile
minute, die Minute
government, reign, die Res
gierung
Reformation, die Reformation'
second (of time), die Sekunde
voyage, die Seereise
far, weit
about, ungefähr
twice, zweimal
as far as, bis zu (dat.)

Idioms: 1. He was born twenty-five years ago, Er ift vor fünf und gwanzig Jahren geboren.

- 2. Please take another apple (i. e., yet one more), Bitte, nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel.
- 3. Take care, Dehmen Gie fich in Acht.

#### EXERCISE XXVIII.

- A. 1. Wie alt find Gie? Ich bin in meinem neun und awans gigften Sahre. 2. Diefes Jahr bekamen wir am acht und aman= gigften Juni Ferien. 3. Jeder Monat außer dem Februar hat entweder dreifig oder ein und dreifig Tage. 4. Den vier und 3wanziasten Mai war ich bei meinem Bater auf Besuch, benn an biefem Tage feiern wir ben Geburtstag ber Rönigin. 5. Rarl ber Erste von England war der Vater Rarl II. und Jakob II. 6. Das war eine schlechte Nachricht, nicht wahr? Unsere Mutter erschrak, als Sie dieselbe hörte. 7. Den fünf und zwanzigsten trafen wir Berrn Bell auf bem Bahnhofe, gerade als er im Begriffe war ab= gureifen. 8. In der Stadt London find mehr als brei Millionen Cinwohner. 9. Die einen empfahlen ihm zu bleiben, die andern abzureisen. 10. Wie weit ift es von hier bis jum nachsten Dorfe? Ungefähr fünf und zwanzig englische Meilen. 11. Er nahm die Rische je zwei aus dem Korbe und legte dieselben auf den Tisch. 12. Das Eis bricht, nehmen Sie sich in Acht. 13. hunderte von Menschen haben während bes Erdbebens das Leben verloren. 14. Unter der Regierung Heinrich VIII. begann die Reformation in England. 15. Meine beiben Bruber reiften am fünf und gwan= zigsten Juni von Liverpool ab und kamen erst am achtzehnten Juli in Quebec an. 16. Wann fommt Ihr Geburtstag? Um ein und zwanzigsten November. 17. Die Regierung Heinrich VIII. war eine ber berühmtesten in der Geschichte Englands. 18. Als wir einen Spaziergang machten, haben wir mehrere unferer Freunde angetroffen. 19. Bon wem ift Ihnen geraten worben, eine Seereise zu machen? Es ist mir von mehreren Arzten geraten worden.
- B. 1. One general commands thousands (dat.) of soldiers.
  2. Mary has broken her pen, but she has taken Louisa's.
  3. The ice is breaking; take care, Fred.
  4. This is my leadpencil, not William's.
  5. You have taken only one apple, please take another.
  6. When do we celebrate the Queen's Birthday?
  On the 24th of May.
  7. What day of the month is it to-day?

To-day is the 31st of March. 8. The thief was thrown into (the) prison, because he had stolen five hundred dollars. 9. Which do you prefer, (the) hunting or (the) fishing? I like both. 10. A bee stings, but a dog or a cat bites. 11. The days are longest in the month of June, and shortest towards Christmas. 12. When our neighbours were at church. a thief went (fommen) into the house and stole several hundred dollars. 13. In the year eighteen hundred and eighty-seven Queen Victoria celebrated the fiftieth year of her reign. 14. The eldest son of the Queen of England was born the ninth of November one thousand eight hundred and forty-one. 15. Tell me how much thirty-two and eighty-eight make. 16. There are sixty seconds in a minute, sixty minutes in an hour, twenty-four hours in a day, seven days in a week, four weeks in a month, and twelve months in a year. 17. Would you make a voyage to Europe if you were advised to do so? 18. Yes, I should like very much to make a voyage to Europe.

Read in German: 2 maí 11 ift 22, 3 maí 12 ift 36, 4 maí 8 ift 32, 5 maí 9 ift 45, 6 maí 7 ift 42,  $7 \times 10$  ift 70,  $8 \times 11$  ift 88,  $9 \times 12$  ift 108,  $10 \times 10$  ift 100,  $11 \times 11$  ift 121,  $12 \times 12$  ift 144. Abdiert 2,342, 25,891 und 989,346. Subtrahiert 27,763 von 31,551. Multipliciert 591 mit 478. Dividiert 2,581,640 mit 61.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Wie weit ist es von Hamilton nach Toronto? 2. Wann sind die Tage am kürzesten? 3. Wie viel macht das, wenn man 337 mit 2 multipliciert? 4. Wie viele Tage sind in einem Jahre? 5. Wann bekommt ihr Ferien? 6. Wessen Bleistift haben Sie?

#### LESSON XXIX.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS. - STRONG VERBS: effett MODEL.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS. 168.

The Indefinite Numerals are:

- 1. all, all
- 2. ganz, whole, all
- 3. jeder,
- 4. jedweder, each (dieser Model)
- 5. jeglicher,
- 6. fein, none, not one
- 7. einige, some, a few
- 9. manche, many
- 10. mehrere, several
- 11. viel. much (pl. many)
- 12. wenig, little (pl. few)
- 13. etwas, some
- 14. genug, enough (indeclinable)
- 15. mehr, more

REMARK. - All these, except all and ganz, are used as Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII).

- 169. I. All expresses number as well as quantity, and denotes that every individual part of a whole is present.
- 2. When declined, it follows the biefer Model, whether used with or without a substantive, as:
- aller Rafe: alle Arbeit war vergeblich: alles Brot: all [the] cheese; all labour was useless; all [the] bread.
- 3. Unless used substantively, it always precedes the determinative word, and then generally remains uninflected in the sing., and often in the plur., as:

MII mein Geld, All my money.

MU(e) meine Freunde, All my friends.

4. When used substantively and preceded by a determinative word, it still follows the *strong* declension, as:

Diefes (das) alles, All this (that).

Bei bem allem, With all that.

5. It is not (as in English) followed by the definite article, but may be followed by the demonstrative ver, die, das, as:

All [the] money.

MU(es) bas Gelb, All that money.

All [the] men.

Alle bie Menschen, All those men.

170. I. Ganz expresses quantity, not number, and represents an object as complete and undivided, without reference to its parts. When therefore the Engl. 'all' = 'whole' it must be rendered by ganz, not by all, as:

I have been working all (the whole) day long,

Ich habe den ganzen Tag gearbeitet.

2. Ganz is declined like an adjective, and always follows the determinative word, as:

Der ganze Tag, The whole day.

Mein ganzes Eigentum, [The] whole [of] my property.

3. Before names of countries and places it may remain uninflected, if unaccompanied by an article, etc., as:

All (the whole of) America does not belong to the United States, Ganz (or das ganze) Amerika gehöri nicht zu ben Bereinigten Staaten. — But:

Die ganze Schweiz, All Switzerland.

171. 1. Seher (bieser Model) is used to denote each individual belonging to a whole, as:

Jeder Baum hat Afte, Every tree has branches.

- 2. It is sometimes preceded by ein, and then follows the mixed adjective declension. Jedweder and jeglicher are less common forms, used in the same way.
  - 172. Rein is the negative of ein.
- 173. 1. Ginige (plur., bieser Model) = 'some, a few,' denotes a *small* number taken *collectively*, and is used without article, as:

Ginige Bögel fönnen nicht singen, Some birds cannot sing.

Bor einigen Jahren, A few years ago.

- 2. It is used in the sing. only before names of materials to denote a *limited quantity*, as:
  - Ich habe einiges Geld, I have some money (but not much).
- 3. Etling is a less usual word with the same meaning and use.

NOTE. — Gin paar 'a pair, couple' (with small p) is also used in the sense of 'a few,' the citt being then indeclinable, as:

Mit ein paar Thalern, With a few dollars.

174. Mandjer (biefer Model), 'many(a),' denotes indefinite plurality, as:

Mander Bogel fann nicht singen, Many a bird cannot sing.

Ich habe manches Unglück gehabt,

I have had many a misfortune.

Manche Leute glauben, Many people believe.

It may remain uninflected, especially before an adj., as:
Mancher gute, or manch guter Mann.

175. Mehrere = 'several, a few,' taken individually, as:
Mehrere Leute wurden frank, Several people became ill.

176. Biel and wenig, in the sing., are inflected (biefer Model) when they denote *number*, and uninflected when they denote *quantity*, as:

Lerne nicht vieles, sondern viel, Do not learn many (a great number of) things, but much (a large quantity).

They are usually, though not always, declined in the plural.

Note. — The Engl. 'little' = 'small' is rendered by ffein.

177. Etwas is used before names of material, etc., in the sing., like einiges (see § 173, 2, above), of a small quantity, as:

Etwas Brot, Some bread (but not much).

178. Genug may precede or follow its substantive, as:
Selb genug, or genug Gelb, money enough.

Note. — As adverb, it always follows its adjective, as:

Das Band ift nicht lang genug, The ribbon is not long enough.

179. Mehr is the comparative of viel, and is indeclinable, as:

I have more friends than he.

180. The Engl. 'some, any' are generally omitted before substantives, unless a small quantity (some, but not much) is denoted (see § 157, above). In answer to a question, without a substantive, they are rendered by einiges (sing.), einige (plur.) or weld (sing. or plur.), not by etwas (which = 'something'), as:

Haben Sie Geld? Ich habe einiges (welches). Haben Sie Freunde? Ich habe einige (welche).

# 181. STRONG VERBS: effen Model.

	Infin.	Pres. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. Imper. 2. Sing.	} IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	essen	issest, ißt, iß	$\bar{\mathfrak{a}} \tilde{\mathfrak{b}}$	ge(g)essen
Engl. Analogy: (incomplete)	eat	wanting	āte	eaten
Ablaut:	e }	i, ie	ã	ě

#### LIST.

bitten, beg, ask effen, eat (of man)	bittest, bittet, bitte issest, ißt, iß	bat aß	gebeten gegessen
fressen, eat (of beasts)	frissest, frißt, friß	fraß	gefressen
geben, give	gi(e)bst, gi(e)bt, gi(e)b	gab	gegeben
(ver) gessen, forget	vergissest, vergißt, vers	vergaß	vergessen
lesen, gather; read	lieseft, liest, lies	las	gelesen
liegen, lie down	liegft, liegt, liegn	lag	gelegen
messen, measure	missest, mißt, miß	maß	gemessen
(ge)nesen (N.), re- cover (from illness	genesest, genest, genese	genas	genesen
(ge)schehen (N.),	— geschieht —	geschah	geschehen
happen (impers.)			
sehen, see	siehst, sieht, sieh	fah	gesehen
sițen, sit	fițeft, fițt, fiț (e)	faß.	geseffen
treten (N. A.), tread	trittst, tritt, tritt	trat	getreten
(wesen, N., obsolete)	,	war	gewesen
to be			

Observe. — 1. The changes from  $\mathfrak{f}$  to  $\mathfrak{f}$ ; also that  $\mathfrak{f}$  of the Impf. is retained through that whole tense, the vowel being long, as: wir affen, ich äffe.

<sup>2.</sup> That genesen does not change e into ie.

- 3. The change in fitten of t into \$ and ff.
- 4. That the long e of the root is changed into ie, the short into short i.
  - 5. The inserted g in the P. Part. of effen (gegeffen).
- 6. The doubling of t in 2. sing., etc., of treten, and omission of final -t in 3. sing. (tritt).

## VOCABULARY.

to experience, feel, empfinden intend, contemplate, vor's haben absence, die Abwesenheit Francis, Franz century, das Jahrhun'dert cherry, die Kirsche province, die Provinz' romance, novel, der Roman' swallow, die Schwalbe

telegraph, der Telegraph' misfortune, das Unglück world, die Welt pardon, die Berzeihung thin, dünn almost, nearly, beinahe, fast immediately, (so)gleich lately, not long ago, neulich late, spät while, während

- Idioms: 1. There is, there was, etc. (general statement), es giebt, es gab, etc. (obj. in acc. see Less. XXXVII).
  - 2. To cut one's hand, sid, in die hand schneiden (lit., to cut one's self into the hand).
  - 3. To beg pardon, um Bergeihung bitten.
  - 4. To speak to (with), sprechen + acc. of person.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

A. 1. Das ganze Land empfindet den Verluft eines guten und großen Mannes. 2. Es giebt schöne Bögel, welche gar nicht singen. 3. Bitte, geben Sie mir noch einen Thaler; ich habe nicht Geld genug. 4. Ist Georg den Apfel, den er gekauft hat, oder den jenigen, welchen ich ihm gegeben habe? 5. Der Fremde trat mir auf den Fuß, aber gleich bat er mich um Verzeihung. 6. Während Ihrer Abwesenheit sind mehrere Leute gekommen, um Sie zu

sprechen. 7. Georg fagte mir neulich, daß er Frit vor einigen Mochen gesehen habe. 8. Nimm bich in Acht, bas Gis, worauf bu trittst, ift febr bunn. 9. Ich bitte um Berzeihung, baß ich so fpat gefommen bin. 10. Wenn bu meinen Ontel fiehft, fo fage ihm, bitte, daß ich vorhabe, ihn zu besuchen. 11. Es liegt ein Moman von Sir Walter Scott auf dem Tifche: lefen Sie denfelben? 12. Was ift gefchehen? Meine kleine Schwester ift auf Glas getreten und hat fich in ben Fuß geschnitten. 13. Dieses Unglud geschah in ben Ferien, und fie genas fehr langfam, weil bas Wetter fo beiß war. 14. Eine Schwalbe macht feinen Sommer. 15. Gin Tier frift und fäuft, aber ein Mensch ift und trinft. 16. Durch ben Telegraphen bort fast die gange Welt in pier und zwanzig Stunden von bem, was in irgend einem Lande geschieht. 17. Als ein Reicher aus feinem Saufe fam, bat ibn ein Armer um ein wenig Geld, aber er gab bem Armen feins. 18. Das Pferd bes Reisenden frak ein wenig Beu und Safer. während fein Berr bas Mittagseffen im Gafthaufe ag. 19. Das Kind hat schon alles Brod und Fleisch gegessen, es hat auch alle Mild getrunken, die im Glase war. 20. Einem Lügner wird nicht geglaubt, felbst wenn er die Wahrheit spricht.

B. 1. The whole of England is not so large as the Province of Manitoba. 2. Henry VIII. of England, Francis I. of France, and Charles V. of Germany were the greatest monarchs of the 16th century. 3. Where did you find the money? It lay in the grass. 4. Every summer the birds eat the cherries in our garden. 5. The sick man lay seven weeks in the hospital, but he has now recovered. 6. The rich (man) gave the poor (man), who sat before the house, some money. 7. This youth has read all the books in the library of his father, but unfortunately he forgets just as fast (as) he reads. 8. Napoleon I. died on the 5th May 1821; he was 52 years old. 9. Have you forgotten what I told you two months ago? 10. During the rain we sat under a tree and

told stories. 11. One forgets easily what one reads too quickly. 12. If you have more paper than you need, please give me some. 13. Nineteen hundred years ago the Romans possessed almost the whole world. 14. Many young people read hundreds of novels, and forget after some time almost all they have read. 15. Twenty-five years ago our neighbour possessed only a few hundred dollars, but now he is one of the richest men in the city. 16. Speak the truth, whether you are believed or not.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Giebt es in Amerika Vögel, die nicht singen? 2. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen? 3. Was haben Sie meinem Onkel gesagt, als er hier war? 4. Was sagen Sie vom Lesen der Romane? 5. Welchen Apfel iszt Georg? 6. Ist das Telephon eine neue Erfindung?

# LESSON XXX.

DERIVATIVE NUMERALS. — TIME, MEASURE, DATE. — STRONG
VERBS: Magen Model.

## 182. DERIVATIVE NUMERALS.

From the Cardinal and Indefinite Numerals are formed the following Derivative Numerals:

(a) By adding -mai, adverbs denoting 'so many times,' as: einmai, once; viermai, four times; einunds wanzigmai, twenty-one times; mandmai, many a time.

Notes. — 1. Mal is neuter, hence jedesmal, each time; and with Indef. Numerals sometimes adds -\$, as: vielmal(\$), mehrmals.

2. Gin'mal = 'on one (single) occasion,' as:

Ich habe ihn nur einmal gesehen, I have seen him only once.

Einmal' (einsmals, einst) = 'once upon a time,' as:

Es war einmal' ein Rönig, etc. (GRIMM.)

3. Micht ein'mal, 'not once,' as:

Er ist nicht ein'mal hier gewesen, He has not been here once.

Nicht einmal' (or nicht mal'), 'not even,' as:

Er ist nicht (ein)mal' hier gewesen, He has not even been here.

(b) By adding -fach or fältig, adjectives denoting 'so many fold,' as: einfach, simple; zweifach (zwiefach), twofold, double; vierfach (stältig), quadruple; vielsfach, mannichfach, manifold.

Note. — Einfältig = 'foolish, silly.'

(c) By adding -lei to the gen. fem. sing. or plur., indeclinable adjectives denoting 'of so many kinds,' as: einerlei, of one kind; breierlei, of three kinds; bielerlei, manderlei, of many kinds, etc.

Note. - Es ist mir einerlei = 'It is (all) the same to me.'

## 183. From the Ordinals are formed:

(a) By adding -I, the fractional Numerals, as: ein Dritz tel = ½; das Biertel, the quarter; drei Zwanzigstel = 3/20, etc.

Notes. — I. These are substantives formed from the ordinal + Teil (= part), and are therefore neuter, thus:

Das Drittel = bas britte Teil, 'the third part,' etc.

2. 'Half' as substantive = die Sülfte; as adjective or adverb = halh, which is declined like ganz (see § 170, 2), as:

3ch habe Die Gulfte meines Cigentums verloren,

I have lost half (of) my property.

Der Anabe war halb tot, als man ihn fand,

The boy was half dead when he was found.

Salb Bashington, or das halbe Bashington, (The) half (of) Washington.
Salb or das halbe Frankreich, half France; but Die halbe Schweiz, half Switzerland.

(b) By adding -halb, Mixed Numbers with the Fraction 'half,' as: brittehalb = 21; viertehalb Meilen, three miles and a half; fünftehalb Ellen, four and a half yards.

REMARKS. — r. Observe that the ordinal is one higher than the cardinal of the Engl. idiom; thus 'two and-a-half' is a number consisting of three parts, of which the first and second parts are wholes, but the third is only a half, hence brittes halb.

- 2. 1½ = anderthalb (not zweitehalb; see § 166, 1, Note), as: Anderthalb Flaschen (pl.), A bottle and a half.
- 3. These are invariable adjectives.
  - (c) By adding -ens, ordinal adverbs denoting in what place or order, as:

erstens, firstly; ¿weitens, secondly; brittens, thirdly, etc.

#### 184. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

r. Both point and duration of time are expressed by the Accusative without a preposition, as:

Den ersten Januar, (On) the first of January.

Er fam letten Montag an, He arrived last Monday.

Ich war lette Woche frank, I was ill last week.

Ich war eine ganze Boche frank, I was ill (for) a whole week.

2. Point of time is also expressed:

(a) By the preposition an with the Dat. (always contracted with the article), of date, as:

Um ersten Januar, On the first of January.

Um Sonntag, On Sunday.

Mm Morgen dieses Tages, On the morning of this day.

(b) By the Genitive case, with **£ag**, days of the week, or divisions of the day, when denoting indefinite time or habitual action, as:

Des Tages, In the day time, by day.

Sonntags, On Sundays.

(Des) Abends, In the evening.

# 2. The Time of Day is thus expressed:

(a) The quarters of the hour, with reference to the following hour (not the past hour, as partly in English), thus:

It is a quarter past twelve = E3 ift (ein) Biertel auf eins (i. e., one quarter towards, or on the way to, one).

It is half past twelve = Es ist halb eins (i. e., half one).

It is a quarter to one = Es ist brei Biertel auf eins (i. e., three quarters towards one).

(b) The minutes past by nach, as: Es ift zwanzig Minuten nach zwei, It is twenty minutes past two.

The minutes to by vor, as: Behn Minuten vor brei, ten minutes to three.

(c) at = um; o'clock = Uhr, as:
Um ein Uhr, At one o'clock.

Um ein Biertel auf fünf Uhr, At a quarter past four

Es ist drei Viertel auf fünf (Uhr), It is a quarter to five (o'clock).

Es hat sechs (Uhr) geschlagen, It has struck six (o'clock).

NOTE. — The impersonal Verb 'to be,' in expressing the time of the day, is always singular, as in English.

# 185. Expressions of Quantity.

r. A substantive expressing Quantity (Measure, Weight or Number), if *Masculine* or *Neuter*, retains the form of the singular, as:

Bier und swanzig Boll machen zwei Fuß, 24 inches make two feet.

Zwei Pjund, Two pounds.

Taufend Mann, A thousand men. - But:

Zwei Flaschen (fem.), Two bottles.

Bwölf Ellen (fem.), Twelve yards.

2. The substantive, the quantity of which is expressed, is generally put in apposition with that expressing the quantity, as:

Zwei Buch Papier, Two quires of paper.

Dreitausend Mann Infanterie, Three thousand infantry soldiers.

Fünf Glas Bier, Five glasses of beer.

Mit zwei Paar Schuhen (dat.), With two pairs of shoes.

3. But if a determinative word precedes the substantive measured, etc., use the Gen. case, or non with Dat., as:

Ich habe sechs Pfund dieses guten Zuders (or: von diesem guten Zuder) gekauft.

4. The measure (of weight, distance, etc.) is put in the accusative, as:

Dieser Bleistift ist nur einen Zoll lang, This lead-pencil is only an inch long. Ich habe eine ganze Meile (acc.) marschiert, I have been marching a whole mile. Dieses Paket' wiegt ein halbes Pfund (acc.), This parcel weighs half-a-pound.

186. Strong Verbs: ichlagen Model.

	Infin.	Pr. Ind. 2. 3. si	ng. IMPF.	P. Part.
Germ. Model:	schlagen	schlägst, schläg	gt schlug	geschlagen
Engl. Analogy:	slay	wanting	slew	slain
(incomplete)		**		
Ablaut:	a	ä	11	a
		LIST.		
baden (W. N. A.)	, bake	bäckst, bäckt	but	gebacken
fahren (N. A.), ri	ide (in	fährst, fährt	fuhr	gefahren
a conveyance)	, drive			
graben, dig		gräbst, gräbt	grub	gegraben
laden (W.), invite	e; load	lädst, lädt	lub	geladen
schaffen, create		schaffst, schafft	schuf	geschaffen
schlagen, strike		schlägst, schlägt	schlug	geschlagen
tragen, carry		trägst, trägt	trug	getragen
wachsen (N.), gro	ow	wächsest, wächst	wuchs	gewachsen
waschen, wash		wäschest, wäscht	wusch	gewaschen
Also the irreg	ular:			
ftehen, stand		stehst, steht	{ (stund) } { stand }	gestanden
and the usuall	y weak	:	(punt)	
fragen, ask	- {	frägst, frägt fragst, fragt	frug } fragte }	gefragt
	•	Innalah lamba	140044)	

14

REMARKS.— 1. Baden is usually weak in the Impf. (badte), but strong in the P. Part. (gebaden). Observe also the single f in Impf.

- 2. Fahren is conjugated with fein when intr., with haben when trans.
- 3. Schaffen 'to work' and (ver)schaffen 'to procure' are weak. Observe the single f in the Impf.

#### VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, leave, ab's minute-hand, ber Minutens fahren zeiger rise, auf'stehen pound, bas Pfund invite, ein'laben post-office, die Post riding, bas Reiten understand, versteben dine, zu Mittag effen sentence, ber Cat \* go for a drive, spazieren fahren hour-hand, ber Stundenzeiger absence, die Ab'wesenheit cup, die Tasse little tree, das Bäumchen tea, der Thee dozen, das Duk'end clock, watch, bie Uhr yard, die Elle train, der Zug\* multiplication-table, bas Eins two weeks, a fortnight, viers maleins zehn Tade thread, der Faden \* then, bann driving, bas Tabren early, früh driver, coachman, ber Rutider slow, slowly, langfam hole, das Loch at least, wenigstens night, die Nacht\* first, first of all, querit

Idioms: 1. The Boston train, Der Jug foon Bofton.
2. What time (o'clock) is it? Bie viel Uhr ift es?

#### EXERCISE XXX.

A. 1. Ein breifacher Faden bricht nicht leicht. 2. Der Rutscher fährt so langsam, daß wir nicht vor drei Biertel auf zwölf anstommen werden. 3. In der einen Hälfte der Welt ist es Tug,

während es in der andern Sälfte Nacht ift. 4. Was giebt es beute Neues? 5. Weshalb haben Sie mich gestern nicht besucht? Erstens weil es regnete, und zweitens weil ich felbst Besuch batte. 6. Du haft gut gelesen, lies noch einen Sat. 7. Wie viel wiegen Sie? Ich wiege ungefähr hundert und fünfzig Pfund. 8. Der Rug kommt um brei Biertel auf neun an und fährt um fieben Minuten nach gebn ab. 9. Haben Sie Ihre Uhr bei fich? Ja, aber die Feder ist gebrochen. 10. Ich habe zwei Dutend Gläser bestellt, aber sie sind noch nicht angekommen. 11. Wir haben unfere Bettern eingeladen, während ber Ferien vierzehn Tage bei und zuzubringen. 12. Wir effen im Commer um halb zwei zu Mittag. 13. Ich wurde gern mit Ihnen spazieren fahren, wenn Sie mich einlüben. 14. Der hund verbarg ben Rnochen in ein Loch, welches er hinter dem Apfelbaum grub. 15. Die Magd steht früh (des) Morgens auf, wäscht die Kleider und bäckt Brot. 16. Johann ist ein fehr einfältiger Knabe; er hat noch nicht bas Einmaleins gelernt. 17. Wie viel Uhr war es, als der Minutenzeiger auf fechs und ber Stundenzeiger zwischen drei und vier stand? 18. Der Bauer frug ben Reisenden, wie viel Uhr es fei (ware), und diefer jog seine Uhr aus ber Tasche und sagte ihm, es fei halb eins. 19. Abdiere brei Biertel, vier Siebentel, neun Dreizehntel und elf Zwanzigstel; wie viel ist (macht) das? 20. Der Sund würde den Anaben gleich beigen, wenn derfelbe ihn schlüge. 21. Geben Sie zur Gefellschaft ber Frau B.? 22. Ich bin nicht eingeladen; mein Bruder wurde eingeladen, aber ich nicht.

B. 1. In six days God created Heaven and earth. 2. The patient drank two glasses of wine and three cups of tea yesterday. 3. This silly boy has not even understood what I said to him. 4. Here is good, strong cloth; it costs two and a half dollars a (the) yard. 5. This tree grows quickly; it is at least four times as high as it was three years ago. 6. This exercise is very easy; we shall have finished (with) it in half an hour. 7. The dealer showed us many kinds of ribbon,

red, blue, yellow, etc. 8. Which do you prefer, (the) riding or (the) driving? It is all the same to me. 9. Please tell me what time it is? It is exactly thirteen minutes after eleven. 10. It is nine o'clock, for the hour-hand is (stands) at (auf) nine and the minute-hand at twelve. 11. These three school-boys bought themselves a melon, which weighed almost five pounds. 12. The coachman drove first to the post-office and then to the bank. 13. Between April and September the little tree grew a foot and a half. 14. Precisely at five o'clock the Boston train left, and at 9.45 we arrived. 15. Was this house built before you came here? 16. Add 31/40, and 82/99.

### ORAL EXERCISE XXX.

1. Wie viel macht drittehalb, fünftehalb und neuntehalb?
2. Um wie viel Uhr kommt der Zug von Boston an? 3. Was sagte der Reisende, als der Bauer ihn fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 4. Wie viel Uhr ist es nach Ihrer Uhr? 5. Wie viele Sätze hast du schon gelesen? 6. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen?

### LESSON XXXI.

ADVERBS. - STRONG VERBS: fallen MODEL.

## 187. ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be arranged according to their meaning as follows, with examples of the simpler and more commonly occuring ones under each class:

### I. Time.

(a) Past: bamals, at that time eben, just, just now ge'stern, yesterday neulid, the other day, lately vor'gestern, the day before yesterday vorher', before (b) Present:

jett, now

(c) Future:

bald, soon hernad', afterwards morgen, to-morrow nachher', afterwards nimmer, nevermore ü'bermorgen, the day after tomorrow

(d) Interrogative: twann? when?

# (e) General?

bann, then (past or fut.)
einst, once upon a time (past);
some day (fut.)
endlich, at last
erst, only (not sooner than)
(sogleich, at once, directly
indessen,
inthemeanwhile
unterdessen,
immer, always, at all times
se(mals), ever, at any time
nic(mals), never, at no time
noch, still, yet
oft(mals), often
schon, already
selten, seldom, rarely

## II. Place and Direction.

(a) Demonstrative:

ba, bajelbjt, there, in that place bort, there, in that place bort, there, in that place (ba)her, thence, from that place (ba)her, thence, from that place hier, here, in this place hier, here, in this place

(b) Negative: nirgend3, nowhere

(c) Interrogative and Relative:

wo, where, in what place wohin, whither, to what place woher, whence, from what place

(d) General:

ir'gendwo, anywhere überall', everywhere

# III. Measure and Degree.

auch, also, ever etwa, about, nearly

beinahe, } nearly, almost

gang, should, altogether gar, at all, very genug, enough gerabe, just, exactly faum, hardly, scarcely, no sooner noth, still, more

nur, only
fehr, very
fo, so
ungefähr, about
überhaupt', generally
wie? how?
zu, too
ziemlich, tolerably

### IV. Affirmation.

ja, yes; to be sure
jawohl, certainly
freilich, to be sure, indeed
fürwahr, truly, really

gewiß, certainly
natür'lich, of course
wirklich, to be sure, indeed
zwar, it is true, certainly

# v. Negation.

nein, no

nicht, not

# VI. Possibility.

etwa, vielleicht, } perhaps wahrscheinlich, probably wohl, perhaps

## VII. Necessity.

allerdings, certainly

burchaus, absolutely, entirely

### VIII. Cause.

baher, barum, beshalb, warum, wherefore, why weshalb, (interrog. or rel.)

NOTE. — These last, as well as many of the others, are also used as Conjunctions. See Less. XL.

STRONG VERBS: fallen Model. 188.

n

INFIN. PR. IND. 2. 3. Sing. IMPF. P. PART.

(same as Inf.)

Û

ie

fällst, fällt fiel aefallen Germ. Model: fallen wanting Engl. Analogy: fall fell fallen (incomplete)

Ahlaut:

ä (Note. - This is only a seeming Ablaut; see § 192, Rem. 4.)

### LIST.

blasen, blow	bläsest, bläst	blies	geblasen
braten, roast (tr. and intr.)	brätst, brät	Briet	gebraten
fallen (N.), fall	fällst, fällt	fiel	gefallen
fangen, catch	fängst, fängt	fi(e)ng.	gefangen
halten, hold	hältst, hält	hielt	gehalten
hangen, hang	hängst, hängt	hi(e)ng	gehangen
hauen, hew	hauest, haut	hieb	gehauen
heißen, bid; be called	heißest, heißt	hieß	geheißen
lassen, let	läffest, läßt	ließ	gelaffen
laufen (N. A.), run	läufst, läuft	lief	gelaufen
raten, advise (gov. dat.)	rätst, rät	riet	geraten
rufen, call	rufft, ruft	rief	gerufen
schlafen, sleep	schläfft, schläft	schlief	geschlafen
stoßen, push	stößest, stößt	ftieß	gestoßen
Also the irregular:			

Also the irregular:

gehen (N.), go gehest, geht gi(e)ng gegangen

REMARKS. - 1. Observe in braten, halten, raten the contracted forms of the 3. sing. Pres. Ind.

2. Sangen is the strong verb (hieng, gehangen) and is properly intr. (= 'to be suspended'); hängen is weak (hängte, gehängt) and trans., but the distinction is not strictly observed.

3. Observe that heißen and stoßen, having the root vowel long, retain ß throughout; whereas lassen varies according to rule, thus: ich lasse, gelassen, but er läßt, ließ, wir ließen.

### VOCABULARY.

to begin, commence, an'fangen receive, get, erhalten please, gefallen leave, leave behind, lassen skate, Schlitt'schuh lau'fen kick, strike, bump, stoßen cut down, um'hauen butter, die Butter play-mate, der Gespiele mouse, die Maus\*

man-of-all-work, (farm-) servant, ber Knecht
beef, das Nindfleisch
skate, der Schlitt'schuh
skating, das Schlitt'schuhlausen
bacon, der Speck
language, die Sprache
study, das Studium
last, preceding, vorig

Idioms : 1. What is the name of? Bie heißt?

- 2. What is your name? Bie heiften Gie?
- 3. My name is Henry, 3d heiße Beinrich.
- 4. I think highly of him (i. e., esteem, value him highly), 3ch halte viel von ihm.
- 5. How do you do? (How are you?) Bie geht es Ihnen?
- He has not been here for a long time, Er ift lange nicht hier gewesen (Er ift nicht lange hier gewesen = He has not been here long).

#### EXERCISE XXXI.

A. 1. Mit Speck fängt man Mäuse. 2. Der Knabe fiel, als er Schlittschuh lief, und stieß sich den Ropf aufs Sis. 3. Sin schlafender Fuchs fängt kein Huhn. 4. Im Herbst bläst der Wind kalt, und pfeist durch den Wald. 5. Ssen, trinken und schlafen, heißt (ist) das leben! 6. Im Winter schläft man gewöhnlich länger als im Sommer. 7. Man läßt jest die Fenster offen, denn das Wetter ist warm geworden. 8. Ich laufe nicht gern Schlittschuh, aber meine Gespielen sind große Freunde davon. 9. Die Magd ging zum Laden und kaufte drei Pfund Thee, zwei Pfund Butter,

gehn Pfund Buder und zwei Flaschen Bier. 10. Dort ftand ber Baum, ben ber Knecht neulich umgehauen hat. 11. Sagen Sie mir, wohin Sie vorgestern gingen, als ich Sie in der Rönigsstraße traf. 12. Der Schüler ließ feine Bucher zu Saufe, aber er ift aleich nach haufe gelaufen und hat diefelben geholt. 13. Borige Woche erhielt meine Schwester einen Brief von ihrer Freundin; fast jede Woche erhält fie einen. 14. Dieselbe schrieb, daß fie den ganzen Winter in Bofton zubringen wurde, wenn es ihr dafelbit gefiele. 15. Der Wind blies den Tag fo beftig, daß Georgs Bater ihm riet, nicht aufs Waffer zu geben. 16. Ich bitte um Ber= zeihung, daß ich Sie fo lange allein gelaffen habe. 17. Das franke Rind würde beffer geschlafen haben, wenn die andern Rinder weniger Lärm gemacht hätten. 18. Bor zwanzig Jahren bing bas Bild meines Baters an ber Wand über bem Kamin, und es hängt noch immer da. 19. Wenn er nicht fo früh gegangen wäre, fo hätte ich ihn jum Mittagseffen eingelaben. 20. Guten Morgen, Frau Bell; wie geht es Ihnen? 21. Es geht mir ganz gut; wie geht es Ihrer Familie? 22. Friedrich II. von Breugen wurde Friedrich ber Große genannt.

B. 1. My father speaks German almost as well as English. 2. Good evening, my little friend; how do you do? 3. I have not seen you for a long time. 4. A cold, cutting wind blew through the open window. 5. When I was young, I liked to skate. 6. Do you like (to eat) beef? 7. It was a quarter past eight when the concert began. 8. That horse kicks; take care. 9. At what o'clock will you be at home? I shall not be at home before half past ten. 10. When we were going home, we met our friends, who were coming out of church. 11. What is the name of the long street, which runs from King Street towards (nad) the north? 12. My friend, of whom I thought so highly, died in his nineteenth year. 13. In September we began to learn German, and the study of that language pleases us very much. 14. A lost child was crying

upon the street, and calling after its mother. 15. Some one asked it what its name was. 16. The poor child answered that its name was William, and that it lived in Frederick-Street. 17. I wrote to my cousin a month ago, but I think he is angry, for the letter has not yet been answered.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXI.

1. Was ist geschehen, während die Knaben Schlittschuh liefen? 2. Weshalb sind diese Fenster offen gelassen worden? 3. Was kaufte die Magd auf dem Markte? 4. Weshalb ist der Schüler so schnell nach Hause gelaufen? 5. Wann haben Sie Nachricht von Ihrem Bruder erhalten? 6. Sprechen Sie Deutsch?

### LESSON XXXII.

ADVERBS (continued): - FORMATION AND COMPARISON. TABLE OF STRONG VERBS AND GENERAL REMARKS
ON THE SAME.

189. FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

- 1. From Adjectives (including most adverbs of manner):
  - (a) Most adjectives may be used without change as adverbs, as:

Er läuft schnell, He runs quickly.

(b) By adding -iif (Engl. -ly), sometimes with Umlaut, as:

freilith, of course, to be sure gänzlith, entirely fürzlith, recently neulich, lately, the other day schwerlich, hardly, scarcely

Also to participles, as: hoffentlind, it is to be hoped

wissentlich, knowingly

(c) By adding -lings, as:

blindlings, blindly

(d) By adding -s, -ens, as:

anders, otherwise bereits. already befonders, especially linfs, to (on) the left rechts, to (on) the right übrigens, moreover

Also to participles, as:

eilends, hastily

- 2. From Substantives, by the use of the genitive case (sometimes with article), to express:
  - (a) Time, as:

abends (or des Abends), in the evening morgens (or bes Morgens), in the morning

nachts (or bes Nachts), by night (anomalous, Nacht being fem.) anfangs, in the beginning

(b) Manner, as:

flugs, in haste

teils, in part

3. From Prepositions, by adding -en, sometimes with b(a)rprefixed, as:

außen, ) outside, out of brauken. doors innen, brinnen, within, in-doors hinten, behind

born(e), before oben, above unten, below brüben, over there

Note. - Prepositions in composition with verbs are really adverbs (also the particles ab, ein, empor, weg, zuriid).

4. By combination. For these see Part III.

## 190. Comparison of Adverbs.

1. Some adverbs are compared, as:

bald, ehe, soon eher am ehesten ehe, oft, often öfter am öftesten gern, willingly lieber am liebsten (different root) wohl, well besser am besten ( " ")

2. Adjectives are used as adverbs in the *comparative*, as in the positive, without change, as:

Er läuft schneller als sein Bruder, He runs more quickly than his brother.

3. In the *superlative* degree, the form with am is used for the *relative* superlative (see §§ 127, 2, and 128), as:

Er läuft am schnellsten von allen, He runs most quickly of all.

4. The absolute superlative (see § 127, 2) is usually formed by prefixing an adverb of eminence (such as fehr, höchft, äußerft, etc.), as:

Er schreibt äußerst schön, He writes most (i. e., very) beautifully.

5. Adverbs from adjectives in -ig, -lift, -fam use the uninflected form for the superlative absolute, as:

Er läßt freundlichst grüßen, He desires to be most kindly remembered.

Also a few monosyllables, as: längft, long ago; höchft, most highly.

6. The superlative absolute may also be expressed by aut bas (aufs) prefixed to the superlative adjective, to express the highest possible degree, as:

Er besorgt seine Geschäfte auf das (aufs) Gewissenhafteste, He attends to his business in the most conscientious manner (possible).

7. A few superlative adverbs end in -ens, with special meanings, as:

höchstens, at most meistens, for the most part wenigstens, at least nächstens, shortly

Also the ordinal adverbs, erstens, etc., see § 183, (c).

## 191. Position of Adverbs.

Adverbs generally precede the word they modify (except genug, see § 178, Note).

For further particulars as to their position in the sentence, see § 45, Rule 5.

192. Table of Classification of Strong Verbs.

			A blaut.					
Class.	Div.	German Model.	English Analogy.	Infin.	IMPF.	P.Part.	2.3.sing. Pr.Ind. 2.s.Imp.	Lesson.
I. {	a	beißen	bite	ei	ĭ	ĭ	_	XXII.
1. 5	6	bleiben	(wanting)	ei	ie	īe		XXIII.
II. {	a	schießen	shoot	ic, etc.	ŏ	ŭ		XXIV.
11. 5	6	frieren	freeze	ie, etc.	ā	ō	_	XXV.
(	a	fingen	sing	ĭ	ă	ŭ	-	XXVI.
III. {	6	spinnen	spin	ĭ		ŏ	_	}xxvii.
(	C	helfen	(wanting)	ĕ	ă	ם ונסנ סנ	ĭ	SAX VII.
IV.	-	fprechen	speak	e, etc.	ā	ā	t, ie	XXVIII.
V.		effen	eat	e, etc.	ā	e	ĭ, īc	XXIX.
VI.		schlagen	slay	a	u	a	Umlaut	XXX.
VII.	_	fallen	fall	various	īē	same as	Umlaut	XXXI.
						Infin.		

REMARKS. — 1. The Umlaut of classes VI., VII. does not occur in the Imperative.

- 2. The varying vowels of the Imperf. Subj. are given in the lists, where necessary.
  - 3. The English Analogies printed in Italics are incomplete.
- 4. The vowel-change of class VII. is not an Ablaut, but the result of reduplication.
- 5. The lists of the various classes contain only the verbs of common occurrence; all others will be found in App. L.
- 193. Distinguish between the verbs of the following groups:

(a) { beten, beg, ask beten, pray (intr.) bieten, bid, offer	bat betete bot	gebeten gebetet geboten
(b) { liegen, lie (be recumbent, intr.)   legen, lay (trans.)   liigen, lie, tell a falsehood	lag leg <b>te</b> log	geleg <b>en</b> geleg <b>t</b> gelogen
(c) { 3iehen, pull (trans.), move (intr.) 3eihen, accuse 3eigen, show	zog zieh zeigte	gezogen geziehen gezeigt

194. Remember the irregularities of:

essen (P. Part. gegessen) ftehen, stand (or stund), geschauen (Imps. hieb) standen
gehen, ging, gegangen ziehen, zog, gezogen

Also the double forms in the Impf. of: heben (hub, hob) schwören (schwar, schwor)

Note. — There are a few strong P. Parts. from verbs now otherwise weak, as: gemahlen, from mahlen, to grind (Impf. mahlen, ; gesalzen, from salzen, to salt (Impf. salzen); gespalten, from spalten, to split (Impf. spaltes); also some strong participles used only as adjectives, viz.:

erhaben (from erheben), exalted, sublime bescheiden ( " bescheiden), modest verwarren ( " verwirren), confused

#### VOCABULARY.

to wind up (a clock, etc.),
auf'ziehen
pass (an examination), be=
ftehen
greet, salute, grüßen
go (or be) too slow (of a
clock, etc.), nach'gehen
run after, nach'laufen (+ dat.)
cry, rufen
go (or be) too fast (of a
clock, etc.), vor'gehen
command, ber Befehl
visit, visitors, ber Befuch

examination, das Eramen kitchen, die Küche place, spot, die Stelle employed, busy, beschäftigt then (conj.), denn hungry, hungrig left, link right, recht salt (adj.), gesalzen in spite of, trop (+gen.) improbable, unwahrscheinlich like, wie

Idioms: 1. I saw your friend to-day; he wishes to be remembered to you, Ich habe heute Ihren Freund geschen; er läßt Gie grußen.

2. How do you like Boston ? Bie gefällt es Ihnen in Bofton ?

#### EXERCISE XXXII.

A. 1. Ceht Ihre Uhr vor, oder geht sie nach? 2. Sie geht ganz richtig. 3. Haben Sie Ihre Uhr aufgezogen? 4. Ein kleines Mädchen fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei. 5. Ein herr zog seine Uhr aus der Tasche und zeigte sie dem Kinde mit den Worten: "Sage du mir selbst, wie viel Uhr es ist." 6. Wo sind deine Schwestern? Marie ist oben in der Bibliothek und Sophie ist unten in der Küche. 7. Aufangs wohnten wir nicht gern in dieser Straße, aber jetzt gefällt uns dieselbe ganz gut. 8. Ich glaube, wir werden einen heißen Sommer haben; was meinen Sie? 9. Die meisten Leute essen lieber frisches Fleisch als ges

falzenes. 10. Trot bes Befehls bes Königs betete Daniel jeden Tag dreimal. 11. Meine Tante, die in Berlin wohnt und deren Bruder Sie kennen, ist fehr frank. 12. Grugen Sie freundlichft Ihre Eltern für mich, wenn Sie nach Saufe tommen. 13. Soffent= lich wird Frit fein Examen gut bestehen, benn er hat aufs gewissen= hafteste ftudiert. 14. Er wird es schwerlich bestehen, ba er erft feit zwei Sahren in ber Schule ift. 15. Der lügt, welcher wissentlich eine Unwahrheit fagt. 16. Ich effe gern gebratenes Rindfleisch, besonders wenn ich recht hungrig bin. 17. Rechts von der Schule fteht eine Rirche, links fteht ber Markt. 18. Bir haben lieber abends Befuch als morgens, benn morgens find wir gewöhnlich beschäftigt. 19. Dieses Rind wird nächstens frank werden, denn es hat seit drei Tagen fast gar nichts gegessen. Es stand früher eine Kirche auf der Stelle wo wir jetzt find, aber sie ift schon längst verschwunden. 21. Von wem wurde die Rirche gebaut, wovon Gie fprechen? 22. Ich weiß es nicht, es ift mir nie gefaat worden.

B. 1. Please show me the way to the post-office. 2. If George is up-stairs, tell him that I am down-stairs. 3. I do not like London; I prefer to live in a smaller city. 4. The pen still lies on the book upon which I laid it. 5. Please tell me who lives over the way. 6. This boy has been stung by a bee. 7. Of all animals the horse runs quickest. 8. Give me what you have in your (the) left hand. 9. Lessing died on the fifteenth of February 1781. 10. The soldiers ran blindly into the battle and fought like lions. 11. The train for (nad) Montreal leaves (ab'fahren) at twelve o'clock at night, and arrives in Montreal at ten o'clock in the morning. 12. A little beggar ran after a gentleman, and asked him for some money. 13. 'My father is dead,' cried he, 'my mother is dead, and all her children are dead!' 14. 'Who are you then?' asked the gentleman. 15. What answer was given to the beggar by the gentleman, when he was asked for money?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Was würden Sie sagen, wenn ich Sie fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 2. Gefällt Ihnen die Strasze, worin Sie jetzt wohnen? 3. Hat Fritz sein Examen gut bestanden? 4. Wo ist meine Feder? 5. Was für Sprachen haben Sie studiert? 6. Glauben Sie, dasz der Herr dem Bettler etwas gegeben hat?

### LESSON XXXIII.

ADVERBS (continued): IDIOMS. - IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS.

195. IDIOMATIC USES OF CERTAIN ADVERBS.

#### 1. nun. well.

Mun, es ift mir einerlei,

Well (why), it is all the same to me.

NOTE. — Mun is here really an interjection, and hence does not throw the subject after the verb.

### 2. eben, just, exactly.

Das ift eben berfelbe Mann,

That is the very (exactly the) same man.

Wir find (fo)chen angefommen, We have just arrived.

Das fann man eben nicht fagen, One cannot exactly say that.

### 3. gern, lieber, am liebften.

Ich esse gern Fisch, I am fond of (eating) fish.

Ich effe lieber Fisch als Fleisch, I prefer (eating) fish to meat.

Er würde es gern thun, He would be glad to do it, would do it with pleasure.

Melde Sprache sprechen Sie am liebsten?
Which language do you prefer (speaking)?

# 4. erst, first, only, not before, etc.

Man muß erst benken, bann sprechen,
One must think first and then speak.
Mein Bruder wird erst morgen kommen,
My brother will not come before to-morrow.
Wir hatten erst zwei Meilen marschiert,
We had only marched two miles.
Mein Bruder ist erst zwei Jahre alt,
My brother is only (not more than) two years old.

# 5. zuerst, first of all; for the first time.

Dieses Schiff ist zuerst (vor allen andern) im Hafen angestommen, This ship arrived in the harbour first (i. e., before any other).

Ich werde zuerst (or erst) zum Schneider, dann zum Buchhändler gehen, I shall go first (of all) to the tailor's, then to the bookseller's.

Ich habe ihn gestern zuerst (zum ersten Mal) gesehen, I saw him for the first time yesterday.

NOTE.— Burfi refers to time only, as above; erfiens = 'firstly, in the first place,' refers to order only, as in enumerations, thus:

Id frante nicht fommen, erstens, weil es regnete, zweitens, weil id frant war, I could not come, first (in the first place) because it rained, secondly, because I was ill.

### 6. Ichon, already, as early as, etc.

Sind Sie schon da? Are you there already?
If The Bruder schon in Frankreich gewesen?
Has your brother ever been in France?
Ich bin schon drei Tage in der Stadt,
I have been in the city for the last three days.
Das Schiff ist schon gestern angesommen,
The ship arrived (as early as) yesterday.

Er wird inn fommen, He will be sure to come (he will come, no doubt).

Note. — Schon is often, as in the fourth of the above sentences, to be left untranslated in English.

### 7. noch, yet, still, more.

# (a) Of Time:

Sind Sie noch hier? Are you still here? Ich bin noch nie in Deutschland gewesen, I have never yet been in Germany. Er war noch vor einer Stunde hier, He was here only an hour ago.

Noth heute, Even to-day (while it is yet to-day, not later than to-day).

Note. — Observe that noth precedes the negatives nie, nitht, etc.

# (b) Of Number:

Moch eine Taffe Thee, Another cup of tea.

Noch zwei, Two more.

Noch (ein)mal fo viel, As much again.

## 8. doch, yet, after all.

# (a) Adversative:

Er wird both' fommen, He will come after all (emphasis on both).

Er wird both fommen', He will come, I hope (emphasis on fommen).

Habe ich es Ihnen doch gesagt! I told you so (did I not tell you so?).

NOTE. — Observe that in the last example the verb is at the beginning of the principal sentence.

# (b) With Imperatives:

Rommen Sie doch herein, Pray come in (urgent).

(c) In answer to a negative question or statement:

Have von not soon him? You I have

Have you not seen him? Yes, I have.

I did not do it. Sie haben es boch gethan. Yes, you did.

(For both and noth as Conjunctions, see Less. XL.)

Note. —  $\mathfrak{D}\text{od}_{\!\!1}$  gives an affirmative answer, where a negative one is expected.

# 9. auch, also, even, etc.

Much sein Bater war gegen ihn, Even his father was against him.

Mein Bruder war nicht müde, und ich war auch nicht müde, My brother was not tired, and I was not tired either.

Haben Sie auch bedacht', was Sie sagen, Are you sure you have considered, what you say? (emphasis on bedacht).

## 10. wohl, indeed, etc.

Er leugnet es wohl, aber es ist boch wahr, He denies it indeed (to be sure) but yet it is true.

Sie sind wohl ein Fremder? I suppose (presume) you are a stranger (no doubt you are, etc.).

Note. — Gut, not wehl, is the adv. of the adj. gut, good, when modifying a transitive verb.

# 11. ja, yes, to be sure, etc.

Thun Sie es ja', Be sure to do it, do it by all means (emphasis on ja).

Er ist ja mein Bater', He is my father, you know (emphasis on Bater).

#### 12. nur.

(With the Imperative.)

Rommen Sie nur herein, Just come in (reassuringly).

# 196. IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS.

I. Thun, to do, Impf. that, P. Part. gethan.

That, like Engl. 'did,' is a relic of the old Impf. by reduplication, the old form being te-ta, i. e., the stem ta-with reduplicating syll. te-prefixed, then te-te, tet, that. Thun rejects e of the termination throughout, except in 1. Sing. Pres. Ind., and in the Pres. Subj.

### II. IMPERFECT-PRESENT VERBS.

Infin.			Pres. Subj.	Imperfec <b>t</b>		P. PART.
In Fine	1. Sing.	. Sing. 1. Plur.		IND.	Subj.	I.IAKI.
wissen, know	weiß	wissen	wisse	wußte	wüßte	gewußt
bürfen, dare	barf	dürfen	dürfe	durfte	dürfte	gedurft
fönnen, can	fann	fönnen	fünne	fonnte	fönnte	gekonnt
mögen, may	mag	mögen	möge	mochte	möchte	gemocht
müffen, must	muß	müffen	müsse	mußte	müßte	gemußt
follen, shall	foll	follen	folle	follte	follte	gefollt

III. Wollen, will, Pres. Ind. r. Sing. will, r. Plur. wollen, Pres. Subj. wolle, Impf. Ind. wollte, Subj. wollte, P. Part. gewollt.

REMARKS. — I. Observe the following peculiarities in the verbs under II. and III.:

- (a) All have the same vowel (mostly with Umlaut) in the Inf. and the *Plur*. of the Pres. Ind.; but (except follen) a different vowel in the Sing. of the same tense.
- (b) The Impf. Ind. and P. Part. have the weak endings -te, -t, but the vowel is without Umlaut; wissen changes i to u; mögen changes g into h.
- (c) The Impf. Subj. has Umlaut, except in sollen and wollen.

(d) The Sing. of the Pres. Ind. of these Verbs is as follows, the Plural being regular:

Observe here the different vowel of the Inf. and Indic. (except foll); also the want of the person-ending in the 1. and 3. Sing. (id), er weiß, barf, fann, etc., not weiß-t, barf-t, fann-t; compare Engl. can, may, etc., not can-s, may-s, etc.).

- 2. The forms of the Present in the verbs under II. were originally *Strong Imperfects* (hence their want of person-endings), which came to be used with a *Present* meaning; the new (weak) Imperfects were formed from these, with vowel-change.
- 3. The Present of wollen was originally a Pres. Subj., used as Indic., and therefore also without full person-endings.
- 4. The Imperative is wanting in all under II., except wissen, Imper. wisse.

Notes.—1. Diffen (= Fr. savoir) is used of knowledge, and of things only; fennen (= Fr. connaître) of acquaintance, of persons and things, thus:

Miffen Sie ben Meg? Do you know the road? (i. e., do you know which is the right road?)

Rennen Sie ben Beg? Are you acquainted (familiar) with the road?

Rennen Sie meinen Bruder? Do you know my brother? Biffen Sie, was er gesagt hat? Do you know what he said? 2. All these verbs, except miffen, govern another Verb in the Infin. without at (see Less. XLV), as:

3ch barf gehen, I am permitted to go.

### VOCABULARY.

to put on (a hat), aufsehen expression, der Ausbruck\* French (language), Französsisch building, das Gebäude commandment, das Gebots watch-key, ber Uhrschlüffel dwelling-house, bas Wohnshaus clear(ly), distinct(ly), beutlich although, obgleich'

- Idioms: 1. Will you be so kind as to lend me your pen? Wollen Sie fo gut fein und mir Ihre Feder leihen? (lit., will you be so kind and, etc.)
  - 2. I am sorry (I regret), G\$ thut mir leib (leib to be treated as a separable particle).
  - 3. What is that in German? Wie heift das auf Deutsch?
  - 4. I do not need to go to school to-day, Ich brauche heute nicht jur Schule ju geben.
  - 5. He knows French, Er fann Frangofifch.

#### EXERCISE XXXIII.

A. 1. Ich kann bich nicht verstehen; sprich boch beutlicher.
2. Kommen Sie nur herein, wenn Sie wollen. 3. Ist es Ihnen schon gelungen, Französisch zu lernen? 4. Ich werbe noch heute diese Lektion lernen müssen, und es ist schon drei Viertel auf zehn.
5. Noch vor vierzehn Tagen liesen wir Schlittschuh, und heute ist das Sis geschmolzen. 6. Das erste Gebot heißt (is): "Du sollst keine andern Götter neben mir haben." 7. Es thut mir leid, daß wir erst morgen abreisen; ich wäre lieber heute abgereist. 8. Thut es Ihnen nicht auch leid, daß Sie bis morgen bleiben müssen?
9. Wie heißt der englische Ausdruck 'Do you know my friend?' auf Deutsch? "Kennen Sie meinen Freund?" 10. Mein Onkel und meine Tante sind schon gestern angekommen, aber meine Bettern und Cousinen werden erst übermorgen kommen können. 11. Weißt du, daß beine Mutter angekommen ist? 12. Ich will diesen hut nicht ausseh, weil er mir zu klein ist. 13. Heute darf ich länger

hier bleiben; ich brauche nicht vor zehn Uhr zu Hause zu sein. 14. Wollen Sie sich nicht setzen? 15. Ich werde mehr Gelb haben müssen; ich habe nicht genug zur Reise. 16. Je mehr man hat, besto mehr will man. 17. Dieses unartige Kind weiß nicht, was es will. 18. Ich habe eben gehört, daß meine Mutter frank ist, aber ich werde sie nicht vor morgen besuchen können. 19. Wollen Sie gefälligst meinen Brief zur Post bringen? 20. Wilhelm wird den ganzen Tag zu Hause bleiben müssen, weil er sich erkältet hat. 21. Mein Bruder spricht gut Deutsch, obgleich er erst in in seinem siedzehnten Jahre das Studium dieser Sprache angesfangen hat. 22. Wollen Sie so gut sein und mir sagen (mir zu sagen), wie viel Uhr es ist?

B. 1. A stranger wants to speak to (sprechen + acc.) you. 2. That building was first a bank, then a shop, but it is now a dwelling-house. 3. How do you know that? I know it because I have heard it from my father. 4. What shall I do? I have lost all my money. 5. Do you know who has torn this book? 6. No. I do not know who has torn it. 7. Can you write the name of that stranger? 8. Do you know German? No, but I know French. 9. Do you know the difference between the words 'fennen' and 'wiffen'? 10. I had already put on my hat, and was just on the point of going out, when the rain began. 11. These two ships set sail (ab= fahren) at the same time, but the smaller arrived first. 12. I could not wind up my watch yesterday evening; I had no watch-key about me. 13. I cannot remain now any longer; I must be at home at ten o'clock. 14. I know this street, but I do not know the name of it (say: how it is called). 15. A brave man is esteemed by everybody. 16. Of what is bread made?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Wie heiszt 'I am sorry' auf Deutsch? 2. Weshalb bleiben Sie heute nicht länger? 3. Können Sie Deutsch?

4. Sollte man gegen jedermann freundlich sein? 5. Wie gefällt Ihnen Paris? 6. Wie viel Uhr ist es, wenn der Stundenzeiger zwischen vier und fünf und der Minutenzeiger auf zehn steht?

### LESSON XXXIV.

# THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

- 197. The Verbs dürfen, fönnen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen (see last Lesson), with the Verb sossien (Class VII, Less. XXXI) are called Modal Auxiliaries, or Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, since they are used to form combinations equivalent to various Moods. Thus: sossie und gehen, 'let us go,' is really equivalent to an Imperative Mood 1. Pl. of gehen; ich fann gehen, 'I can go,' to a Potential Mood, etc.
- 198. These Modal Auxiliaries differ from the English Auxiliaries can, may, must, shall, will, in having an Infinitive and a Past Participle, and in the consequent ability to form a complete set of compound tenses, which are wanting in the English Verbs, and must therefore be supplied in that language by equivalent phrases, as shown in the following partial paradigms (see also Less. XXXV).

bürfen, to be per- | fönnen, to be able | mögen, to like, be mitted | (can) | allowed (may)

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich barf, I am per- ich fann, I can, am ich mag, I like, mitted, may able may

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich bürfe, I (may) ich könne, I (may) ich möge, I (may) be permitted, be able like

### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

td, burfte, I was per- ich fonnte, I could, ich mochte, I liked, mitted was able might

# IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich bürfte, I might ich fönnte, I could, ich möchte, I might be able like

### PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe geburft,

I have been permitted

I have been able ich habe gemocht,

I have liked

# PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe gedurft,

I (may) have been permitted

ich habe gekonnt,

I (may) have been able

ich habe gemocht,

I (may) have liked

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich hatte geburft,

I had been permitted

ich hatte gefonnt,

I had been able

I had liked

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte geburft,
I might have been permitted ich hätte gefonnt,
I might have been able ich hätte gemocht,
I might have liked

## FUTURE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werbe bürfen, Ishall be able ich werbe fönnen, Ishall bepermitted I shall be able I shall like

### FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde geburft has ich werde gekonnt ich werde gemocht ben, I shall have haben, I shall haben, I shall been permitted have been able have liked

### SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich würbe bürfen, I ich würbe fönnen, I ich würbe mögen, I should be permitted should be able should like

#### COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde geburft haz ich würde gekonnt ich würde gemocht ben, I should haben, I should haben, I should been permitted have been able have liked

milifen, to be compelled (must) | follen, to be obliged | wollen, to be willing (will)

### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich muß, I am compelled, must ich soll, bu sollst, ich will, I will, intend to, am about to

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich müsse, I (may) be | ich solle, I (may) be | ich wolle, I (may) compelled | obliged | be willing

### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich mußte, I was compelled ich follte, I was compelled conject of obliged to, ought ich twollte, I was willing

# IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich müßte, I might | ich follte, I might | ich wollte, I might be compelled

be obliged

be willing, would

### PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe gemußt, I have been com- I have been pelled

1 ich habe aesollt. obliged

ich habe gewollt, I have been willing

# PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

compelled

ich habe gemußt, | ich habe gesollt, I (may) have been I (may) have been I (may) have been obliged

1 ich habe gewollt. willing

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich hatte gemußt, pelled

1 ich hatte gesollt, I had been com- I had been obliged

ich hatte gewollt. I had been willing

# PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte gemußt, I might have been compelled

ich hätte gesollt, I might have been obliged, ought to have

1 ich hätte gewollt. I might have been willing

# FUTURE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde muffen, I shall be compelled

1 ich werde follen, I shall be obliged ich werde wollen. I shall be willing

### FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gemußt haben, I shall have been compelled

ich werde gesollt ha= | ich werde gewollt ben, I shall have been obliged

haben. I shall have been willing

### SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich würde müssen, ich würde sollen, ich würde wollen,
I should be compelled I should be willing

### COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gemußt ich würde gesollt ha= ich würde gewollt haben, I should ben, I should have been compelled been obliged have been willing

### 199. FURTHER PECULIARITIES OF MODAL AUXILIARIES.

I. They govern an Infinitive without zu, as: Er muß gehen, He must go.

2. In the compound tenses, when a governed Infin. occurs, the weak P. Part. is replaced by the Infinitive (really the old strong P. Part. without prefix ge-, which coincides in form with the Infin.), as:

3ch habe gemußt, I have been obliged; - but

Ich habe es thun muffen, I have been obliged to do it.

3. In subordinate sentences, their auxiliary of tense does not come last, but precedes both the governed infinitive and the participle of the Modal Auxiliary, as:

Er sagte, daß er es habe thun mussen, He said, that he had been obliged to do it.

Note. — The foregoing peculiarities are all shared by the verbs heißen, helsen, hören, lassen, madsen, sehen; for other verbs governing an Infin. without zn, see Less. XLV.

4. The shorter (and older) forms of the Conditional (viz.: Impf. and Plupf. Subj., see § 111) are preferred to the longer ones (with würde), thus:

### SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich dürfte — I should be permitted ich fönnte — I " " able ich möchte — I " like ich müßte — I " be compelled ich follte — I " obliged ich wollte — I " willing

### COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

REMARKS. — 1. The Engl. auxiliaries also use by preference shorter forms of the Comp. Condit., but differently constructed thus:

Observe that the Engl. Verbs have the Modal Auxiliary ('could,' 'might,' etc.) in the Simple Tense (Impf.), and the governed verb ('have done') in the Compound Tense (Perf. Inf.); whereas the Germ. Verbs have the Modal Auxiliary (hätte...fönnen, etc.) in the Compound Tense (Plupf. Subj.), and the governed verb (thun) in the Simple Tense (Pres. Inf.).

2. Distinguish carefully between 'could,' *Indic.* (= was able, founte) and 'could,' *Conditional* (= would be able, founte); and so with the other verbs, thus:

Er fonnte es nicht thun = He could not (was not able to) do it (*Indic.*).

Er fünnte es thun, wenn er wollte = He could (would be able to) do it, if he were willing (Condit.).

### VOCABULARY.

to remain up, sit up, auf'bleiben go out, auß'gehen thank, banken (+ dat.) bow to, greet, grüßen (trans.) depend, rely (upon), sich verslassen (aus + acc.) moment, der Au'genblick railway, die Ei'senbahn

fellow-creature, neighbour,
ber Nächste
disaster, das Un'glück
untruth, falsehood, die Un's
wahrheit
over again, noch (ein)mal'
whether, if, ob
else, otherwise, sonst

Idioms: 1. Will you have a cup of tea? No, thank you, Bossen Sie eine Taffe Thee? Ich banke (Ihnen).

- 2. In fine weather, Bei ichonem Better.
- 3. I have heard (it) said, etc., Ich habe fagen hören, u. f. w.

### EXERCISE XXXIV.

A. 1. Du hast deine Aufgabe sehr schlecht gemacht; du wirst sie gewiß noch (ein)mal' machen müssen. 2. Darf ich einen Augensblick Ihren Bleistift brauchen? Ich habe den meinen verloren. 3. Wir müssen gleich zur Schule gehen, sonst kommen wir zu spät. 4. Man sollte seinen Nächsten lieben, wie sich selbst. 5. Borige Woche hätte mein Vater sein Haus verkausen können, aber er hat es nicht gewollt. 6. Jest möchte er es gern verkausen, aber niemand will es. 7. Deine Vettern lassen dich freundlichst grüßen. 8. Wissen Sie, wie der Herr heißt, der mich soeden gegrüßt hat? 9. Du sollst zu deinem Bater gehen; er will dich sprechen. 10. Der Knabe mag sagen, was er will; ich weiß, daß er eine Unswahrheit gesach hat. 11. Möchten Sie nicht bei diesem schönen Wetter spazieren sahren? 12. Hast du den Zug von Buffalo anskommen sehen? 13. Ja wohl, ich habe ihn ankommen sehen, aber es war niemand darauf, den ich kannte. 14. Er hat gedurft, aber

er hat nicht gewollt. 15. Ich habe in der Stadt sagen hören, daß ein großes Unglück auf der Eisenbahn geschehen ist. 16. Er soll von diesem Baum gesprungen sein, aber ich kann es kaum glauben. 17. Ich darf nicht so spät aufbleiben als mein älterer Bruder; ich muß jeden Abend um zehn Uhr zu Bette gehen. 18. Ich will thun, was ich kann; darauf können Sie sich verlassen. 19. Von wem wurde das Buch geschrieben, das Sie soeben lasen? 20. Es thut mir leid, daß Sie so lange auf mich haben warten müssen; ich konnte meine Handschuhe nicht sinden.

B. 1. By whom was this picture painted? 2. I should like to know what time it is. 3. May you go out, if you want to? No, we are obliged to stay at home the whole day. 4. I do not like (I like no) tea; I prefer (the) coffee. 5. Could you help me with my lesson? 6. I should certainly help you with it, if I could. 7. He may say, what he will; it is all the same to me. 8. My father could have sold his house last year, but now it is impossible, for nobody wants to buy it. 9. Charles has beaten his dog with a stick; he should not have done that. 10. May I offer you a piece of meat? No. thank you. 11. Have (let) the messenger wait, till I write an answer. 12. I should like to read this French book, but I do not know any French. 13. I am sorry that I have not been able to come sooner. 14. He will be obliged to study another year, if he does not pass his examination. 15. Sophia should not have gone for a walk, since the weather is so cold. 16. The horse I wanted to buy was already sold.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Wie heiszt das erste Gebot? 2. Wissen Sie, ob wir morgen zur Schule gehen müssen? 3. Darf ich Ihnen eine Tasse Thee anbieten? 4. Weshalb haben Sie mir mit meiner Aufgabe nicht helfen wollen? 5. Wie lange werden wir auf Fritz warten müssen? 6. Sollte man seinen Nächsten lieben?

### LESSON XXXV.

### MODAL AUXILIARIES (continued): - IDIOMS.

200. The following are the most important of the various meanings of the Modal Auxiliaries:

1. Dürfen denotes permission, as:

Darf ich fragen? May I ask?

Sie bürfen jest nach Hause gehen, You may go home now.

Er hat nichts sagen bürsen, He has not been permitted (allowed) to say anything.

### Rönnen denotes:

(a) ability (of persons), as:

Er founte schön schreiben, He could (was able to, knew how to) write beautifully.

3th hätte nicht fommen fönnen, I could not have (would not have been able to) come.

(b) possibility (of events), as:

Es fann sein, It may be (so), it is possible.

- 3. Mögen denotes:
  - (a) preference, liking (of persons), as:

Ich mag bieses Gebicht nicht, I do not like (care for) this poem.

Er mochte nicht arbeiten, He did not like to work.

Ich hätte Ihren Bruder sehen mögen, I should have liked to see your brother.

NOTE. — This is the usual meaning in the first person; also in the Impf. (Indic. and Condit.) throughout.

(b) concession, possibility (in 2. and 3. person only),

as:

Er mag gehen, He may go (as far as I am concerned), or: Let him go.

Das mag fein, That may be (for all I know).

NOTE. — The Engl. 'may' denoting permission must be rendered by Dürfen in the first person, as:

May I accompany you? Dari ich Gie begleiten?

(c) Observe this idiom:

Ich werde morgen ausgehen, mag es regnen ober nicht, I shall go out to-morrow, whether it rains or not.

4. Müssen denotes necessity, as:

Alle Menschen müffen sterben, All men must die.

Es muß gestern geschehen sein, It must have happened yesterday.

Wir werben ausgehen miissen, We shall be compelled (or 'obliged,' or 'shall have') to go.

Note. — 'To be obliged, compelled' after a negative is rendered by branchen, as:

I am not obliged to go, Ich brauche nicht zu gehen.

- 5. Sollen denotes duty or obligation, imposed on the subject by the will of another.
  - (a) Imposed by the speaker, as:

Du fallst nicht stehlen, Thou shalt not steal.

(b) Imposed by some person other than, but recognised by, the speaker, as:

Ich soll gehen, I am to go.

Er hätte gehen sollen, He ought to have gone.

Was soll geschehen? What is to be done?

Was follte ich thun? What was I to do?

(c) It also denotes a statement on the part of another as to the subject, as:

Er foll fehr reich fein, He is said to be very rich.

### 6. Wollen denotes

- (a) the exertion of the will on the part of the subject, as: Er will nicht gehorchen, He will not (refuses to) obey.
- (b) intention or impending action, as:

Er will morgen abreisen, He intends (means) to depart. Das Sis will brechen, The ice is about to break

(threatens to break).

Er wollte eben gehen (= war eben im Begriff zu gehen), He was just on the point of going.

(c) a statement or claim on the part of the subject, as: Er will in Indien gewesen sein, He asserts that he has been (pretends to have been) in India.

# 7. Laffen is used

- (a) as auxiliary of the Imperative Mood, as:

  Rassen Sie uns hier bleiben, Let us remain here.
- (b) to express permission, etc., as:

  Man hat den Dieb entspringen lassen, The thief has been allowed to escape.
- (c) to express the agency of another, as:

Der Offizier ließ ben Solbaten bestrafen, The officer ordered the soldier to be punished.

Michenputtels Bater ließ ben Baum umhauen, Cinderella's father had the tree cut down.

NOTE. — The infin. in the former of these examples is rendered by the passive infinitive in English, the object of the verb laffen being understood. Supply the ellipsis as follows:

Der Offizier hat jemand (obj. of lassen), ben Solbaten (obj. of bestrasen), bestrasen lassen, The officer has ordered somebody to punish the soldier.

(d) reflexively, as:

Er lick sich leicht betrügen, He suffered himself to be deceived easily.

Ich ließ es mir gefallen, I submitted to it. Es läßt fich nicht leugnen. It cannot be denied.

#### 201. How to render SHALL and WILL.

I. The Engl. 'shall' and 'will' must both be rendered by toerden when they express mere futurity, as:

> I shall be drowned and nobody will save me, Ich werde ertrinken und niemand wird mich retten.

2. But if they express more than mere futurity (e. g., obligation or determination), they must be rendered by folless and wollen respectively, as:

> I will be drowned and nobody shall save me, Ich will ertrinken und niemand foll mich retten.

202. Observe the following parallel idioms:

(a) Er hat es nicht thun können, He has not been able to do it.

Er kann es nicht gethan haben, He cannot (possibly) have done it.

(b) Er hat es nicht thun mögen, He did not like to do it.
Er mag es gethan haben, He may (possibly) have done it.

(c) { Er hat es thun müffen, He has been obliged to do it.
Er muß es gethan haben, He must have done it.

(d) Er hat es thun sollen, He should (ought to) have done it.

Er soll es gethan haben, He is said to have done it.

(e) Er hat es thun wollen, He intended to have done it.
Er will es gethan haben, He pretends (claims) to have done it.

#### VOCABULARY.

to put on, draw on (coat, etc.) anziehen expect, erwarten chat, talk, plaudern reap, schneiben disturb, interrupt, stören try, persuchen last, continue, mahren American, der Amerifaner physician, doctor, der Arzt\* beggar-woman, die Bettlerin steam-engine, die Dampf= maschine

Englishman, ber Engländer naught, cipher; zero, die Mull shoemaker, der Schuhmacher proverb, das Sprichwort studying, bas Studieren lesson, die Stunde bunch of grapes, die Traube thermometer, der or das Ther: mome'ter overcoat, der Überzieher as far as, bis nach dangerous(ly), aefährlich sour, sauer

- Idioms: 1. A doctor has been sent for, Man hat einen Argt holen laffen.
  - 2. Every other day (every alternate day), Ginen Tag um ben andern.
  - 3. Every week, Alle acht Tage.
  - 4. I should think so! Das follte ich meinen!
  - 5. In the right way, Auf die richtige Beife (acc.).

#### EXERCISE XXXV.

A. 1. Der Telegraph foll von einem Amerikaner erfunden worden fein. 2. "Wer im Sommer nicht mag schneiben, muß im Winter hunger leiden," heißt ein teutsches Sprichwort. 3. Wolle nur, was du fannst, so wirst du fonnen, was du willst. 4. Nächste Woche follen wir einen Feiertag haben, wenn bis Sonnabend fleifig ftudiert wird. 5. Marie wollte ihre Leftion in einer halben Stunde lernen, aber sie hat es nicht gekonnt. 6. Wir würden alle glücklicher leben. wenn wir immer thaten, was wir thun follten. 7. Ich werde bie

Leftion nie lernen können. 8. Du wirft fie lernen können, wenn bu es nur auf die richtige Weise versuchft. 9. Man barf nicht in ber Schule plaudern; das ftort den Lehrer und die Schüler. 10. Beshalb hat Aschenputtels Bater ben Baum umhauen laffen? 11. Sollte Herr B. während meiner Abwesenheit kommen, so laffen Sie ihn auf mich warten. 12. Ich möchte nur wissen, warum Georg auf fich warten läßt! 13. Ich mochte Gie nicht ftoren, aber fagen Gie mir gefälligft, wie biefer Cat auf Englisch beißt. 14. George Bater foll gefährlich frank fein ; man hat zwei Arzte holen laffen. 15. Der Bogel wollte eben bom Baume fliegen, als ber Jäger ihn ichof. 16. Guten Morgen, Berr Braun, mein Bater läßt Ihnen fagen, daß er Gie heute Abend erwartet. 17. Sabe ich Sie fagen hören, daß Sie jeden Tag eine deutsche Stunde nehmen? 18. Nein, ich nehme einen Tag um ben andern eine Stunde. 19. Was mich betrifft, fo mochte ich lieber alle brei Tage meine Stunden nehmen. 20. Das follte ich meinen, benn Gie wurden mehr Zeit jum Studieren haben. 21. Chrlich mahrt am längsten, und Unrecht schlägt feinen eigenen Berrn.

B. 1. Let us take a walk; I cannot work any longer. 2. The beggar-woman, who has just asked us for money, says that she is (claims to be) a hundred years old. 3. She is not quite so old, but she is said to be at least above (über + acc.) ninety years old. 4. The fox said: 'The grapes are sour; I do not like them.' 5. The fox said the grapes were sour, and that he did not like them. 6. Might I ask you how far you are going? As far as Montreal. 7. Should I put on my overcoat? 8. I should think so! The thermometer is (stands) below zero. 9. Is it true that this traveller knows three languages? It may be [so], but I do not believe it. 10. If you should see little Freddy up-stairs, let him come to me. 11. By which shoemaker do you have your shoes made? 12. The steam-engine is said to have been invented by an Englishman. 13. Lazy boys learn only because they are obliged

to learn. 14. He must have been very ill, as (ba) he is still so weak. 15. This house is said to have cost four thousand dollars, but I should not like to give two thousand for it. 16. He has not been able to come on account of the storm, otherwise he would be here already.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Möchten Sie nicht eine Reise nach Europa machen?
2. Gehen Sie alle Tage nach der Stadt, oder nur alle zwei Tage? 3. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie nicht mehr studieren können? 4. Wer soll das Telephon erfunden haben? 5. Hat man einen Arzt holen lassen? 6. Haben Sie das Geld bezahlen müssen?

### LESSON XXXVI.

#### COMPOUND VERBS.

203. The Prefixes of Compound Verbs may be either Inseparable or Separable.

## 204. A. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: The omission of ge- in the P. Part.

The prefixes be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, her-, zer-, miß-, wider- are always inseparable and unaccented, the principal accent falling on the verb.

REMARKS.— 1. The particle miß-varies in usage, as shown in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 209, 1, below.

2. Remarks on the force and meaning of these particles are given in Part III.

## 205. B. SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: 1. The Prefix is separated from the Verb only in Simple Tenses and Principal (including Direct Interrogative and Imperative) Sentences.

- 2. The ge- of the P. Part. and zu of the Infin. come between prefix and verb.
  - 3. The principal accent is on the prefix.

# 206. The Separable Prefixes are:

- 1. The simple prepositional and other adverbs, nb-, an-, anf-, ans-, etc.; ba(r)-, fort-, empor-, her-, hin-, etc.
- 2. The compound adverbs, such as: bavon-, bazu-, etc.; boran-, boraus-, etc.; entgegen-, entzwei-, zurud-, etc.

Notes.— I. Observe that these compound adverbs are all accented on the *second* syllable.

2. The use of the compound prefixes with her- and hin- is defined in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 210, below.

### Examples of Verbs with Prefixes.

(a) Simple	(b) Inseparable	(c) Separable
Verbs.	Compounds.	Compounds.
gehen, go	vergehen, pass away	ausgehen, go out zurückgehen, go back
reißen, tear	zerreißen, tear to pieces	
fommen,	bekommen, obtain	entgegenkommen, come
come		to meet
finden, find	erfinden, invent	ausfinden, find out

Other Separable Prefixes are:

- 3. Substantives, forming one idea with the verb,
  - (a) as objects of the verb, as:

achtgeben, pay attention (attend); baufsagen, return thanks (thank); stattsinden, take place (occur); teilnehmen, take part (interest one's self).

Note.—The substantives in these combinations are usually spelt with a small letter, and written in one word with the verb when they procede it.

(b) with prepositions (= adverbial phrases), as:

sich in Acht nehmen (refl.), take care (be careful); zu Leide thun, injure, hurt; zu Stande bringen, complete; zu Stande kommen, be completed; im Stande sein, be able; zum Borickein kommen, make one's appearance (appear); zu Mute sein, feel.

REMARK.— These substantives occupy the same position in the sentence as separable prefixes, thus:

Ich habe auf sein Betragen achtgegeben,
I have observed his conduct.

Ich fagte ihm für seine Freundlichkeit bant,

Note. — Observe that in the above sentences the simple objects without preposition (adjt, bauf) follow the prepositional phrases (auf fein Breundlichfeit), contrary to rule, on account of their character as separable prefixes.

4. Adjectives as prefixes are usually separable, as:

freilassen, set free (liberate); festhalten, hold fast (detain); sich lossagen (resl.), renounce.

But many are inseparable, of which fuller particulars are given in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 212.

For boll- as prefix see § 208, below.

# 207. C. Double Prefixes.

- r. Separable + Separable prefix; these are compound adverbs, and both separable (see § 206, 2, above).
- 2. Separable + Inseparable; the former alone is separated, as:

an'erfennen, acknowledge, ich erfenne an (but see Suppl. Less. E., § 213).

3. Inseparable + Separable; both inseparable, as:

beauf'tragen, authorize, ich beauf'tragte ihn, I authorized him; beraustalten, arrange, ich beraustaltete bies, I arranged this.

Note. — These are really not compound but derivative verbs, from compound nouns (Auf'trag, Au'stalt); hence also the verb (as in the former example) is always weak, not strong — beaustragte, beaustragt.

### 208. D. PREFIXES SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

The prefixes burd, hinter, über, unter, um, voll are sometimes separable, sometimes inseparable. They are:

- (a) Separable as long as both prefix and verb retain more or less of their literal or concrete meaning;
- (b) Inseparable when both have lost this meaning, and form together one new idea. A compound of the same verb and prefix may therefore be both separable and inseparable according to its meaning, as in the following examples:
- (a) Separable and Literal.
  (Accent on Prefix, Trans. and Intr.)
  burth/reifen, pass (travel)
  through, as:
- Er ist gestern hier burch'gereist, He passed through here yesterday.

# hin'tergehen, go behind

ii'hersehen (tr. or intr.), cross; jump over, ferry across, as:

Er seste mit einem Sprunge über, He jumped over at a bound.

Fährmann, bitte, feten Sie mich über, Ferryman, please ferry me across.

- (b) Inseparable and Figurative.
  (Accent on Verb, always Trans.)
  burthrei'ien, traverse, travel
  over, as:
- Er hat das ganze Land durchs reist, He has traversed (travelled over) the whole country.

hinterge'hen, deceive, as:

Er hinterging' seinen Freund, He deceived his friend.

überset/en, translate, as:

Ich überset/e ein beutsches Buch, I am translating a German book. un'terschreiben, write under, subscribe, as:

Schreiben Sie Ihren Namen hier unter, Subscribe your name here.

um'gehen, go round, as:
Sie müffen um'gehen, You must
go round.

voll'gießen, pour full, as: Er goß das Glas voll, He poured the glass full. unterichrei'ben, sign, as:

Ich habe ben Brief noch nicht unterschriesben, I have not yet signed the letter.

umge'hen, evade, as:

Man umging' das Gefet, They evaded the law.

vollen'den, complete, as:

Ich habe meine Arbeit vollen'det, I have completed my work.

Notes.— I. These separable prepositional prefixes are only rarely used with the verbs given above, except as *prepositions* proper, governing a case, as:

Er ging hinter den Dien (um das Haus), He went behind the stove (around the house).

- 2. The adverb wieder is separable, except in wiederho'fen, repeat (but wie berhofen, fetch again).
- 3. Many compounds with these prefixes are used as inseparable compounds only; others as separable only.

### VOCABULARY.

to meet with, an'treffen give up, auf'geben cease, stop, auf'hören open, auf'maden leave out, omit, aus'lassen pronounce, aus'sprechen assist, aid, bei'stehen go away, fort'gehen come out, heraus'fommen come in, herein'fommen set (of the sun, etc.), un'ters
gehen
read to, vor'lesen (+ dat. of
leave, verlassen [pers.)
promise, versprechen
present', introduce, vor'stellen
(+ acc. and dat.)
go past, pass by, vorbei'gehen
close, shut, zu'machen
come back, zurück'fommen

collide, zusam'menstoßen
send to, zu'schiden (+ dat.)
coffee, ber Kaffee
Northern Railway, die Nord's
eisenbahn
slave, der Sklave

marriage (-ceremony), die Trauung pale, bleich by heart, aus'wendig since, seitdem' (adv. and conj.) closed, shut (predicate), zu

even if, wenn ... auch

- Idioms: 1. What is the matter with him? Was hat er?
  - 2. He feels ill, Ihm ift schlecht zu Mute; or: Es ift ihm schlecht zu Mute.
  - 3. To translate into German, 3us Teutiche überfeben.
  - 4. In fine weather, Bei iconem Wetter.
  - 5. If you please, Wenn ich bitten barf (lit., If I may ask).

#### EXERCISE XXXVI.

A. 1. Bergiß nicht, das Kenster zuzumachen, wenn du bas Rimmer verläßt. 2. Das man aufschiebt, fommt felten zu Stande. 3. Rönnen Gie mir fagen, wie diefes Wort auf Deutsch ausge= sprochen wird? 4. Meine Schwestern famen mir entgegen, aber leider haben fie mich nicht angetroffen. 5. Biele haben versprochen. uns beizusteben, aber nur wenige haben uns wirklich beigestanden. 6. Wir sind jett mit dem ersten Teile des Buches beinahe fertig; nächste Woche fangen wir an, den zweiten Teil zu übersetzen. 7. Amei Züge find auf der Nordeisenbahn zusammengestoßen. 8. 3ch hörte auf zu fingen, weil ich heiser wurde. 9. Mein Bater machte ben Brief auf und las denselben der Familie vor. 10. Wer ein= mal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht, und wenn er auch die Wahrheit spricht. 11. Haben Sie die Zeitung bekommen, die ich Ihnen aus ber Stadt zugeschickt habe? 12. Effen Sie gewöhnlich in der Stadt 3u Mittag? 13. Ja wohl, ich gehe jeden Tag um neun Uhr fort und komme erft um feche Ilhr zurück. 14. Mancher hat angefangen, was er nicht vollendet hat. 15. Unsere Nachbarn müssen wohl fort sein, denn alle Laden sind bei ihnen zu. 16. Kommen Gie boch herein; ich will Sie Berrn Braun vorstellen. 17. Ich danke vielmals, aber ich bin ihm ichon vorgestellt worden. 18. Bei schönem Wetter gehen wir unserm Nater entgegen, wenn er nach Hause kommt. 19. Findet die Trauung Ihres Betters morgen oder übermorgen statt? 20. Wollen Sie eine Tasse Thee? Geben Sie mir lieber eine Tasse Kassee.

B. 1. The Reformation took place in the sixteenth century. 2. Have you closed all the doors and windows? 3. What is the matter with you? You look so pale. 4. I do not know; since I have come back, I do not feel at all well. 5. In the year 1865 all slaves in the United States were set free. 6. Have you opened the letters which have just arrived? 7. The sun sets earlier now, and the weather begins to grow colder. 8. Mary is learning a poem by heart; she has already repeated it ten times. 9. Have you found out at what o'clock the meeting takes place? 10. Do you know the gentleman who has just gone past? 11. When we were going past the church, the people were just coming out. 12. Pay attention to your work; you always leave out words, when you are copying. 13. Why have you closed the window? I was beginning to catch cold. 14. I have tried to learn this poem, but it is too hard for me, and I have given it up at last. 15. Goethe's 'Faust' has been translated into English by Bayard Taylor 16. The marriage of my brother takes place to-morrow at eleven o'clock.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. In welchem Jahre wurden die Sklaven in den Vereinigten Staaten freigelassen? 2. Lernst du gern Gedichte auswendig? 3. Glauben Sie, dass unsere Nachbarn fort sind? 4. Kennen Sie den Mann, der am Hause vorbeigeht? 5. Wer hat diesen Brief aufgemacht? 6. Wie sprechen Sie das Wort G-o-e-t-h-e aus?

### SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON E.

#### ON CERTAIN PREFIXES.

# 209. THE INSEPARABLE PREFIX miß-.

The particle miß- is inseparable, but:

- (a) With certain verbs it takes the gc- of the P. Part. and zu of the Infin. after it, as:
  - miß'handeln, act amiss miß'gehandelt miß'zuhandeln

With other verbs miß- either:

- (b) Has ge- before it, as:
  mißhan'deln, ill-treat P. Part. gemiß'handelt or:
- (c) Drops ge- altogether, as:
  mißsal'sen, displease P. Part. mißsal'sen

Note. - Observe that the principal accent:

- under (a) is on the prefix throughout:
  - " (b) is on the prefix in the P. Part. only, otherwise on the verb;
  - 66 (c) is on the verb throughout.

# 210. Use of the Prefixes her- and hin-.

1. The particles her ('hither') and him ('hence') are prefixed to verbs, both simple and compound, to indicate the direction towards or from the speaker respectively, as:

Rommen Sie her, Come here (hither, to me).

Gehen Sie hin, Go (there) thither (hence, from me).

Hence, a person standing up-stairs would say to one below:

Rommen Sie herauf, Come up here (up-stairs);

but to one up-stairs:

Behen Sie himunter, Go down there (down-stairs).

2. The simple prepositional adverbs ab, an, aui, aui, aui, nicher, über, unter, um, bar are only used with verbs of motion, when the compound verb denotes motion in a general way, without specified direction, or when it has lost the idea of motion altogether.

- 3. (a) When, with aug-and nor-, also with au-in the sense of 'down,' the place from which the motion proceeds is implied, but not specified, the direction to or from the speaker is further indicated by prefixing her- and hin- respectively.
  - (b) When, with the remaining prefixes (an-, auf-, etc.), the place to which the motion is directed is implied, but not specified, heror hin- is similarly prefixed.
- 4. The following examples will serve to show more clearly the difference between verbs with the simple prefixes and those with her- or hin-:
  - (a) With Simple Prefix:

ausgehen, go out (for a walk, on business, etc.)

borgiehen, prefer absteigen, dismount anfommen, arrive

übergehen, desert perish untergehen, set (of the sun); sink; hinuntergehen, go down (stairs, etc.)

### (b) With her- or hin-:

hinausachen, go out (from the house)

hervorzichen, draw forth herabsteigen, descend heranfommen, come up to, ap-

proach

hinübergehen, go over, across

5. When the place from or to which respectively is specified, these words are used as prepositions proper, governing a substantive, but may be repeated as adverbial prefixes with her or hin, as:

> Er ging aus bem Bimmer (hinaus). Er jog ben Brief aus der Tafche (heraus).

Notes. - 1. 21b-, meaning 'off, away,' does not require these prefixes, as: abreifen, abgehen, to depart, go off; - but: hinabgehen, to go down.

2. Gin-is replaced, when the place to which is specified, by the preposition in with the accusative, as:

Er ritt in bie Stabt binein.

3. Sometimes other prepositions are used to indicate the place from or to which, in which case the compound prefix is used, as:

> Ich werbe nach Europa hinübergeben, I shall go over to Europe. Er ift vom Dache herabgefallen, He has fallen down from the roof.

### OTHER PREFIXES.

211. Verbs derived from compound substantives are treated as simple Verbs, as:

> Das Früh'stüd, the breakfast, früh'stüden, to breakfast; ich früh's ftüdte, gefrüh'ftüdt.

Die Hand'habe, the handle, hand'haben, to handle; hand'habte, gehand'habt.

Der Nat'schlagt, the counsel, rat'schlagen, to take counsel; rat's schlagte, gerat'schlagt.

Note.— Observe that all such verbs are weak, as in the case of the last two of the above verbs, which are not compounds of haben or ichlagen respectively.

212. Adjective Prefixes are frequently inseparable, but retain the principal accent and require ge-before them in the P. Part., as:

weiß'sagen, to prophesy, weiß'sagte, geweißlagt; recht'fertigen, to justify, recht'fertigte, gerecht'fertigt; lieb'fosen, to caress, lieb'foste, gelieb'fost;

also the substantive compound:

luft'wandeln, to walk for pleasure, geluft'wandelt.

213. Some verbs with Separable + Inseparable Prefix are used only in constructions which do not require the separation of the former particle from the verb; thus we may say:

Christus ist auserstanden, Christ is risen from the dead, - or: Mis Christus auserstand, - but instead of:

Er erstand auf, — we say: Er ftand bon ben Soten auf. Similarly with ausersesen, porenthalten, and a few others.

#### EXERCISE E.

1. Have you answered all the letters? I have answered all except this one. 2. I have asked my sister, if (whether) she is ready, but she has not answered. 3. She has gone up-stairs; perhaps she has not heard. 4. Let her come down, for I cannot wait for her any longer. 5. I should like to speak to your father; is he at home? 6. Yes, he is up-stairs in his study; please go up. 7. Some one is shouting in the street; go out and see what is the matter. 8. Are you going out to-day? I am going out, as soon as I have breakfasted. 9. George, go out of the room; you have been behaving badly. 10. Many people say that Mr. B. has acted amiss in this affair, but he has justified himself. 11. We started so early yesterday morning that we had no time to breakfast. 12. Several people were standing on (auf) the street before a burning house, and were looking up. 13. A poor woman with her child was on the point of jumping down. 14. At last a fireman went up and saved both [of them]. 15. The boy has abused his dog, and therefore he was punished by his father. 16. The dog was howling in the street, but some one went out and brought him in.

### LESSON XXXVII.

### REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

### REFLEXIVE VERBS.

- 214. 1. All Reflexive Verbs are conjugated with haben. For an example of their conjugation see § 41, and observe the use of fin as special reflexive of the third person for all genders and both numbers.
- 2. The reflexive pronoun is introduced as near to the beginning of the sentence as possible, sometimes even before the subject, when the latter follows the verb and is not a pronoun, and especially if the subject has adjuncts, as:

Geftern bat fich mein lieber, alter Bater beschädigt. My dear old father injured himself vesterday.

- 215. 1. Any transitive verb may be used reflexively, when the action of the verb is on the subject; but Reflexive Verbs proper are:
  - (a) Those which are used only reflexively, especially such as indicate a state of mind or feeling, as:

sich befleißen (gen.),) apply

- befleißigen. one's self
- begnügen (mit), be contented
- besinnen (gen.), recollect
- " erbarmen (gen.), take pity, have mercy
- " erfälten, catch cold

fich grämen (gen., or über + acc.), grieve

- " schämen (gen., or über+ acc.), be ashamed
- " sehnen (nach), long (for), yearn
- " wundern (über + acc.), be astonished
- (b) Those which, though used also as transitive verbs. have a special meaning as reflexives, as:

freuen (impers.), rejoice (tr.), fich freuen (gen., or über + acc.), make glad

rejoice (intr.), be glad

fürchten, fear

hüten, protect stellen, place verlassen, leave

jutragen, carry (to)

sich fürchten (vor + dat.), be

- " hüten (vor + dat.), beware
- " ftellen, pretend
- " berlassen (auf + acc.), rely (upon)
- " zutragen (impers.) happen, occur
- 2. Transitive verbs are often used in English with the direct (personal) object unexpressed, e. g., 'change, turn, open, spread,' etc.; such verbs have the object expressed in German as the reflexive pronoun, e. g.:

The weather has changed, Das Wetter hat sich geändert.

The wind is turning to the east, Der Wind dreht sich nach Often.

The door opened, Die Thur öffnete fich.

The disease was spreading over the whole town, Die Krankheit verbreitete sich über die ganze Stadt.

- 3. For the use of Reflexive Verbs for the Passive Voice, see § 114, (b).
- 4. From what has been said above, it will be evident that Reflexive Verbs are used to a much greater extent in German than in English, which indeed has no Reflexive Verbs in the strict sense defined above.

### 216. GOVERNMENT OF REFLEXIVE VERBS.

1. All true reflexives take the reflexive (personal) object in the accusative; the remote object (the thing) is in the genitive, or is governed by a preposition, as shown in the examples given in § 215, 1, above, thus:

Ich schäme mich meines Betragens, I am ashamed of my behaviour.

Erinnerst du bid bessen nicht? Do you not remember it? Wir sehnten uns nach unserer Mutter, We longed for our mother.

Ich erbarmte mich feiner, I had pity upon him.

- 2. Some spurious reflexives have the reflexive (personal) object in the dative, and the thing in the accusative, as:
  - Ican imagine that.
  - 3th bilbete mir dies nur ein, I only imagined this.

Note. — Sid, idmeidsein takes the dative of the person with a clause as direct object, thus:

Id schneichelte mir, daß ich es thun könnte, I flattered myself, that I could do it.

### 217. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs Proper are those used only in the third person sing., with the neuter pronoun cost as subject.

- 1. Those expressing Natural phenomena, as:
- es schneit, it snows

es blitt, it lightens

es regnet, it rains

es bonnert, it thunders, etc.

also with the verbs sein or werden, as:

Es ift (wird) falt, warm, bunkel, etc., It is (grows) cold, warm, dark, etc.

Es ist (schlägt) fünf, It is (strikes) five.

- 2. Those expressing bodily or mental affections
  - (a) with accusative of person.
    - Es friert mich, I am (feel) cold.
    - Es verlangt mich (nach), I am (feel) desirous.
    - Es freut mich, I am glad (it rejoices me).
    - Es wundert mich, I wonder (it makes me wonder).

- Es jammert mich (gen.), I pity (it moves me to pity).
- Es reut mich (gen.), I repent (it rues me), etc.
- (b) with Dative of person.
  - Es bünft (beucht) mir, Methinks.
  - Es gelingt mir, I succeed, etc.
- (c) with sein or werden (Dative of person), as:
  - Es ist (wird) mir übel, wohl (zu Mute), I feel ill, well (it is ill, well to or with me in spirit).
  - Cs ist mir lieb, seib, I am glad, sorry (it is dear, sad to me).

NOTE. — In this class of verbs the subject es is omitted when the personal object precedes the verb, as: mid wundert, etc.

3. Verbs used impersonally with a special sense, as:

Wie steht's mit Ihnen? How fares it with you?

Es geht mir gut, I am well.

Was giebt's? What is the matter?

Bas fehlt Ihnen? What ails you?

Also sein and werden, as under 1 and 2, (c), above.

4. For the impersonal use of the passive voice, see § 113.

NOTE. — Of the above classes, those alone are strictly impersonal which admit only of eð as subject; others, which are used with other subjects, but only in the third person (sometimes plur. as well as sing.) are properly called unipersonal.

### 218. Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs.

- r. Impersonal Verbs form their various tenses, moods, etc., in precisely the same way as other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular.
  - 2. Some are weak, others strong, as:

frieren, to freeze, Impf. es fror, gefroren; schneien, to snow, Impf. es schneite, P. Part. geschneit.

3. Most of them are conjugated with haben, as:

Es hat geschneit, gefroren, etc.;

but some take sein, e. g., gelingen, glücken, to succeed; geschehen, to happen (compare § 53), as:

Es ift geschehen, It has happened.

### 219. GOVERNMENT OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- r. Impersonal Verbs expressing bodily or mental affections, etc., take the immediate (personal) object (= Engl. subj.) in the *Dative* or *Accusative* (see § 217, 2, 3, above).
- 2. Those under § 217, 2, (a), denoting a mental affection may be used
  - (a) impersonally, with the thing (cause of emotion) in the genitive, as:
    - Es jammert mich seiner, I pity him (it moves me to pity of him).
    - Es reuet mich meiner Sünden, I repent (it makes me repent) of my sins.
  - (b) personally, with the thing (cause of emotion) as subject, as:

Er jammert mich, I pity him (he moves me to pity).

Meine Sünden reuen (pl.) mich, I repent of my sins (my sins move me to repentance).

REMARK. — Observe that the English subject is object in German, the verb remaining always in the third person, as:

Es freut mich, I am glad.

Es freut bich, Thou art glad.

Es freut ihn, He is glad.

Es freut uns, We are glad, etc.

# 220. THERE IS, THERE ARE, etc.

- r. The English there is, there are (was, were, has been, will be, etc.) must be rendered in German by co giebt (gab, hat... gegeben, wirb... geben, etc.), when an indefinite existence is expressed, or in general assertions, as:
  - Es gab früher viele Leute, welche glaubten, etc., There were formerly many people who believed, etc.
  - Es wird dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen geben, There will be a great many plums this year.

REMARKS. — 1. The English subject is object of giebt in German, and is in the accusative, as:

- Es giebt einen Noman (acc.) von Didens, welcher "Nifolas Nickleby" heißt, There is a novel (nom.) by Dickens, called 'Nicholas Nickleby.'
- 2. The verb (geben) is always in the *singular* in German, being a true impersonal; and es is never omitted, as:

Dieses Jahr giebt es, etc.

- 2. There is, etc., must be rendered into German by es iff, es find (es war, etc.), when definite existence is expressed, or in particular assertions, as:
  - Es ist ein Bogel in diesem Bauer, There is a bird in this cage.
  - Es find zwei Bögel auf diesem Baume, There are two birds on this tree.

REMARKS. — 1. The English subject is also subject (nominative) in German, as:

Es ist ein Noman (nom.) von Dickens auf dem Tisch, There is a novel (nom.) by Dickens on the table.

2. The verb (sein) agrees in number with the *real* subject, and es is omitted, unless it begins the sentence, as:

Ein Bogel ift in diesem Bauer, There is a bird, etc.

NOTE. — This shows that es is the *indefinite* es, replacing the real subject (see § 39, 1), and not the impersonal es.

#### VOCABULARY.

to dress (trans.), an'fleiden
dress (intr.), sich ankleiden
resolve, decide, sich entschließen
explain, erklären
be mistaken, sich irren
turn around (intr.), sich um's
brehen
get married, marry (intr.), sich
verhei'raten
marry (trans.), hei'raten
hurt (wound), verleßen

lightning, ber Blit thirst, ber Durst lemonade, die Limonade caterpillar, die Kaupe sleighing, die Schlittenbahn way, mode, die Weise successful(ly), glücklich now-a-days, heutzutage long (adv.), längst past, vorbei in all ages, zu allen Zeiten

Idioms: 1. I feel well, Mir ift wohl zu Mute.

- 2. He has married the daughter of the doctor, Er hat sich mit der Tochter des Doktors verheiratet.
- 3. In this way, Muf biefe Beife (acc.).
- 4. I was hungry (thirsty), Ich hatte Bunger (Durft).

#### EXERCISE XXXVII.

A. 1. Es donnert, und ich fürchte, es wird bald regnen. 2. Um wie viel Uhr wird bei Ihnen zu Mittag gegessen? 3. Es hat während der Nacht gefroren und heute werden wir Schlittschuh laufen können. 4. Weshalb donnert es, wenn es blitt? Das läßt sich nicht leicht erklären. 5. Ich habe meinen besten Hund verloren; so ein Hund sindet sich nicht leicht wieder. 6. Es freut uns sehr, daß Heinrich sein Examen glücklich bestanden hat. 7. Ich sürchte, es wird dieses Jahr nur wenige Üpfel geben; die Raupen haben fast alle Blätter von den Bäumen gefressen. 8. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun; giebt's heute etwas Neues? 9. Mein ältester Bruder hat sich verheiratet. 10. Mit wem hat er sich verheiratet? 11. Mit der Tochter des Doktor B.; erinnern Sie sich

nicht ihrer? 12. Schmeicheln Sie sich, daß es Ihnen auf diese Weise gelingen wird? Sie haben nicht Gelb genug. 13. Ich habe viel mehr Geld als ich brauche; ich würde mich mit der Hälfte begnügt haben. 14. Es würde mich gar nicht wundern, wenn wir noch heute Regen bekämen. 15. Als ich an dem Hause vorüberzging, öffnete sich die Thür, und ein alter Herr kam heraus. 16. Dich friert; du solltest deinen Überzieher anziehen. 17. Es waren noch diese Leute auf der Straße, als ich nach Hause kam. 18. Es wird dich bald deines Betragens reuen, wenn ich mich nicht irre; du solltest dich schwens. 19. Es giebt heutzutage Thoren, und leider hat es zu allen Zeiten Thoren gegeben. 20. Sie können sich denken, daß es mich wunderte, als ich mich umdrehte und meinen längst versornen Freund vor mir sah.

B. 1. Are you afraid when it lightens? 2. Yes, I am always afraid of the lightning. 3. What is the matter with you? You do not look at all well. 4. I do not know what ails me; I do not feel well, perhaps I have caught cold. 5. It has been snowing the whole night, and to-day we have fine sleighing. 6. Have you hurt yourself? Yes, I have cut my finger. 7. There are two gentlemen at the door; do you know them? 8. I know one of them, but I cannot remember his name. 9. I must dress immediately, or else I shall not be ready at seven o'clock. 10. If you do not dress more warmly, you will catch cold. 11. I am thirsty; please give me a glass of lemonade. 12. I am glad that the thunder-storm is past; the lightning is dangerous. 13. Do you remember whether he was here on the 15th or on the 16th of January? 14. Have you decided to leave (the) town, and to pass the summer in the country? 15. I hear somebody shouting in the street; what is the matter?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Sollte man sich vor dem Donner fürchten? 2. Wie lange wohnen Sie schon in dieser Strasze? 3. Stehen Sie

gewöhnlich früh des Morgens auf? 4. Weshalb hast du die Fenster zugemacht? 5. Wie gefällt es Ihnen in diesem Hause? 6. Wird es dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen geben?

### LESSON XXXVIII.

#### PREPOSITIONS.

221. The Prepositions with the Dative only have been given in §§ 46, 51; those with the Accusative only in §§ 34, 50; those with Dative or Accusative in § 65.

### PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE.

222. The Prepositions governing the Genitive are chiefly nouns used adverbially. The following lines contain the principal ones, and will aid the memory:

Unweit, mittelst, frast und während, Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet, Oberhalb und unterhalb, Innerhalb und außerhalb, Diesseit, jenseit, halben, wegen, Statt, auch längs, zufolge, trotz Stehen mit dem Genitiv; Doch ist hier nicht zu vergessen, Daß bei diesen letzten drei Auch der Dativ richtig sei.

223. The meanings of these prepositions are as follows:

1. halb(en), halber, for the sake of, on account of 2. wegen,

REMARKS.—1. Halber, halber, always follows the case; wegen may follow or precede a noun, but always follows a personal pronoun.

2. Galb is used only in beshalb and weshalb; halben after the personal pronouns or substantives with a determinative or attributive word; halber after a substantive used alone, as:

Des Friedens halben, For the sake of peace. Beispiels halber, For the sake of example.

3. The personal pronouns have a special form ending in -t before halben and wegen, thus:

meinethalben, for my sake unsertwegen, on our account, etc.

- 3. außerhalb, (on the) outside of
- 5. oberhalb, above 6. unterhalb, below
- 4. innerhalb, (on the) inside of

### EXAMPLES:

Unser Garten ist außerhalb (innerhalb) der Stadt, Our garden is outside (inside) of the town. Montreal liegt unterhalb des Ontario=Sees, Montreal lies below Lake Ontario.

Remark. — Innerhalb in expressions of time may be tollowed by the dative of a substantive without article, as:

Innerhalb zwei Tagen, Within two days.

- 7. fraft, by virtue of
- 8. Iaut, in accordance with
- 9. (ver)mittelft, ) by means
- 10. bermöge, 5 of
- 11. zufolge, in consequence of

REMARK. — Bufolge governs the genitive when it precedes its case, but the dative when it follows, as:

Er that dies zufolge meines Vefehls, or meinem Befehle zufolge, He did this in consequence of my order.

12. biesseit, on this side

13. jenseit, on that (the other) side

REMARK. — Dießseit and jenseit are prepositions (governing a noun); bießseitß and jenseitß adverbs (without a case), as:

Ich wohne diesseit, er jenseit des Flusses, I live on this, he on that (the other) side of the river, — but:

Wir wohnen beibe nahe am Flusse; ich biesseits, er jensseits, We both live near the river; I on this, he on the other side.

# 14. flatt, anflatt, instead of

REMARK. — Anstatt is sometimes divided, thus:

Anstatt meines Brubers, Instead of my brother, — or: An meines Brubers Statt, (In my brother's stead).

15. ungeachtet, notwithstand- 16. trot, in spite of ing

REMARKS. — I. Ungeachtet may precede or follow its case.

2. Trop governs the dative in the phrase tropbem, 'in spite of that,' and with the meaning of 'as well as,' as:

Diefer Anabe reitet trot einem Manne, This boy rides as well as a man.

17. während, during

18. längs, 19. entlang, along

REMARKS.— 1. Längs also governs the dative, and always precedes its case, as:

Längs des Ufers, or dem Ufer, Along the shore.

2. Entlang governs the *genitive* when it precedes its case; but it more commonly *follows* its case, and governs the *accu-sative*, as:

Er ging den Flug entlang, He went along the river.

To these may be added:

20. angesichts, in presence of 22. um... willen, for the sake 21. inmitten, in the midst of

Remarks.— 1. Um... willen takes the case between um and willen, as:

Um meines Baters willen, For my father's sake.

2. The personal pronouns have the same forms with um... willen as with halben and wegen, thus:

um seinetwillen, for his sake um Ihretwillen, for your sake, etc.

23. unfern, } not far from 24. unweit, }

### 224. GENERAL REMARKS ON PREPOSITIONS.

r. An Adverb of direction is frequently placed after an accusative, like a preposition after its case, as:

Den Berg hinauf, Up the mountain.

2. (a) Some prepositions may govern a substantive clause with baß, as:

Ehre Bater und Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe,

Honour father and mother, that it may go well with thee.

Notes.—1. Such are auf, außer (also used with wenn), bis, ohne, (an)siatt, ungeachtet, während.

- 2. Bis, ungeachtet, mahrend are also used as conjunctions without bag.
  - (b) Um, ohne, and (an) statt may govern an infinitive with zu, as:

Er kam gestern, um dich zu besuchen, He came vesterday (in order) to visit you.

Ich kann nie baran benken, ohne zu lachen,

I can never think of that without laughing.

Dieser Mann sollte arbeiten, anstatt zu betteln, This man ought to work, instead of begging.

REMARK. — But if the subject of the infinitive clause is different from that of the sentence on which it depends, baß must be used, as:

- Ich fonnte nicht vorbeigehen, ohne daß er mich sah (not ohne mich zu sehen), I could not pass by without his seeing me.
- 3. Prepositions may govern adverbs, as:  $n\alpha dy$  oben, upward;  $n\alpha dy$  hinten, to the rear; auf immer, forever; bon fern, from afar; and the compounds with  $b\alpha(r)$  and  $b\alpha(r)$  (see § 38, Rem. 5; 83, 3; 96, 7).
- 4. A substantive governed by a preposition may be followed by an adverb, for nearer definition, as:

Rach einer Richtung hin, In one direction.

Bon allen Seiten her, From all sides.

Er ritt hinter bem Feinde her, He rode in pursuit of

Um bas Haus herum, Round (about) the house.

You nun an, From henceforth.

Bon Jugend auf, From youth up.

### VOCABULARY.

to observe, remark, bemerken elect, erwählen (+ zu)
permit, allow, erlauben inquire (about), sich erkundigen (+ nach)
go about, around, herum'gehen ring (a small bell), klingeln go for a walk, spazieren gehen divide, teilen let (of houses, etc.), bermieten go away, weggehen the opposite, das Ge'genteil custom, habit, die Gewohnheit microscope, das Mikroskop'

(the) little Red (Riding)
Hood, das Notfäppchen
umbrella, der Negenschirm
drop, der Tropsen
drunkard, der Trunsenbold
will, testament, das Testament'
stairs, staircase, die Treppe
deceased, der (die) Verstorbene
warning, die Warnung
living, leben'vig
loose, slack, los
in\_time, punctually, recht'=
geitig
except that, außer daß

#### Idioms : 1. For all I care, Meinetwegen.

- 2. This house is for sale, Diejes Saus ift zu berkaufen (lit., to bo sold).
- 3. He was elected mayor, Er wurde jum Bürgermeister erwählt (lit., to or for a, etc., jum = ju einem).
- 4. I have been here for a week, 36 bin feit acht Tagen hier.
- 5. To laugh (at), make sport (of), Sich luftig machen (über + acc.).
- 6. What is the matter? 2348 ift los?
- 7. There is a ring (at the door, etc.), &s flingelt.

#### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

A. 1. Das haus, welches zu verkaufen ift, steht außerhalb ber Stadt, nicht weit vom See. 2. Wenn es nur innerhalb der Stadt ftunde, so wurde ich gern tausend Thaler mehr bafür geben. 3. Gefällt es Ihnen besser diesseit des Flusses zu wohnen, oder jenseits? 4. Trots bes Sturmes kam bas Schiff rechtzeitig in New Nork an. 5. Dieser Trunkenbold hat um seiner Familie willen das Trinken aufgegeben. 6. Er fürchtete, daß feine Söhne die schlechte Gewohn= heit lernen möchten. 7. Der hungrige Wolf ging mehrmals um das Haus und fuchte Rotkappchen. 8. Vermittelft feines großen Ginfluffes bei den Reichen hat sich Serr A. zum Bürgermeister erwählen lassen. 9. Seit wann wohnen Sie in dieser Straße? Seit drei Jahren. 10. Um meinetwillen will er nicht mit mir gehen; vielleicht würde er um Ihretwillen geben. 11. Ift Georg oben? Ja, er ift foeben die Treppe hinaufgegangen. 12. Lassen Sie uns lieber nach oben geben; es wird uns besser gefallen oben zu sitzen als unten. 13. Es hat vor einigen Minuten geklingelt; wer war da? 14. Es war jemand, der sich erkundigen wollte, ob dieses haus zu vermieten fei. 15. Dem Testamente zufolge wurde das Eigentum unter die beiben Söhne bes Verstorbenen geteilt. 16. Meinetwegen mag er gehen, sobald es ihm gefällt. 17. Außer daß Georg ein wenig arößer ist, bemerkt man aar keinen Unterschied zwischen den beiden Brüdern. 18. Berr D. ift einer meiner besten Freunde; er geht fast nie am hause vorüber ohne hereinzukommen. 19. Unweit ber Stadt B. steht bas haus, worin ich geboren bin.

B. 1. I shall take my stick instead of my umbrella; I am not afraid of the rain. 2. Have you been taking a walk along the shore? Yes, in spite of the bad road. 3. Not far from the school I let my new knife fall into the snow, and could not find it again. 4. Do you know what was the matter? I heard a great noise down-stairs. 5. I do not know (it), but I shall inquire. 6. Were you allowed (perf.) to stay? No, we had (perf.) on the contrary to go away again immediately. 7. We have been here since vesterday, and we must wait three days more for the ship. 8. One part of the city lies on this side, the other on that side of a broad river. 9. I do not think much of this gentleman; he would do anything for money. 10. By means of a microscope living animals can be seen in a drop of water. 11. In consequence of this bad news we must be back inside of a week. 12. Should we make sport of other people? 13. No, that is a bad habit. 14. Yonder is the river; on this side stands my house, on that side his. 15. Notwithstanding the warning of his father the youth often went on the water in bad weather. 16. Instead of taking the large boat he always took the small one.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Weshalb hat der Trunkenbold das Trinken aufgegeben?
2. Auf welche Weise hat sich Herr B. zum Bürgermeister erwählen lassen?
3. Haben Sie klingeln hören? Wer war da?
4. Wo sind Sie geboren, und in welchem Jahre?
5. Fürchten Sie, es könnte regnen?
6. Kannst du mir sagen, was auf der Strasze los war?

### LESSON XXXIX.

### PREPOSITIONS (continued):-IDIOMS.

225. Prepositions vary more, perhaps, as to idiomatic usage in different languages than any other part of speech. Their proper use must be acquired chiefly by practice and memory, but below are given the German equivalents, in various idioms, of the most commonly occurring English Prepositions, more particularly in cases where the usage of the two languages differs.

#### 226.

#### About.

- (a) In the sense of 'around' = um, as:

  Sie versammesten sich um ihn, They assembled about him
- (b) Of time = ungefähr um (um alone = 'at'; see § 227, (b) 1, below), as:

Ungefähr um zehn Uhr, About ten o'clock. Ungefähr um Beihnachten, About Christmas.

- (c) In the sense of 'nearly' (of number) = etwa, ungesfähr (adverbs), as:
  - Er hat etwa (ungefähr) taufend Thaler übrig, He has about a thousand dollars left.
  - (d) In the sense of 'with,' 'about' (the *person*) = **bei**, as:

    3ch habe kein Geld **bei** mir, I have no money with
    me, about me.

#### 227.

### At.

- (a) Of locality:
  - ii. = iii, when the action, etc., is within a building, etc.,as:

In der Schule, in der Kirche, im Theater, im Konzert, At school, at church, at the theatre, at the concert.

2. = an, when the action, etc., is adjacent to the object of the preposition, as:

Am Fenster, an der Thur, am Tische, At the window, at the door, at the table (but hei Tische, at table).

3. = auf, when the action is on the surface, or on an elevation, as:

Auf bem Markte, auf bem Balle, auf ber Post, auf ber Universität, auf bem Schlosse, At market, at the ball, at the post-office, at the university, at the castle.

4. = zu or in with proper names of towns (also with home, 'home'), etc., as:

Zu (in) Paris, At Paris. Zu Hause, At home.

# (b) Of time:

1. = um (most usually), as:
11m halb vier lihr, At half past 3 o'clock.
11m Oftern, At Easter.

2. = 31, with Beit and Stunde, as:

Bur rechten Beit, At the right time.

Bu dieser Stunde, At this hour.

Note. — Um with the acc. is also admissible with these words.

3. = bci, as:

Bei Tagesanbruch, At day-break.

(c) Of price = zu, as:

Dieser Zuder wird zu zwei Thalern das Pfund verkauft, This sugar is sold at two dollars a pound.

228.

By.

(a) Expressing the *personal agent* after the passive voice = **bun**, as:

Das Kind wird bon seinen Estern geliebt, The child is loved by its parents.

(b) Of a part of the body, etc. - bei, as:

Er nahm bas Kind bei ber Hand, He took the child by the hand.

(c) Unclassified:

Bei Licht, By candle-light.

Bei Racht, By night.

Mit Gewalt, By force.

Mit der Gisenbahn, By the railway.

Bu Land, ju Waffer, By land, by water.

229. For.

Rendered usually by für, but:

(a) Of purpose = zu (never für), as:

Dies ist schönes Wetter zum Spazierengehen, This is fine weather for taking a walk.

Er reist zum Bergnügen, He travels for pleasure.

(b) Of time:

r. Past = jeit, as:

Seit einem Monate, For a month (past).

2. Future =  $\mathfrak{auf} + acc.$ , as:

Ich werde auf einige Tage verreisen, I shall go away for a few days.

3. Duration = acc. without preposition, as:

Er war einen ganzen Monat hier, He was here for a whole month.

(c) Of cause = aus, as:

Er that es aus Furcht, He did it for fear.

(d) Unclassified:

Bür's Erste, For the present.

Bum ersten (zweiten, etc.) Mal, For the first (second, etc.) time.

3um Geburtstage, zu Weihnachten, For (as) a birthday-present, for a Christmas-present.

230.

In.

Rendered usually by in, but:

 $(a) = \mathfrak{auf}$ , as:

In the street, Auf der Straße. In the country, Auf dem Lande.

In this manner, Auf diese Beise (acc.).

In German, Auf Deutsch.

(b) = unter, as:

Unter Elisabeth's Regierung, In Elizabeth's reign.

 $(c) = \mathfrak{zu}, \text{ as}:$ 

Bu Bagen, In a carriage.

231.

Of.

(a) By the genitive without preposition, to express the relation of the *possessive* case, as:

Der Wille unsers Anters, The will of our father (i. e., our father's will).

- (b) = bon:
  - 1. After verbs, etc., as:

3ch spreche von ihm, I speak of him.

- 2. Between titles and names of places, as:
  Die Rönigin bon England, The Queen of England.
- 3. After numerals and other partitives, as:

  Einer von meinen Freunden, One of my friends.

  Der älteste von meinen Brüdern, The eldest of my brothers.
- 4. Replacing a genitive plural without article, as:

  Er ist ber Bater von vier Anaben, He is the father of four boys.

- 5. To avoid a succession of several genitives, as:

  Die Frau vom Better meines Ontels, The wife of my
  uncle's cousin.
- (c) Of cause, when the cause is a disease = an, as:
  Er ftarb an ber Cholera, He died of the cholera.
- (d) Of place, with names of battles:
  - 1. = bei, if named after a town, village, etc., as:
    Die Schlacht bei Leipzig, The battle of Leipzig.
  - 2. = an, if named after a river, as:
    Die Schlacht an der Alma, The battle of the Alma.
- (e) Unclassified:

Mangel an Geld, Want of money. Liebe zum Gelde, Love of money. Was soll aus mir werden? What is to become of me?

## 232. On.

Rendered usually by auf, but:

(a) Of time or date = Acc. without preposition, or = and + Dat., as:

Den (or am) zwölften Januar, On the twelfth of January.

- (b) Of modes of progression = zu, as:
  - Bu Pferde, On horseback.
  - Bu Fuße, On foot.
- (c) Of situation, on a river, sea, etc.:
  - i. When it means on the water = auf, as:

    Biele Schiffe fahren auf dem Hudson, Many ships ply on
    the Hudson; but:
  - 2. When it means on the shore = an, as:

Hamilton liegt am Ontario-See, Hamilton lies on Lake Ontario.

(d) Unclassified:

Mit Fleiß, On purpose. Bei dieser Gelegenheit, On this occasion. Unter (or mit) dieser Bedingung, On this condition. Am Begriffe, On the point of.

233. To.

(a) When replacing the indirect object = Dative without preposition, as:

Ich habe meiner Schwester ein Buch gegeben, I have given a book to my sister (i. e., my sister a book).

- (b) Of motion or direction to persons = zu, as: Ich will zu meinem Vater gehen, I will go to my father.
- (c) Of motion to places:
  - i. With proper names of countries, towns, etc. = nach, as: Ich gehe nach Paris, nach Deutschland, I am going to Paris, to Germany.
  - 2. With common nouns (i) = in, an, or auf respectively, with the *Accusative*, in various idioms, where these prepositions with the Dative = 'at' (see § 227, (a), above), as:

In die Schule, Kirche, ins Theater, Konzert u. s. w. gehen, To go to school, church, the theatre, concert, etc.

Uns Fenster, an die Thur gehen, To go to the window, door.

Auf den Markt, Ball, auf die Post, Universität gehen, To go to market, to the ball, post-office, university.

(ii) Frequently =  $\mathfrak{zu}$ , which may usually replace the prepositions in the above idioms also, as:

Er ist zur Stadt, zur Kirche u. s. w. gegangen, He has gone to town, church, etc. 234.

#### With.

Observe the following Idioms:

Bon ganzem Herzen, With all my heart.
Er zittert vor Kälte, He trembles with cold (cause).

Das ist bei uns nicht Sitte, That is not the custom with (= among) us.

In dieser Absicht, With this intention.

REMARK. — For the proper use of prepositions after particular adjectives and verbs, see Less. XLIX.

### VOCABULARY.

to intend, gebenken be\_enough, suffice, hinreichen bring with (one), mit'bringen sign, unterzeich'nen bring back, zurüchringen excursion, pleasure-trip, ber Ausflug\*

harvesting, das Ernten favour, der Gefallen Louis, Lewis, Ludwig measles, die Masern (f. pl.) account, bill, die Rechnung dressing-gown, der Schlafrock\* evil, das Übel relative, der Verwandte treaty, der Vertrag\* root, die Wurzel this evening, heute Abend thorough(-ly), gründlich fortunately, glücklicherweise possible, möglich absent (on a journey), verreist

Idioms: 1. To be accustomed, Die Gewohnheit haben (+ infin. with zu).

- 2. In the middle of summer, Mitten im Sommer.
- 3. To take a pleasure-trip (excursion), Ginen Ausfing machen.
- 4. It looks like rain, Es ficht nach Regen aus.
- 5. Two or three, 3mei bis brei.
- 6. He sprang out of the window, Er sprang jum Fenster hinaus (point of ingress or exit denoted by ju + dat.).

Note: It is customary, in referring to the relatives of the person addressed, to prefix perr, Frou or Fraulein, as the case may be, but this is not done in speaking of one's own relatives, thus:

Die geht es Ihrem herrn Bater? - But : Mein Bater ift gang wohl

#### EXERCISE XXXIX.

A. 1. Auf welche Weise haben Sie die frangofische Sprache fo gut gelernt? 2. Ich habe zuerft die Grammatif grundlich ftudiert. und dann habe ich anderthalb Jahre in Franfreich jugebracht. 3. Wie lange bleibt Ihr Berr Bater noch fort? Er tommt erft übermorgen nach Hause. 4. Was gedenkst du heute Abend zu thun? Ich weiß es nicht; für's Erste muß ich meine Aufgaben machen. 5. Wo haft bu ben hubschen Schlafrod bekommen? 3ch habe ihn jum Geburtstage bekommen, und ziehe ihn heute jum erften Male an. 6. Es flingelt; wer ift an ber Thur? Es ift jemand, ber ben Berrn sprechen will, aber er ift bei Tische und läßt fich nicht ftoren. 7. Du sitzeft am Fenfter; fieh boch einmal jum Fenfter hinaus, und du wirft ibn vielleicht feben konnen. 8. Bu welcher Zeit lebte Molière? Er lebte unter ber Regierung Ludwig XIV. vor Frankreich. 9. Ift es möglich, zu berselben Zeit von einer Sache zu fprechen und an eine andere zu benten? 10. Die Liebe jum Gelbe ift die Burgel alles Ubels. 11. Unfer Saus fteht am St. Loreng=Fluß, und bon ben Fenftern fieht man die Dampfichiffe vorbeigehen. 12. Willst du mir beine Grammatif leiben? Ja wohl, mit der Bedingung, daß du dieselbe vor morgen gurudbringft. 13. Ift Berr B. ju Saufe? Nein, er ift auf drei Bochen verreift. 14. Bei Tagesanbruch fingen die Bögel am schönsten. 15. Alle Fenfter und Thuren werden bes Nachts aus Furcht vor Dieben bei uns zugeschlossen. 16. Weshalb find die Kinder nicht zur Schule gegangen? 17. Es find mehrere Rinder in ber Schule, die an ben Mafern gelitten haben, und die Mutter fürchtet fich bor diefer Krantheit. 18. Reifen Gie lieber zu Land oder zu Waffer? Im Sommer ziehe ich es vor, zu Waffer zu reifen. 19. Mein Bater hatte die Gewohnheit, uns Rinder um fich zu versammeln und uns Geschichten zu erzählen. 20. Mitten im Sommer, und dann wieder um Beihnachten, gehe ich aufs Land, um meine Bermandten zu befuchen. 21. Borigen Sommer blieb ich mehr als vierzehn Tage bei denfelben.

B. 1. Good morning; you have come just at the right time; I was on the point of going to your house (say: going to you). 2. There is a ring at the door; go to the door and see who is there. 3. When you go to the market, do not forget to go to the post also. 4. Do you intend to take a pleasuretrip this summer? Yes, I intend to leave the town for three or four weeks. 5. Last summer we stayed away only a week. 6. Does it not look like rain? 7. Yes, I am afraid it might rain, but fortunately I have brought my umbrella with [me]. 8. Have you any money about you? I should like to pay this bill, and have left my purse at home. 9. I have about seven dollars and a half with me; would that be enough (suffice)? 10. Would you do me the favour to lend me the half of it (bayon) for two or three days? 11. What magnificent weather for harvesting; it has not rained for two weeks [past]. 12. Is the servant going to (the) market? No, she was at (the) market (already) two hours ago. 13. The battle of Waterloo took place on the 18th of June in the year 1815. 14. Some months afterwards the treaty of Paris was signed. 15. When (at what time) and in what war did the battle of the Alma take place? 16. It took place in the year 1855. during the war between England and Russia.

### ORAL EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Wann gedenken Sie die Stadt zu verlassen? 2. Wo steht das Haus Ihres Herrn Vaters? 3. Auf welche Weise gedenken Sie diesen Sommer zuzubringen? 4. Wollen Sie einmal' zu mir kommen und den Nachmittag bei mir zubringen? 5. Es hat geklingelt; wer ist da? 6. Was für Wetter bekommen wir heute Abend?

## LESSON XL.

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

# 235. Conjunctions are either:

- A. Cöordinating, or those which connect sentences of the *same rank* or *order* (principal with principal, or dependent with dependent), or:
- B. Subordinating, or those which connect one sentence with another, on which it depends, or to which it is subordinate.

# A. CÖORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

236. I. Conjunctions Proper. — The Cöordinating Conjunctions *proper* merely *connect* sentences without affecting their structure. They are:

und, and (general connective) allein, oder, or (general disjunctive) aud, for (causative) fondern,

REMARKS.—1. **Condern** is used after negative sentences only, and introduces a sentence correcting or contradicting the statement contained in the preceding sentence, in whole or in part, as:

I am not ill but (on the contrary) quite well.

But if there is no inconsistency or contradiction between the two statements, aber is used, as:

> Er hat es nicht gethan, aber er wird es thun, He has not yet done it, but he will do it.

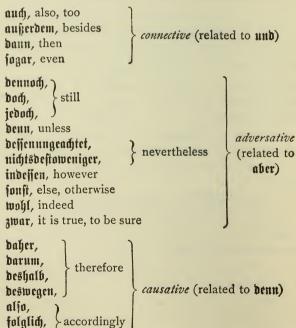
2. More does not necessarily begin the sentence and often comes after the verb. When aver does not begin the sentence, it has rather the sense of 'however,' as:

Das böse Beib aber ging vor den Spiegel, The wicked woman, however, went to the mirror.

Note. — When there is any other conjunction present, aber seldom begins the sentence.

237. II. Adverbial Conjunctions.—Many adverbs and adverbial phrases have the function of conjunctions, when they are used to express the relation between sentences, rather than to modify any particular member of the sentence in which they occur.

The principal coordinating adverbial conjunctions are:



REMARKS.— 1. Unlike the conjunctions proper, these adverbial conjunctions, if they *introduce* a sentence, throw the subject *after* the verb; but they may also follow the verb, thus:

Er ist frank; bessenungeachtet wird er kommen (or: er wird bessenungeachtet kommen), He is ill; nevertheless he will come.

Es regnete, darum (baher, bestwegen) konnte ich (or: ich konnte barum, etc.) nicht ausgehen.

2. And, and fogar, when they refer specially to the subject or any other member of the clause preceding the verb, do not throw the subject after the verb, as:

Auch sein Bater war zugegen, His father, too, was present.

Sogar seinen Feinden hat er vergeben, He has pardoned even his enemies.

3. The verb often comes first in a sentence with body, to express a strong affirmation, as:

Sabe ich es both gesagt, Did I not say so?

# 238. III. Correlative Conjunctions. These are:

cutweder ... oder, either ... or weder ... noch, neither ... nor disjunctive

micht nur ... sondern auch, not only ... connective

south ... als auch, but also but also

micht sowohl ... als, not so much ... as

bald ... bald, now ... now (again), at one time ...

at another

teils ... teils, partly ... partly

einerseits ... anderseits, on the one hand ... on the

other.

REMARK. — The last three are *adverbial* conjunctions, and either follow the verb, or throw the subject after it, unless they modify a particular member of the sentence (compare § 237, Remarks 1, 2, above).

## 239. B. Subordinating Conjunctions.

- r. Sentences introduced by subordinating conjunctions are always *dependent*, and therefore have the verb *last* (see § 32).
- 2. Some of these also are adverbial, but, as this distinction does not affect the construction, they are not separately arranged.
  - 3. The principal subordinating conjunctions are as follows:
    - (a) Introducing substantive clause:

daß, that ob, if, whether

(b) Introducing adverbial clause:

als, ba, when time bis (daß), until che (daß), before time bevor,

indeffen, indem', unterdeffen, während (daß), feit(dem), since fobald', as soon as	} time
fo lange, as long as (so)wie, as soon as wie, how — manner	
benn, than als, wie, than, as inwiefern', inasmuch as	degre <b>e</b>
je nadbem', according as ba, since baß, that weil, because	} cause
daß, that auf daß, um daß, bamit, in order that	} purpose
wenn, if als ob, als wenn, falls, in case	condition
wofern, In case obgleich, wenn gleich, obsichon, wenn schon, ob auch, wenn auch, obwohl, wiewohl, ungeachtet (daß), wenn nicht, if not, unless	concessive

REMARKS. — 1. **Wenn** and not take the subjunctive when the verb of the principal clause is in the impf., plupf., or conditional, as:

Ich würde kommen, wenn ich wohl genug wäre, I should come, if I were well enough.

Sch wußte nicht, ob er gekommen wäre (sei), I did not know, whether he had come.

2. Went may be omitted in conditional sentences; the verb then begins the clause, as in the question order (compare § 59). This construction is much more common than in English, and is generally used when the dependent clause, containing the condition, precedes the principal clause, containing the consequence, as:

Satte ich Geld, so würde ich Freunde haben, If I had (had I) money, I should have friends.

NOTE. — The particle for should not be omitted in the latter clause when the former is without many.

3. In the compound conjunctions obgleich, objeton, obwohl, etc., the two parts may be separated, and the latter part placed after the subject, as:

Obgleich (obschon, etc.) er krank war, etc.; or: Ob er gleich krank war, Although he was ill.

Note. - With wenn the particles gleich, etc., always follow the subject.

4. The ob or wenn may also be omitted in these conjunctions and in als ob, als wenn ('as if'); the verb then begins the sentence, or immediately follows als, as:

Ift er gleich frank, Although he is ill.

Es scheint mir, als ob (wenn) ich Sie irgendwo gesehen hätte; or: als hätte ich, etc., It seems to me, as if I had seen you somewhere.

#### 240.

## INTERJECTIONS.

- 1. Interjections proper are not, strictly speaking, members of the sentence, and consist of sounds expressing either:
  - (a) Independent outbursts of natural feeling, as: o, oh, of various emotions; ah, hei, heija, judhhe (hurrah), joy; ei, ha, pot, surprise; ad, au, pain; pjui (fie), disgust; hah, contempt; or
  - (b) Intimations of will, as: pft, ich (hush), enjoining silence; he, heda', ho, halloh, hollah, to call attention.
- 2. Various parts of speech, and even whole phrases, are employed interjectionally, as: heil, hail; weh, woe (subst.) hoth, hurrah; brav, bravo; leiber, alas; fort, weg, away (adverbs); gottlob, thank God; also in oaths and adjurations.
- 3. Akin to Interjections are imitations of natural sounds, as: hui, huid, whizz; piff, paff, puff, shot; bauz, fall; plumps, splash.
  - 4. (a) The Interjections o, and, pfui, are sometimes followed by a genitive, as:
    - O! (ach! pfui!) ber Schande! Oh! (ah! fie!) what disgrace;

or by über + accusative, as:

Pfui! über dich Feigen! Fie on thee for a coward!

(b) The substantives used interjectionally, as under 2, above, are sometimes followed by a dative, as:

Weh mir! Woe's me!

Beil bem Rönige! Hail to the king!

## VOCABULARY.

to call for, abholen go in, hineingehen wear (intr.), sich tragen prepare, vor bereiten lay up, lay by, zurücklegen old age, das Alter joy, delight, die Freude Lord, der Heris tortoise, die Schildfröte guilt, debt, die Schuld

to be to blame (for), schulo (adj.) sein (an + dat.) cheap, billig certainly, in any case, jedens falls in vain, vergebens even if, although, wenn auch

Idioms: 1. I am studying (preparing) for an examination, 3ch bereite mich auf ein Cramen (acc.) vor.

- 2. Do you consider that good? Salten Sie bas für gut?
- 8. To make calls, Befuche machen.
- 4. In the world, Muf ber Belt.

#### EXERCISE XL.

A. 1. Wir follten alle Menschen lieben, wenn fie uns auch hassen. 2. Sie versprachen, mich abzuholen; allein ich wartete vergebens, benn Sie famen nicht. 3. Wenn ich an Ihrem Saufe vorüberaehe, so gehe ich gewöhnlich hinein. 4. Als ich aber gestern Abend vorüberging, sah ich fein Licht und daher bin ich nicht hineingegangen. 5. Je mehr wir lernen, besto mehr find wir im Stande zu lernen. 6. Die Schüler bekommen morgen Ferien, darum springen und singen sie vor Freude. 7. Wie fehr ich mich auch bemühe, es gelingt mir leider doch nicht, alle Sätze diefer Aufgabe richtig zu schreiben. 8. Du tadelst mich, als ob ich schuld baran ware. 9. Gin vorsichtiger Mann legt in feiner Jugend Geld zurück, auf daß er in seinem Alter nicht Mangel leide. 10. Außer wenn ich frank oder sehr beschäftigt bin, gehe ich jeden Tag spazie= ren. 11. Er ist nicht nur reich, sondern auch freigebig, und des= halb hat er so viele Freunde gewonnen. 12. Sätten wir gewußt, daß Sie heute Besuch haben, fo wären wir erft morgen gekommen. 13. Wollen Sie sich erkundigen, ob Frau G. noch in demfelben Saufe wohnt? 14. Es giebt noch viele Leute auf der Welt, die weder lesen noch schreiben können. 15. Sie hätten mir helfen können, wenn Sie es gewollt hätten, allein Sie wollten es nicht.

- 16. Falls Sie des Nachmittags nicht kommen können, so kommen Sie doch des Abends. 17. Obgleich Karl schon zehn Jahre alt ist, kann er weder gut lesen noch gut schreiben. 18. Die Schilbkröte lief, indem der Hase schilbkröte lief, indem der Hase schilbkröte geschalb ist sie auch zuerst angekommen. 19. Hätte der Hase nicht geschlasen, so wäre er jedenfalls zuerst angekommen. 20. Du sollst beinen Bater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß du lange lebest im Lande, das dir der Herr dein Gott giebt.
- B. 1. We shall come, even if it rains. 2. Before I leave the town, I must make some calls. 3. Shall we go without him, or shall we wait till he comes back? 4. Whilst we were away, a thief came and stole the money. 5. Do you sit up late when you are studying? 6. Not generally; however, when I was preparing for my last examination I used to sit up late. 7. Do you consider this cloth dear? The price is not high to be sure, but it will not wear well. 8. Here is cloth, which is dear, but I believe that it is good. 9. I do not, on the contrary, consider it dear, but cheap, since it is good cloth. 10. Since I have been ill, I am allowed neither to read much nor to write much. 11. It seems to me that it is colder to-day than yesterday. 12. It is all the same to me. whether I travel by the steamer or by the railway. 13. [If] I had thought of that, I should have gone to meet you. 14. The hare slept, and in the meanwhile the tortoise arrived. 15. If the hare had not slept, he would have arrived first.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XL.

1. Die Fenster sind alle auf, wer ist daran schuld? 2. Legen Sie viel Geld zurück? 3. Weshalb haben Sie mich nicht abgeholt? 4. Können Sie mir sagen, in welcher Richtung von hier der Fluss liegt? 5. Hast du dein letztes Examen bestanden? 6. Halten Sie diesen Hut für teuer?

#### SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON F.

#### ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.

241. I. Mulin follows and limits, or corrects, affirmative statements, as joiners does negative, thus:

Er ist reich, allein er ist nicht glücklich, He is rich, but he is not happy.

2. Defin or um so (but not je) may be used with a single comparative, as:

Eilen Sie, damit Sie desto (um so) früher ankommen, Make haste, so that you may arrive all the sooner.

- 3. Daß is the most general in meaning of all the conjunctions. It may be omitted when it introduces a *substantive* clause, as in indirect statements. The sentence then has the construction of a principal clause (verb *second*; see § 87, 3). But daß cannot be omitted when it expresses purpose or consequence.
- 4. The Engl. if must be rendered by of (not wenn) when it = whether, as:

I asked him if he could come, Ich fragte ihn, ob er kommen könne.

- 5. For the distinction between als, wenn (as conjunctions of time) and wann, see § 58.
- 6. 'Than' should be rendered by als after an adjective in the comparative degree, not by wie.
- 7. Denn = 'than' is obsolete, except when used to prevent the repetition of als, as:

Er ist größer als Dichter, benn als Mensch, He is greater as a poet, than as a man.

8. In comparisons of equality, as ... as = (even) io ... wie, or ale, wie being more common, as:

He is as tall as I, Er ift (eben) fo groß wie ich.

After a negative, eben is omitted, as:

Er ift nicht fo groß wie ich.

9. So... so are used with correlative clauses, containing adjectives compared together in the *positive* degree (compare the use of je or desito with the compar. degree, § 126, 4), as:

§ 241]

So groß er ift, so feige ift er aud, He is as cowardly as he is big; or: 'equally big and cowardly'; lit.: Big as he is, he is just as cowardly.

NOTE. — In the first clause of the above example fo is subordinating; in the second coordinating, but does not throw the subject after the verb.

Observe also the following construction, where the clauses cannot be rendered as correlative in English:

So gern ich Ihnen (auch) helfen möchte, so unmöglich ist es mir, However glad I should be to help you, it is quite impossible for me (or: Glad as I should be, etc.).

ro. As, when denoting cause (= 'since') must be rendered by Da, as:

I could not come, as I was not well, Idy founte nicht fommen, da ich nicht wohl war.

II. As, in the sense of 'while' = indeffen, as:

He fell asleep, as I was reading to him, Er ichlief ein, indessen ich ihm porlas.

- 12. Distinguish carefully between the following uses of Engl. since:
  - (a) Since as preposition = seit (not seitdem), as:

Since last Tuesday, Seit letztem Dienstag.

(b) Since as adverb or cöordinating adverbial conjunction = feithem (not feit), as:

He was here the day before yesterday, but I have not seen him since, Borgestern war er hier, seitdem habe ich ihn aber nicht gesehen.

- (c) Since as subordinating conjunction of time = feithem or feit, as:
  - I have not seen him since he recovered from his illness, Ich have the nicht gesehen, scit(dem) er genesen ist.
- (d) Since as conjunction of cause = Da, as:

Since I have no money, I cannot pay you, Da ich fein Geld habe, fann ich Sie nicht bezahlen.

- 13. After ehe, bevor and während, daß may be omitted.
- 14. Bebor expresses time only, the may also express preference (= 'rather'), as:

Ehe ich bas thue, will ich sterben, Rather than do that, I will die.

- 15. Observe that the adverbial conjunctions indeffen, unterdeffen are coordinating when they = 'meanwhile' (the pronoun bessess being demonstrative), but subordinating when they = 'whilst, while' (the pronbeing relative), as:
  - Sie spraden mit einander; indessen (unterdessen) ging ich auf und ab, They were speaking to each other; (in the) meanwhile I was walking up and down; but:
  - Sie spraden mit einander, indessen (unterdessen) ich auf und ab ging, They were speaking to each other, while I was walking up and down.

In the sense of 'however,' indeffen is coordinating only.

- 16. Indem is subordinating only, and denotes cause as well as time, as:

  Sch brauche mehr Geld, indem ich viele Schulben zu bezahlen habe,

  I need more money, since I have many debts to pay (having many debts to pay).
  - Indem er mir die Hand gab, lächelte er, As he gave me his hand (giving me his hand), he smiled.
- 17. Deil must be used (not ba) in answer to the question why? or wherefore? as:

Warum famen Sie nicht? Weil ich frank war. Why did vou not come? Because I was ill.

18. 'Unless' is rendered by wenn ... night (if ... not), or by benn (coordinating adv. conj.), as:

Wir werben nicht ausgehen fönnen, wenn sich das Wetter nicht ändert, We shall not be able to go out, unless the weather changes.

3d saffe bid nicht, du seguest mich denn, I will not let thee go, except (unless) thou bless me.

NOTE. - Denn in this sense always follows the verb.

19. 'But' after a negative = als, as:

Ich hatte nichts als Unglüd auf meiner Reise, I had nothing but misfortune on my journey.

Note. — Nichts weniger als = 'anything but' (not 'nothing less than'), as:
Er ist nichts weniger als reich, He is anything but rich.

20. Distinguish between:

(a) Da = 'there': adverb of place, as: Id, war ba, I was there.

- (b)  $\mathfrak{Da} =$  'then': adverb of time, as:
  - Der Dieb ichlich ins Haus; da ergriff ich ihn, The thief sneaked into the house; then I seized him.
  - (c) Da = 'since,' 'as': subordinating conjunction, as:
    - In founte nicht fommen, Da ich frank war, I could not come, since (as) I was ill.
- 21. Distinguish between beffenungeachtet, 'nevertheless' (coord. adv. conj.) and ungeachtet, 'although,' 'notwithstanding that' (subord. conj.).

#### EXERCISE F.

1. Our neighbour has failed, but he is only the richer on that account, since he has not paid his creditors. 2. The hare was sleeping, whilst the tortoise crept slowly towards the goal. 3. Rather than accept your conditions, I will give up my position. 4. He has not been here since last week, and I have not seen him since. 5. Since you have not seen him, I must either go and see him (say: go to him), or write to him. 6. I consider him an ignorant man; he is anything but learned. 7. Have you been at the railway-station? Yes, I was there as the train arrived. 8. We shall not go out this afternoon, because it looks like rain. 9. We shall not go out to-morrow either (audi), if the weather does not change. 10. The whole family was absent yesterday from eight o'clock till twelve o'clock at night; meanwhile the house took (jaugen) fire.

# PART SECOND.

# SYNTAX.

#### LESSON XLI.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES: - NOMINATIVE AND CENITIVE.

242.

NOMINATIVE.

- r. The Nominative is the case of the *subject*, or of a word in apposition to the subject, or of a predicate noun qualifying it. The nominative is also used in address, there being no special form for the vocative.
- 2. Neuter verbs indicating a state or transition, such as fein, to be; twerben, to become; bleiben, to remain; scheinen, to seem, appear; heißen, to be called, take a predicate nominative, as:
  - Er ist Soldat geworden (geblieben), He has become (remained) a soldier.
- 3. Verbs of calling take a predicate nominative, verbs of considering a nominative with als, in the passive, as:
  - Kaiser Heinrich I. wurde der Bogler genannt, Emperor Henry was called the Fowler.
  - Mein Bater wurde immer von mir als mein bester Freund betrachtet, My father was always regarded by me (as) my best friend.

Note. — Verbs of *choosing* generally take the preposition  $\mathfrak{zu}$  instead of the English nominative.

## 243. GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used chiefly as the complement of substantives, its use in this respect being much the same as the English objective with 'of,' and also covering that of the possessive. Thus we have:

1. The Genitive of Origin, as:

Die Früchte bes Baumes, The fruits of the tree.

2. The Subjective Genitive, indicating the agent or cause, as:

Der Glaube eines Christen, The faith of a Christian.

- 3. The Objective Genitive, indicating the thing affected, as:
  Die Entbedung Amerikas, The discovery of America.
- 4. The Possessive Genitive, as:

Der Garten bes Rönigs, The garden of the king (the king's garden).

5. The Genitive of Quality, as:

Bwei Rinder eines Alters, Two children of one age.

Note. - This genitive is frequently replaced by bon, as:

Ein Mann pon hohem Alter, A man of great age.

6. The Partitive Genitive, as:

Einer meiner Freunde, One of my friends.

Der jungste meiner Brüber, The youngest of my brothers.

NOTE. — This genitive is commonly replaced by von after numerals and other partitives.

## 244. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives denoting posssession and interest, plenty, know-ledge, desire, guilt, or their opposites, govern the genitive, as:

bedürftig, needing, in need begierig (also + nach), desirous

betwußt, conscious
eingebent, mindful
fähig (also + zu), capable

froh, glad
gewiß, certain
gewohnt (also + an with acc.),
accustomed
leer, empty
los (also + acc.), rid
mübe (also + acc.), tired
fatt (also + acc.), satisfied

idulbig, guilty
ficher, certain
ü'berdrüffig, weary
verdächtig, suspected
voll (also + acc., or + von),
full
wert (also + acc.), worth
würdig, worthy

REMARKS. — 1. The neuter pronoun 'it' after most of these adjectives may have the form  $\mathfrak{es}$ , which is the old *genitive*, and is the origin of the later use of the accusative, first with the pronouns  $\mathfrak{bas}$ ,  $\mathfrak{was}$ , and then, by analogy, with substantives, as:

Ich bin es (das) mübe, I am tired of it (that).

2. With los, mude, wert the Accusative is more usual than the genitive.

#### 245. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

r. Verbs of meanings similar to those of the adjectives under the previous section take a genitive of the nearer object, as:

achten (also + auf with acc.),
pay attention
bedürfen, need
begehren, desire
brauchen, want
entbehren, miss,
do without
ermähnen,mention

(also +
acc.)

benfen (generally + an with acc.), think gebenfen, mention genießen (generally + acc.), enjoy bergessen (generally + acc.), forget

Also the following:

harren (also + auf with acc.)
wait
warten (also + acc.), tend,
nurse

Iachen, laugh at spotten, mock schonen (also + acc.), spare 2. Transitive Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquittal, deprivation, emotion, take a genitive of the remoter object, as:

anklagen, accuse
berauben, rob
beschulbigen, accuse
entbinden (also + von), relieve
entkleiden (also + von), disrobe

Iossprechen, acquit
überfüh'ren, convict
überzeu'gen (also + von), convince
versichern, assure
würdigen, deem worthy
zeihen, accuse

3. Also many reflexive and impersonal verbs (see §§ 215, 216, 219).

#### 246. ADVERBIAL GENITIVE.

For the use of the genitive in forming adverts from substantives, see § 189, 2. The adverbial genitive may express place, time or manner, as:

Linker Hand, On the left hand.

Seiner Wege gehen, To go one's way.

Diefer Tage, During these (last) days.

Abends, In the evening.

Morgens, In the morning, etc.

Mles Ernstes, In all seriousness.

Trodnen Juges, Dry-shod.

And particularly with Deise, 'manner,' after an adjective, as:

Glüdlicher Beise, — or: } Fortunately (lit., in a fortunate Glüdlicherweise, manner)

247. For Interjections followed by a genitive, see § 240, 4, (a).

For the genitive after prepositions, see §§ 222, 223.

#### EXERCISE XLL

- A. 1. Guten Morgen, Karl; was hast du für Eile, mein Junge? 2. Guten Morgen, Herr B.; es ist bald neun Uhr und ich gehe jetzt in die Schule. 3. So, hast du noch weit zu gehen? 4. Bis nach der Friedrichstrasze: Herr G., unser Lehrer, besteht sehr auf Pünktlichkeit. 5. Steige nur ein, du kannst mit mir fahren, da mein Weg durch die Friedrichstrasze führt. 6. Ich bin Ihnen sehr dankbar; das ist sehr freundlich von Ihnen. 7. Sitzt du da bequem? 8. Ja. aber sind meine Bücher Ihnen nicht im Wege? 9. Nicht im geringsten, aber was für eine Menge Bücher hast du da! Du hast gewiss viel zu studieren. 10. Ich arbeite jetzt sehr fleissig, da das Examen nächstens stattfindet. 11. Auf welches Examen bereitest du dich vor? 12. Auf das Eintrittsexamen der Universität. 13. Was für Sprachen studierst du? 14. Ich studiere Englisch, Latein, Deutsch und Französisch. 15. Natürlich studierst du auch die Mathematik? 16. Wir müssen Rechnen, Algebra und Geometrie lernen. 17. Bist du ein Freund von der Mathematik, oder ziehst du die Sprachen vor? 18. Ich lerne sehr gern Mathematik, besonders Algebra; mein Lehrer glaubt, ich habe nicht viel Sprachtalent. 19. Deshalb solltest du desto fleissiger die Sprachen studieren, (auf) dass deine Bildung nicht einseitig werde. 20. Mein Vater ist auch derselben Meinung. 21. Hoffentlich wirst du dein Examen glücklich bestehen; da sind wir aber schon bei der Schule. 22. Ich danke Ihnen vielmals für den freundlichen Wunsch, wie auch für die Fahrt.
- B. 1. "An honest man is the noblest work of God." 2. A pound of iron is about as large as two pounds of silver.

  3. Mr. Cleveland was elected president of the United States in the year 1884. 4. I was to have taken (made) a journey to Europe this summer, but my father needs me in his busi-

ness and I shall be obliged to remain at home. 5. I have been offered five thousand dollars for my house, and I shall sell it, for I am glad of the opportunity of getting (to get) rid of it. 6. The Duke of Wellington, a great English general (Feld= herr), was called the "Iron Duke," as Prince Bismarck, the great German statesman, is called the "Iron Chancellor." 7. He (the former) has deserved that title not only as a soldier but as a man. 8. My neighbour, the merchant, has been accused of forgery, but I do not believe that he is capable of such a crime. 9. He was in need of money, and is said to have done it on that account. 10. I hope that he will be acquitted of this accusation, for I am convinced of his innocence. 11. The discovery of America by (burd) Columbus was perhaps the greatest undertaking of any man or of any age (Reitalter). 12. Columbus was a man of great bodily as well as mental power. 13. His whole fleet consisted of three small ships, of which two were very old. 14. Have you seen your brother the lawyer? 15. Excuse [me]; my brother is not a lawyer, but a doctor. I have not seen him since Christmas. 16. As a student he always used (pflegen) to say he meant to be (werben) a lawyer. 17. We are tired of studying; let us go out. 18. Shall I send for (nath) a carriage? 19. No, it is not worth while (ber Mühe wert), I would rather walk. 20. Unfortunately it has rained and the roads are bad. 21. We can try (the) walking, and if we get tired of it, we can take the street-cars (Pferbebahn, sing.).

#### LESSON XLII.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES (continued).—DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

248.

DATIVE.

The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object.

The Dative is used to denote the person for whose advantage or disadvantage a thing is or is done, as:

Er hat mir ein Buch gekaust, He has bought me a

249. The Dative is very freely used in German to denote the person who has some *interest* in an action or thing. This is called the ethical dative or dative of interest, and must usually be left untranslated in English, in which language its use is obsolete, thus:

Ich have mir die Sache angesehen, I have considered the thing (for my own satisfaction).

Thu mir das nicht wieder, Don't do that again (I tell you).

For the *possessive* dative replacing, with the definite article, a genitive case or (with pronouns) a possessive adjective, see § 44, 6.

## 250. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

The Dative stands as the Indirect Object of transitive verbs, as:

Er giebt mir das Buth, He gives me the book (the book to me).

- 2. It stands as the *sole* object after verbs which express a *personal* relation only, such as verbs of:
  - (a) Approach or removal, etc., as:

begegnen, meet
entgehen, escape
entsprechen, correspond to
fehlen, be wanting
folgen, follow

gleichen, resemble nachgehen, follow nachstehen, be inferior nahen, approach zusehen, watch

(b) Pleasure or displeasure, as:

behagen, please banken, thank drohen, threaten fluchen, curse

gefallen, please genügen, suffice grollen, be angry mißfal'len, displease ichmeicheln, flatter steben, suit, become

(c) Advantage or disadvantage, as:

beisteben, assist bienen, serve helfen, help

manaeln, be wanting nüten, be useful schaben, harm

(d) Command, resistance and their opposites, as:

befehlen, command gebieten, order gehorchen, obey perbieten, forbid

troßen, defy weichen, vield widerste'hen, oppose widerstre'ben, resist

(e) After verbs expressing possession, trust, and various other personal relations, as:

antworten, answer beistimmen, agree with erwidern, reply gehören, belong

glauben, believe scheinen, seem trauen, trust zureden, encourage

Also with fein and werben, expressing a state of feeling (with au Mute expressed or understood), as:

Die ist Ihnen? How do you feel?

Observe also the idiom: Wenn bem fo ift, 'If that is the case,' in which bem is dat. neut.

(f) After many verbs expressing similar relations, compounded with the inseparable prefixes er-, ent-, ver-, wider; with the separable prefixes an-, auf-, bei-, entgegen-, nadj-, vor-, zu-, etc., and with adjectives, nouns or adverbial phrases, such as:

leid thun, be sorry wohlwollen, be well-disposed ju Statten kommen, be of use bas Wort reben, defend

au Teil werben, fall to one's share

REMARKS.— 1. The great majority of these verbs have become transitive in English, on account of the loss of distinction between the dative and accusative; their construction in German should be carefully observed.

2. Many of the verbs under (d), (e) above take a *direct* object, particularly in the shape of a clause or of a neuter pronoun, as:

Er hat mir verboten zu gehen, He has forbidden me to go.

Ich erwiderte, daß ich fammen wolle, I replied that I would come.

Mein Bater hat es mir befohlen, My father has ordered me (to do) it.

For the Dative with *Reflexive* Verbs, see §§ 215, 216; with *Impersonal* Verbs, see §§ 217, 219.

# 251. Dative after Adjectives.

The Dative stands after adjectives similar in meaning to the Verbs given in the foregoing section, such as:

(a) Approach, etc.: ähnlich, similar fremb, strange aleich, equal, like

(b) Pleasure, etc.: angenehm, pleasant anädia, gracious

(c) Advantage, etc.: heilfam, wholesome fchulbig, indebted

(d) Command, etc.: folgfam, gehorfam,

ungleich, unequal, unlike nahe (also + bei), near verwandt, related

lieb, dear willfommen, welcome

treu, faithful

ungehorsam, disobedient widrig, repulsive

## (e) Possession, etc.:

eigen, belonging gemein(sam), common

Note. — Almost any adjective modified by 311 or gening may take a dative, as:

Diese Handschuhe sind mir zu groß (groß genug), These gloves are too large (large enough) for me.

For the Dative after Prepositions, see §§ 46, 51.

## 252. Accusative.

The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object, Time and Measure.

All transitive verbs take the direct object in the accusative.

REMARK. — Many verbs that are transitive in English are intransitive in German (see § 250, Rem. 1, above), and vice versa.

## 253. Double Accusative.

The verb lehren, 'to teach,' governs two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing; the verb fragen, 'to ask,' takes the latter accusative only when it is a neuter pronoun, as:

Ich werde dich die deutsche Sprache lehren, I shall teach you the German language.

Ich wollte dich gerne etwas fragen, I should like to ask you something.

Verbs of calling, etc., have a second accusative as factitive predicate, as:

Ich nannte ihn einen Narren, I called him a fool.

Of Verbs of considering, etc., some, such as: betrachten, 'to regard'; ansehen, 'to look upon'; barstellen, 'to represent,' take a factitive accusative with als, as:

Ich sehe ben Regen als eine Wohlthat an, I regard the rain as a benefit.

Other verbs of considering, with those of choosing, etc., which take a second accusative of this sort in English, are followed by a preposition (für, zu) in German (see Less. XLIX).

## 254. ACCUSATIVE AFTER INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

1. Intransitive Verbs may sometimes be followed by an accusative of a meaning akin to their own, called the *cognate* accusative, as:

Ich habe einen schönen Traum geträumt, I have dreamt a beautiful dream.

2. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative of that which is effected or produced by the action they express, as:

Betrus weinte bittere Thränen, Peter wept bitter tears

3. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative followed by an adjective, etc., as *factitive* predicate, as:

3th have mich fatt gegessen, I have eaten enough (lit., have eaten myself satisfied).

Das Kind weinte fich in den Schlaf, The child has cried itself to sleep.

REMARK. — The Accusative in all these constructions, except the last, which is not used in the passive, becomes a nominative in the passive construction; that of the thing after Iehren remains accusative; with fragen and bitten, the acc. of the thing is not used in the passive.

For the accusative after *Reflexive* Verbs, see § 216; after *Impersonal* Verbs, see § 219; after *Prepositions*, see §§ 34, 50; after some Adjectives, it replaces the Genitive (see § 245, and Remarks).

## 255. ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE.

1. The Accusative is used adverbially to express *time* (see § 184, 1) and *measure* (see § 185, 4); also *distance* and *way* after verbs of motion, as:

Ich bin feche gute Meilen gefahren, I have driven six full miles.

Belchen Beg werden Sie gehen? Which way will you go?

The Accusative is used also in absolute constructions, especially with participles, as:

Er fam zu mir, ben hut in ber hand, He came to me

Er stand da, die Augen in die Höhe gerichtet, He stood there [with] eyes uplifted.

#### EXERCISE XLII.

A. 1. Also, Sie haben sich entschlossen, uns morgen früh zu verlassen? 2. Ich muss wohl, da meine Geschäftsangelegenheiten mir keinen längeren Aufenthalt erlauben. 3. Sie reisen natürlich mit dem zweiten Zug ab? 4. Wissen Sie, um wie viel Uhr derselbe in B. ankommt? 5. Ich kann es Ihnen nicht ganz genau sagen, aber er kommt gegen vier Uhr (des) Nachmittags an. 6. Das ist mir viel zu spät. Man erwartet mich schon um halb zwölf auf meinem Bureau. 7. In dem Falle müssen Sie wohl den Schnellzug nehmen, der schon um drei Viertel auf sieben abfährt. 8. Es lässt sich nicht ändern. 9. Gut, ich werde Sie Punkt sechs Uhr wecken lassen. 10. Ich danke Ihnen: das wird durchaus nicht nötig sein, da ich meine Weckuhr bei mir habe. 11. Wie viel Zeit brauchen Sie, sich anzukleiden? 12. Zwanzig bis fünfundzwanzig Minuten; aber ich werde noch mehreres einzupacken haben. 13. Dann wäre es jedenfalls besser, die Weckuhr auf halb sechs zu stellen. 14. Bitte, sagen Sie mir genau, wie viel Uhr es jetzt ist; ich fürchte. meine Uhr geht nach. 15. Es ist gerade neun Minuten vor elf. 16. Ist es möglich! Dann geht meine Uhr ja vor, anstatt nach. Sind Sie gewiss, dass Ihre Uhr richtig geht? 17. Jawohl; ich habe sie heute nach der Stadtuhr gestellt. 18. Es wird spät;

ich muss mich schlafen legen, um morgen früh aufstehen zu können. 19. Also machen wir es auf diese Weise: Sie stehen um halb sechs auf, um fünf Minuten nach sechs frühstücken Sie, um fünfi;ndzwanzig Minuten nach sechs wird der Wagen vorfahren und in zehn Minuten sind Sie auf dem Bahnhofe. Dann haben Sie noch zehn Minuten übrig, um Ihr Billet' zu lösen und Ihr Gepäck einschreiben zu lassen. Jetzt, gute Nacht! 20. Gute Nacht, schlafen Sie wohl!

B. 1. Do not trust those who flatter you. 2. Do not believe them, for flatterers are liars. 3. I always considered my father as my truest friend. 4. The general commands the soldiers: the soldiers obey the general. 5. What is the name of the gentleman whom we have just met? His name has escaped me. 6. You should never forget to thank those who help you. 7. How does this hat, which I bought myself yesterday, please you? 8. It does not become you very well; it is too large for you. 9. When I was going to the railway-station, a boy met me and gave me a telegram. 10. May I ask you if Mr. H. is related to you? 11. He resembles me very much, but he is not related to me. 12. Mr. B. has been ordered, on account of ill-health, to go to a warmer climate. He has been forbidden to pass the winter in the North. 13. How long does he remain absent? 14. He is to remain absent at least four months, 15. Last week I ordered (myself) an overcoat at the tailor's, which he was to bring me to-day. 16. The Niagara Falls are considered (one considers, etc.) as one of the greatest wonders of the world. 17. People say of one who sleeps very soundly that he sleeps the sleep of the righteous. 18. May I ask you to assist me, or at least to advise me? 19. I should be very glad to be able to help you. 20. I am in need of money, and should not like to ask any one else for it.

#### LESSON XLIII.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD: - SYNTAX OF ITS TENSES.

256. The Indicative is the mood of reality and direct statement. As the tenses are used with reference to time in the Indicative only, their proper use is given here.

257.

THE PRESENT.

The Present Tense answers to all the English forms of that tense (e. g., ith lobe = I praise, am praising, do praise), and is used:

- 1. To denote action now going on, as:

  Das Rind instit, The child is sleeping (now).
- 2. To state a general fact or custom, as:

  Der Schnee ift weiß, The snow is white.

  Der Ochse frist Gras, The ox eats grass.
- 3. For the imperfect in historical narrative, to give greater vividness, as:
  - Geschwind hebt er einen Stein auf und wirst benselben bem hunde, ber ihn beißen will, an den Ropf, Quickly he picks up a stone, and throws it at the dog, who is about to attack him.
- 4. For the English perfect (as in French), when the action or state continues in the present, the past being inferred and the present alone expressed, as:
  - Wie lange ift er schon frant? How long has he been ill? (N. B. He is still ill.)
  - Ich gehe seit acht Tagen wieder zur Schule, I have been going to school again for the last week (and am still going).

NOTE. - This construction is very common with feit.

5. For the future very commonly, where no ambiguity would arise, particularly to replace the English form 'am going to,' as:

Ich schreibe morgen einen Brief an meinen Bater, I am going to write a letter to my father to-morrow.

258.

THE IMPERFECT.

The Imperfect is used:

1. As the historical (narrative) preterite, when an event is told in connection with others, as:

Im Anfang ichuf Gott Himmel und Erbe, und Alles war wüste und leer u. s. w., And in the beginning God created heaven and earth, and all was waste and void, etc.

2. To denote customary, continued or contemporaneous action, replacing the English forms 'was doing,' 'used to do,' as:

Er ging jeden Tag um vier Uhr aus, He used to go out every day at four o'clock.

Wir juhren an der Kirche vorbei, als die Uhr elf ichlug, We were driving past the church, as the clock struck eleven.

## 259.

#### THE PERFECT.

- r. The Perfect indicates a past event as complete and no longer continuing, thus:
  - 3th have gelebt und geliebet, I have lived and loved (and both my life and my love are ended).
- 2. The Perfect is used of an event as a separate and independent fact, simply asserted as true without reference to any other, as:

Gott hat die Welt erichaffen, God created the world;

but in the sentence:

Gott schuf die Welt in sechs Tagen und ruhte am siebenten, God created the world in six days, and rested on the seventh,

the imperfect is used, because the two events are connected.

3. The Perfect is used (apart from historical narrative), in preference to the Imperfect, of an event which has not been witnessed or participated in by the speaker, as:

Gestern ist ein Kind ertrunken (Perf.), A child was drowned yesterday; — but:

Gestern ertrauf (Imps.) ein Kind, als ich am Ufer stand, A child was drowned yesterday, when I was standing on the shore.

REMARK. — This distinction between the use of the Perfect and Imperfect is not accurately observed, but it is always better to render the English forms 'was doing,' 'used to do,' by the Imperfect.

4. The Perfect replaces the Future-Perfect, as the Present does the Future, as:

Ich werde kommen, sobald ich meine Geschäfte abgemacht habe, I shall come, as soon as I have (i. e., shall have) finished my business.

260. The Pluperfect.

The Pluperfect is used, as in English, of a past action completed before another was begun, thus:

Er hatte seine Aufgabe vollendet, che Sie kamen, He had finished his exercise, before you came.

261. The Future.

The Future is used:

I. Of an action about to take place, as:

Unser Bater wird uns loben, Our father will praise us.

2. To denote probability or supposition, as:

©8 wird mein Bruder jein, der angekommen ist, It is
probably my brother who has arrived.

262. The Future-Perfect.

The Future-Perfect is the Perfect in the Future, and expresses *probability* even more frequently than the simple Future, as:

Der Brief wird schon gestern gesommen sein, The letter probably arrived yesterday.

#### EXERCISE XLIII.

A. 1. Diese Hitze ist unerträglich; ich glaube, nie einen so heissen Sommer erlebt zu haben. 2. Und wie schwül es ist! Sieht es nicht sehr nach Regen aus? 3. Richtig, da sind schon die ersten Regentropfen, und ich meine, vor einigen Minuten Donner in der Ferne gehört zu haben. 4. Das macht mir einen Strich durch die Rechnung. Bei diesem Wetter kann ich unmöglich zur Stadt gehen. 5. Für's Erste allerdings nicht, aber das Gewitter wird nicht lange anhalten. 6. Das ist ein wahrer Platzregen; so ein Regen ist dem Lande sehr nötig. 7. Ja, wir haben diesen Sommer überhaupt sehr wenig Regen gehabt, aber vorigen Winter desto mehr Schnee. 8. Hören Sie, das war ein Knall! 9. Ja, und wie schnell der Donner auf den Blitz folgte! Fürchten Sie sich vor dem Blitze? 10. Seitdem es voriges Jahr in unserer Nähe eingeschlagen hat, bin ich ein wenig ängstlich. 11. Das glaube ich schon, aber sehen Sie doch, jetzt hagelt es noch sogar! 12. Das braucht das Land gewiss nicht, aber die Hagelkörner sind nicht grosz genug, um viel Schaden anzurichten. 13. Es fängt schon an, sich aufzuhellen; das schlimmste ist vorbei. 14. Wie sich die Luft abgekühlt hat! 15. Und wie schnell! Das ist oft der Fall hier zu Lande. 16. Jawohl; erinnern Sie sich nicht des

wechselhaften Wetters, das wir vorigen Frühling gehabt haben? 17. Besonders im März und Anfang April. 18. Einen Tag thaute es, den nächsten fror es, und am dritten Tage regnete oder schneite es gar. 19. Dann gab es wieder eine Hitze wie mitten im Sommer; schon im April hatten wir fast achtzig Grad Fahrenheit. 20. Da scheint die Sonne wieder; ich sagte Ihnen ja, dass das Gewitter nicht lange anhalten würde. 21. Da haben Sie Recht; jetzt muss ich mich auf den Weg machen.

B. 1. A misfortune seldom comes alone. 2. Schlegel translated Shakespeare's works into German. 3. Is your father at home? No, he has been away for three weeks, but he is (probably) coming back to-morrow morning. 4. As soon as I have news of his arrival, I shall come again. 5. During my illness I used to go for a drive two hours every day. 6. Are you going (to go) to the concert this evening? I do not think I shall go. 7. Have you an engagement elsewhere? No, but I am going to bed immediately, as I start for Boston to-morrow morning at seven o'clock. 8. People (man) are often conscious of bad habits, which they cannot get rid of. 9. Have you been long in America? I have been here since my fifteenth year. 10. This is probably a letter from my mother, for that is her hand-writing. 11. We had hardly been at home half an hour, when it began to rain. 12. Shakespeare is considered the greatest poet of the English nation. 13. He was born at Stratford-on-Avon, and passed his youth in that place. 14. As a young man he went to London, became celebrated there, and died in the year 1616 in his native town. 15. The sun was setting, and the long [and] desperate combat was not yet decided. 16. For the third time our brave soldiers throw themselves upon the batteries of the enemy. 17. Nothing could resist this attack; the enemy wavers, and the victory is ours. 18. But what a dearly-bought victory! 19. He, who

led the soldiers into the combat, comes not back with them. 20. Yonder he lies cold and silent, and our triumph becomes bitter mourning.

#### LESSON XLIV.

#### THE CONDITIONAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### 263.

#### THE CONDITIONAL.

- r. The Conditional tenses are, in form, subjunctive past tenses, answering to the Future as a present.
- 2. They indicate *possible futurity*, and coincide with the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in their use in conditional clauses, and will therefore be treated conjointly with them (see § 267, below).

Note. — The Tenses of the Conditional are a new formation; the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. having, in the older stages of the language, performed the function of the Conditional.

264. The Subjunctive Mood is used much more frequently in German than in English, the distinction between Indicative and Subjunctive being almost entirely obliterated in the latter language.

## 265. The Subjunctive in Indirect Statements.

The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Statements or Quotations (see also § 87), i. e., when the words used are quoted in *substance only*, and not as they were spoken, especially after a verb in the principal clause signifying:

(a) Imparting of information (statement, report, confession, reminding, etc.), as:

antworten, answer behaupten, assert berichten, report erzählen, relate gestehen, confess sagen, say

# (b) Apprehension, as:

benfen, think erinnern (refl.), remember fühlen, feel hören, hear meinen, be of opinion merfen, observe schließen, conclude wissen, know

(c) Contemplation with various emotions, as:

fürchten, fear freuen (refl.), rejoice glauben, believe hoffen, hope wundern (refl.), wonder wünschen, wish zweiseln, doubt

(d) Request, command, advice, etc., as:

befehlen, command bitten, ask raten, advise verlangen, demand

ermannen, admonish

266. THE TENSE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

The verb of the Indirect Statement is, as a rule, in the same tense as it would have, if the statement were made directly (see § 87, 2), i. e., the tense of the Indirect Statement is the same as that of the Direct.

REMARKS. — 1. An Indirect Statement is always a subordinate clause.

- 2. The conjunction baß may be omitted in such clauses, which will then have the construction of a *principal sentence* (i. e., verb second; see § 87, 3).
- 3. The Indicative may replace the Subjunctive in Indirect Statements, when the speaker wishes to represent his own belief in the correctness of the statement, as:

Ich habe gehört, daß mein Bruder frank ist, I have heard that my brother is ill (and he is ill).

Sie wußte, daß der Spiegel keine Unwahrheit sprach, und merkte, daß der Jäger sie betrogen hatte, etc. (GRIMM,

Sneewittchen, p. 52, l. 1), She knew that the mirror did not tell a lie, and saw that the huntsman had deceived her (and he had deceived her).

But the Subjunctive is used, when the truth of the statement is not vouched for, or when any doubt is cast upon it, as:

Das boshafte Weib aß sie auf und meinte, sie hätte Sneewittchens Lunge und Leber gegessen (ibid., p. 49, l. 8), The malicious woman devoured them, and thought she had eaten Sneewittchen's lung and liver (whereas she had not eaten them).

4. The tense of the Indirect Statement does not depend on that of the principal clause, and the sequence of tenses which is observed in English is not found in German, as:

(Engl.) He said he was not ill. (Germ.) Er jagte, er jei nicht frant.

Notes. — 1. The Subjunctive is unusual after the verbs under (b) and (c) in the previous section (except hören), if the principal clause has a present tense.

2. The rule as to tense is not always strictly observed, the tense used being sometimes determined by the want of distinctive subjunctive forms. Thus in the following sentence two different tenses are used:

Auch schloß er, es musse die Sage vom Glasmännsein nicht sehr bekannt sein, und den Spruch müßten nur wenige wissen (HAUFF, Das kalte Herz, p. 8, 1. 7), Further, he concluded that the legend of the Glass-manikin could not be very well known, and only a sew people could know the verse.

- 3. After an Impf. in the principal clause, the Subjunctive is usual in the Indirect Statement, except as in the second example under Remark 3, above.
- 4. The verb of the principal sentence sometimes remains unexpressed, or is replaced by a noun of kindred meaning, as:

Er ließ mich abweisen, weil er frant sei, He refused to see me, because (as he asserted) he was ill.

Ich lief so schuell wie möglich, aus Furcht, ich möchte zu spät kommen, I ran as quickly as possible, from fear that I might come too late.

Das hätte ich gesagt? (Do you mean to say that) I said that?
This last construction is very frequent in German, to express emphatically a doubt as to the truth of a statement.

# **267.** The Subjunctive and Conditional in Hypothetical Periods.

# Example of a Hypothetical Period:

If I had followed your advice, I should have been happy.

1. The above sentence consists of two parts. Of these the one expresses a *condition*, conceived, in this instance, as unreal or impossible, viz.:

If I had followed your advice (which I did not); the other expresses a result, also unreal or unrealized, which would have followed, had the condition been realized, viz.:

I should have been happy (which I am not).

2. In both parts of the above period (in the condition and in the result), the verb is in a past tense (Impf. or Plupf.) of the Subjunctive Mood, as:

Wenn ich Ihren Nat befolgt hätte (Plupf. Subj.), so wäre ich glücklich gewesen (Plupf. Subj.).

Remarks.— 1. Either of the two clauses may stand first; thus, the sentence given above may have the form:

Ich wäre glücklich gewesen, wenn u. s. w.

2. The conjunction wenn may be omitted, especially when the condition precedes the result, in which case the verb will begin the sentence, as:

Batte ich Ihren Rat befolgt, fo ware ich glücklich.

- 3. If the result clause follows the conditional clause, it is usually introduced by the particle fo, and always when wenn is omitted in the preceding conditional clause (see § 59, and Note).
- 4. The conditional tenses may replace the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in the apodosis, result or conclusion only, as:

Wenn ich Ihren Rat befolgt hätte, so wurde ich glüdlich gewesen sein.

5. If the condition is stated without its unreality being implied, the verb is in the Pres., Perf., or Fut. *Indicative*, as:

Wenn er fommt, so werde ich fortgehen, If he comes. I shall go away.

6. A condition may be introduced by als wenn or als ob, as if, thus:

Er sieht aus, als wenn (ob) er frank wäre, He looks as if he were ill.

NOTE. — In clauses of this kind, went or ob may be omitted, and the construction is then inverted accordingly (see § 239, 4), as:

Er fieht aus, als mare er frant.

## **268.** Other Uses of the Subjunctive.

r. The Pres. Subjunctive replaces the missing persons (1. and 3.) of the *Imperative* Mood, the subject being then put after the verb, except in the 3. person, where it may also precede, unless the pron. Sie is used for the 2. person, as:

Gehe er (or er gehe) nach Hause, Let him go home.

2. The Impf. and Plupf. Subjunctive are used to express a wish, as:

Wäre ich bei Ihnen! Would that I were with you!

NOTE. — This is really an elliptical conditional clause, with the result unexpressed; the full form may be supplied thus:

Bare ich bei Ihnen, (fo mare ich gludlich).

3. The Subjunctive is used in clauses expressing purpose, with the conjunctions daß, auf daß, damit, as:

Er eilte, baß (auf baß, bamit) er zur rechten Zeit aufäme, He hastened, (in order) that he might arrive in good time.

4. It is also used after a negative or an indefinite relative, as:

Sier ist nicmand, der mich nicht fennte, There is nobody here, who does not know me.

Ich werde es thun, was auch davon kommen möge, I shall do it, no matter what may come of it.

NOTE. — The Indicative is also admissible in these constructions.

5. The Impf. Subjunctive is sometimes used to express possibility, as:

Das ginge wohl, That might (possibly) do.

3ch dächte, das wäre gut, I should think that might be good;

and especially with the Modal Auxiliaries, as:

Das möchte (könnte, dürfte) wahr sein, That may (possibly) be true.

6. Observe the following idiom:

Die dem auch sei, However that may be.

#### EXERCISE XLIV.

A. 1. Ich habe gehört, dass Sie Ihr Haus verkauft haben; ist das wahr? 2. Ja, meine alte Wohnung gefiel mir nicht mehr. 3. Wie kommt das? Ihr Haus schien mir immer eine sehr elegante und bequeme Wohnung zu sein. 4. Ein besseres lässt sich nicht leicht finden; allein, seit (dem) die vielen Fabriken in der Nähe gebaut worden sind, gefällt mir die Umge'bung nicht mehr. 5. Das kann ich mir schon denken. Der Rauch von den Fabriken muss sehr unangenehm sein. 6. Das ist nicht das Schlimmste; das fortwährende Geräusch

bringt einen oft zum Verzweifeln. 7. Haben Sie ein anderes Haus gekauft? 8. Nein, vorläufig habe ich mir ein Haus in der Schillerstrasze gemietet, sobald ich aber einen passenden Bauplatz finden kann, werde ich bauen. 9. Haben Sie sich schon nach einem Bauplatz umgesehen? 10. Ich habe die ganze Stadt durchsucht, aber ohne Erfolg. 11. Sie müssen sehr schwer zu befriedigen sein. 12. Das gerade nicht, nur bestehe ich auf drei Bedingungen: Frische Luft, eine ruhige Strasze und eine schöne Aussicht. 13. Warum bauen Sie nicht auf der Anhöhe in der Vorstadt, jenseit des Flusses? 14. Daran habe ich schon gedacht, nur sind mir die Preise ein wenig zu hoch. 15. Das würde mich nicht abhalten, so lange ich nur bekäme, was ich wünschte. 16. Es wird mir wohl nichts übrig bleiben, als mich dort anzukaufen. 17. Beabsichtigen Sie, mit Backstein oder mit Quaderstein zu bauen? 18. Ich muss das erst mit meinem Architekten besprechen. 19. Welchen Architekten haben Sie gewählt? 20. Herrn Kalk, der den Plan meines alten Hauses entworfen hat. 21. Dann bekommen Sie jedenfalls ein gutes Haus, Ich wünsche Ihnen Glück zu Ihrem Unternehmen. 22. Danke vielmals.

B. 1. An old beggar-man said: "When I was young, I could have worked if I had wished (wollen), and now I should be glad to work, if I could, but I cannot. Alas! had I only been more industrious." 2. A certain French king is said to have died of hunger, for fear that he might be poisoned. 3. I wish my house were not so far from yours. 4. I too; if the way were not so long, we could visit each other oftener. 5. We were astonished to see Mr. B. on the street this morning, as we thought he was still in England. 6. They say he intended to remain three months longer in England, but that he was obliged to come home on account of business matters. 7. What did the gentleman whom we just met ask

you? He asked me how far it was to the town-hall. 8. The messenger asserted that he could not wait longer because he had no time, but I believe it was for (aus + dat.) another reason. 9. A certain gentleman wanted to set his watch, and asked his servant what o'clock it was. 10. The servant answered that he had no watch, but that he had seen a sun-dial in the neighbour's garden. 11. To this the gentleman replied absent-mindedly: "Go immediately and ask him for permission to bring it up here." 12. Do you believe that the German language is as difficult as the French? 13. When I began to study German, I thought it was not so difficult as French, but now I believe otherwise. 14. I should be very sorry, if the news were true which I heard this morning. 15. The boys must not skate to-day; the ice is too thin, and they might break through and be drowned. 16. Please tell me who translated Shakespeare's works into German. 17. Would it be worth while to take a carriage to drive to the bank? No, I do not think so. 18. He said that of us! I should never have believed it. 19. I asked the bookseller: "Have you Schiller's works?" He answered: "I have not a single copy of them left. 20. I asked the bookseller if he had Schiller's works, and he answered that he had not\_a single copy of them left.

## LESSON XLV.

THE IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE MOODS.

## 269. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The Imperative expresses a command and corresponds precisely to the English Imperative. The Imperative proper occurs only in the 2. person, the other persons being supplied by the Pres. Subjunctive (see § 268, 1, above).

Remarks. — 1. The pronoun of the 2. Pers. is only expressed for the sake of emphasis or contrast, as:

Singe du, Do you sing.

Geht ihr, wir werden bleiben, You go, we shall remain. Note. — The pronoun, if expressed, always follows the verb, as above.

2. Where no definite person is addressed (e.g., when an author is addressing his readers), man should be used with the Pres. Subj., as:

Man bente fich meinen Schrecken, Imagine my fright.

3. The Modal Auxiliaries sollen, mussen, lassen are used with imperative force, as:

Du follst nicht töten, Thou shalt not kill.

Er muß schreiben, He must write.

Laß (laßt, laffen Sie) uns gehen, Let us go.

4. The Present and Future Indicative are sometimes used with emphatic imperative force, as:

Du bleibst bier! You are to stay here!

Sie werden die Güte haben, morgen früher zu kommen, You will have the goodness to come earlier to-morrow.

5. The Past Participle and Infinitive are also used in exclamatory clauses with the force of an Imperative, as:

Bugefahren, Rutscher! Drive on, coachman! Still ftehen! Stand still! Ginsteigen! All aboard!

6. In elliptical and exclamatory clauses a command is frequently expressed by an adverbial prefix or prepositional phrase, without a verb, as:

Frisch auf! Kameraben, aufs Pferd! aufs Pferd! Up! comrades, to horse! to horse! (Schiller.) Drauf und dran! Up and at them! Her zu mir! (Come) hither to me! (GOETHE, Faust.)

#### THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### 270. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBSTANTIVE.

The Infinitive is a verbal substantive, and any infinitive may be used as a substantive of the neuter gender, declined after the Maler Model (§ 16).

REMARKS. — 1. The Infin. as Subst. indicates action, as: Das Lesen, '(the act of) reading,'—but: gute Lecture, 'good reading, good literature.'

- 2. Some Infinitives have become substantives entirely, as: bas Leben, life; bas Entjegen, horror.
- 3. The Infinitive, either with or without zu, is often used as subject of a verb, and as such may have an object by virtue of its verbal character, as:

Bute Freunde (zu) haben ift beffer als reich (zu) fein.

# 271. THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT 311.

The Infinitive without au follows:

- (a) The Modal Auxiliaries (see Lesson XXXIV); also were in the formation of the future tense.
  - (b) The following verbs:

bleiben, remain lassen, let, allow, permit

finden, find lehren, teach heißen, order, bid lernen, learn helfen, help machen, make hören, hear fehen, see

and, in certain phrases, haben, as:

Ich habe nicht viel Geld auf der Bank liegen, I have not much money lying in the bank.

(c) After gehen and other verbs of motion in such phrases as spazieren gehen, reiten, fahren, 'to go for a walk, ride, drive';

schlafen gehen, 'to go to bed' (not = 'go to sleep,' which is einschlafen), etc.

(d) As predicative subject, with heißen, and as object with nennen, heißen, as:

Das heißt schnell fahren, That is quick driving.

Das nenne (heiße) ich schlecht ansangen, I call that beginning badly.

NOTE. — The Past Participle is also admissible in this construction; see § 281, 6, below.

REMARKS.— 1. After haben, bleiben, finden, hören, sehen, gehen, in the constructions given above, the German Infin. corresponds to a *Present Participle* in English, as:

Er blieb ftehen, He remained standing, etc.

2. The verbs under (b), except bleiben and heißen, also admit of a baß clause after them, as:

Ich habe gehört (gesehen), baß er angekommen sei, I have heard that he is come.

3. The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen also take an Infin. with au after them, as:

Ich habe gelernt, zu gehorchen, I have learnt to obey.

4. For the use of the Infin. for the P. Part. with these verbs, see § 199.

NOTE. — The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen do not substitute the Infin. for the P. Part. when followed by an Infin. with zu (see Rem. 3, above, and example).

5. For the Infin. with passive sense after lassen, see § 200, 7 (c), Note.

# 272. THE INFINITIVE WITH 311.

The Infinitive with au is used after other verbs, such as:

(a) Those implying something to be attained, done or left undone, as:

anfangen, begin beginnen, befehlen, command litten, beg erlauben, allow fürchten, fear hoffen, hope raten, advise

suchen, bersuchen, try
unternehmen, undertake
verbieten, forbid
wagen, venture
warnen, warn
wünschen, wish

(b) Those implying a suspension of judgment, as:

beschuldigen, accuse einbilden, (refl.), imagine glauben, believe leugnen, deny self.

(c) Those indicating various states of mind, as:

bereuen, repent freuen (impers.), freuen (refl.), lieb fein, be acceptable (be glad)

leib fein (thun), be unacceptable (be sorry)

REMARKS.— 1. With most of these verbs the Infinitive may be replaced by a ban clause, and must be so replaced unless the subject of the action in the dependent clause is either subject or direct object of the principal clause, as:

Er glaubt, sehr geschickt zu sein. He believes himself to be very clever; — or:

Er glaubt, daß er sehr geschickt ift.

Er hoffte, zu kommen, He hoped to come ; - but:

Er hoffte, daß sein Bater kommen werde, (see § 265, c), He hoped that his father would come.

Es that mir leid, Sie nicht gesehen zu haben, I was sorry not to have seen you; — or:

Es that mir leib, baß ich Sie nicht gesehen hatte ; - but:

Es ist mir lieb, baß Sie gekommen sind, I am glad that you have come.

2. The Infinitive clause as *direct object* is often represented in the principal clause by the neut. pron. cs (with prepositions by ba, see § 277, below), as:

Id wage es nicht, allein zu kommen, I do not venture to come alone.

Observe the idiomatic use of the Infinitive with zu after haben, sein, stehen, in the following examples:

Ich habe ihm einen Brief zu übergeben, I have a letter

Es ift (fteht) zu erwarten, It is to be expected.
Note. — In the latter example, the infin. has a passive signification.

#### EXERCISE XLV.

A. 1. Guten Morgen, alter Freund; nichts könnte mir gelegener sein, als dich anzutreffen. 2. Ich freue mich herzlich. dich zu sehen; ich habe schon lange einen Besuch von dir erwartet. 3. Du solltest doch wissen, dass man wenig Zeit hat, Besuche zu machen, wenn man sich auf ein Examen vorbereitet. 4. Das ist wahr, aber lass dir gratulieren; du hast ja ein glänzendes Examen bestanden. 5. Es ist mir freilich viel besser gelungen, als ich erwartete. 6. Was gedenkst du jetzi zu thun, da du promoviert hast? 7. Gerade das wollte ich mit dir besprechen; du kannst mir vielleicht mit gutem Rate beistehen. 8. Ich habe mich entschlossen, auf ein Jahr nach Europa zu gehen; wäre es nicht auch für dich sehr vorteilhaft, ein Jahr dort zuzubringen? 9. Sehr vorteilhaft, besonders wegen meines Sprachstudiums, aber ich fürchte meine Verhältnisse erlauben es mir nicht. 10. Das sehe ich nicht ein, es wird nur wenig mehr kosten dort zu leben als hier. 11. Bist du deiner Sache gewiss? 12. Ja wohl, weisst du, ein Vetter von mir ist kürzlich von Europa zurückgekommen, und ich habe

mich bei ihm genau nach Allem erkundigt. 13. Wo hat er die Zeit zugebracht? 14. Teils in England, teils in Frankreich (und) teils in Deutschland, und er behauptet, dass man in Europa wenigstens ebenso billig leben kann wie in Amerika. 15. Aber du hast die Reisekosten nicht mit eingerechnet. 16. Natürlich nicht, aber man reist jetzt viel billiger als man früher reiste. 17. Hast du dein Billet schon gelöst? 18. Noch nicht, aber ich habe mich darnach erkundigt und finde, dass man für hundert Thaler oder weniger über New York nach Liverpool reisen kann. 19. Zweite Klasse natürlich. 20. O nein, erste Klasse, und mit einer sehr guten Dampferlinie. 21. Ist es möglich? Du hast mich fast überredet, die Reise zu unternehmen. 22. Komm nur heute Abend zu mir und wir werden die Sache weiter besprechen. 23. Gut; also bis Abend.

B. 1. Have the goodness to read this letter for me; I have left my spectacles up-stairs, and cannot see very well. 2. Please read pretty loud, for my hearing is bad. 3. Help me to do my work, and I will help you to learn your lessons. 4. When you (man) do not know what to say (what you shall say), say nothing. 5. You will now close your books; we have read enough for the present. 6. "To err is human; to forgive, divine," is a verse from a poem by the English poet Pope. 7. I have so much work to do that I do not know where to begin. 8. Show the child how it is to learn its lesson. 9. I am tired of reading, and must now retire to rest. 10. "Eat, little bird, eat." said a child to her bird. 11. "Thou shalt not steal" is (called) the eighth commandment. 12. The habit of rising early is of great importance when one has a great deal of work to do. 13. If one wants to rise early, one should go to bed early. 14. An old, well-known proverb says: "Man does not live to eat, but eats to live." 15. Another proverb says: "Speaking is silver; silence is gold.' 16. When I arrived at the railwaystation I found that I had no money with me; imagine my embarrassment. 17. The art of making glass was already known to the ancients. 18. Are there any houses to sell or to rent in your neighbourhood? 19. I wish to speak to Mr. Bell. 20. Have (laffen) John black my shoes, for I am in a hurry. 21. I have heard say that the celebrated bishop of G. is coming; would you not like to hear him preach? 22. Yes, I should like very much to hear him preach; when is (follen) he to come here? 23. We have had the good fortune to shoot three hares. 24. Some people would rather die than beg.

## LESSON XLVI.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD (continued).

273.

Infinitive of Purpose.

The Infinitive with zu is used to express purpose, as:

Mein Freund fam, mich zu warnen, My friend came to warn me.

REMARKS.—1. The Infin. expressing purpose is generally governed by the preposition um (see § 276, 1, below), which begins the clause, as:

- Ich komme, um Sie nach Hause zu bringen, I come to fetch you home.
- 2. An Infin. clause with zu is always preceded by a comma in German.
- 3. This Infin. is also used, with or without zu, after adjectives preceded by zu, 'too,' or genug, 'enough,' as:
  - Ich war zu mübe, (um) ausgehen zu können, I was too tired to be able to go out.

Er ist reich genug, (um) viele Diener halten zu können, He is rich enough to keep many servants. Note. — After an adjective with ju, a clause introduced by als bag may be used, as:

Id war zu mübe, als daß ich ausgehen konnte, I was too tired to be able to go out.

#### 274. THE INFINITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

The Infinitive with zu is used after substantives, nouns and adjectives, akin to the verbs in § 272, to express purpose, etc., as:

Ich habe Luft, einen Spaziergang zu machen, I have a mind to take a walk.

Ich hatte keine Zeit, mich nach ihm umzusehen, I had no time to look after him.

Er ist stets bereit, ben Armen zu helsen, He is always ready to help the poor.

## 275. THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE.

The Accusative with the Infinitive is inadmissible in modern German; hence verbs denoting statement, knowledge, perception, etc., must be followed by a baß clause, as:

(Engl.) I know him to be a good man,

(Germ.) Ich weiß, daß er ein guter Mann ift.

(Engl.) I perceived her to be inattentive.

(Germ.) 3d mertte, baß fie unaufmertfam war.

REMARKS. — 1. In such sentences as those in the examples given in the above section, the passive construction with the Infin. is also inadmissible in German except impersonally, as:

(Engl.) He is known to be a good man,

(Germ.) Man weiß, daß er ein guter Mensch ist; — or : Es ist bekannt, daß er u. s. w.

2. Observe the different relations of the accusatives in the following sentences:

(Engl.) I begged him (obj. of 'begged') to come,

(Germ.) Ich bat ihn zu kommen.

(Engl.) I wish to see him (obj. of 'see'),

(Germ.) Ich wünsche, ihn zu sehen.

(Engl.) I wish him (subj. of 'come') to come,

(Germ.) Ich wünsche, daß er fomme.

3. After glauben, the Infin. is admissible in German, but not in English, when the subject of the action is the same in both clauses, as:

(Germ.) Ich glaubte, recht gehört zu haben, (Engl.) I believed that I had heard aright.

When, on the contrary, the subjects are different, the Infin. (with accus.) is admissible in English, but not in German, as:

(Engl.) I believe him to be an honest man, (Germ.) Ich glaube, daß er ein ehrlicher Mensch ist.

4. The English Infin. in objective indirect questions is unusual in German, and should be replaced by a finite clause, as:

(Engl.) He did not know where to go,

(Germ.) Er wußte nicht, wohin er gehen follte.

(Engl.) He told me what to do,

(Germ.) Er fagte mir, was ich thun follte.

## 276. THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

i. Only three prepositions can govern an infinitive (with zu) directly, viz.: um, 'in order,' shue, 'without,' and (an) flatt, 'instead of,' as:

Er kam, um mich von diesem Unfall zu benachrichtigen, He came, in order to inform me of this accident.

3d founte ihn nicht ausehen, ohne herzlich zu lachen, I could not look at him, without laughing heartily.

Anstatt mich gebuldig anzuhören, unterbrach er mich beständig, Instead of listening to me patiently, he kept constantly interrupting me.

REMARKS. — r. Observe that in each of these examples the preposition stands at the beginning of the clause, the Infinitive at the *end*, with the words dependent on the Infinitive between.

- 2. The Infinitive after of the and (an) statt may be replaced by a daß clause. This is always the case when the subject of the action is different in the two clauses (compare § 224, 2, b, Rem.). Thus we may say:
  - Ich suchte vorbeizukommen, ohne gesehen zu werden (or : ohne daß ich gesehen wurde), I tried to go past without being seen;

but we must say:

Ich suchte vorbeizukommen, ohne daß man mich sah, I tried to go past without any one's seeing me,

because the subjects of the two clauses are different.

- 277. With other prepositions, the Infinitive or baß clause is represented in the principal clause by the adverb ba prefixed to the preposition, as:
  - 3th begnügte mich bamit, ihn meine Unzufriedenheit merfen zu Iaffen, I was contented with showing him my dissatisfaction.
  - Wir verlassen uns darauf, daß Sie kommen, We rely on your coming.
  - Ich fonnte ihn nicht baran verhindern, auszugehen, I could not prevent him from going out (or: his going out).
  - Er war eifersüchtig darauf, daß wir eingeladen worden waren, He was jealous of our having been invited.

- Wir sehnen uns danach, Sie wiederzusehen, We long to see you again.
- Er findet Bergnügen daran, Kinder zu neden, He finds pleasure in teasing children.
- Sie ärgerte sich barüber, baß wir so spät kamen, She was angry at our coming so late.
- REMARKS. 1. The preposition 'of' is often omitted, as:
  Die Nachricht, bas ber Friede unterzeichnet worden war,
  The news of the peace being (having been) signed.
- 2. The Infin. clause is only admissible when the subject of the action is the same as in the principal clause (compare § 276, Rem. 2, above).
- 3. The English Infinitive in -ing, or Gerund, must be carefully distinguished from the Present Participle, with which it has no connection.
- 4. The genitive or possessive adjective in English before this Gerund will become the *subject* of the **baş** clause in German, as:
  - She was angry at our coming late, Sie war boje barüber, bağ wir zu spät kamen.
  - He insisted on his sister's learning Latin, Er bestand barauf, daß seine Schwester Latein lernte (lernen sollte).
  - 5. In an indirect question, ob takes the place of daß, as:
    - Es geht mich nichts an, ob er kommt ober nicht, It does not concern me, whether he comes or not.
- 6. When the Gerund expresses an adverbial relation (time, cause, etc.), it must be expanded into an adverbial clause, as:
  - Before concluding, I shall make one more observation, Ehe ich schließe, werde ich noch eine Bemerkung machen.

On seeing me, he held out his hand to me, Mis er mich fah, hielt er mir die hand hin.

In persuading others we persuade ourselves, Indem wir andere überreden, überreben wir uns selbst.

## 278. THE INFINITIVE IN ELLIPTICAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

r. The Infinitive is used, as in English, in various elliptical constructions, without being dependent on any other word, as:

Marum mich weden? Why waken me?

Nach seinem Aussehen zu urteilen, To judge from his appearance.

2. For the Infinitive with the force of an Imperative, see § 269, Rem. 5, above.

#### EXERCISE XLVI.

A. 1. Nicht wa..r, Fräulein B., Sie waren gestern Abend im Konzert? 2. Ja. waren Sie auch dort? Ich habe Sie nicht gesehen. 3. Das ist gern möglich; unter so vielen Menschen findet man sich nicht leicht. 4. Der Saal war gedrängt voll. wahrscheinlich weil das Konzert zum Besten des neuen Waisenhauses gegeben wurde. 5. Nicht allein das, sondern auch weil die neue Sängerin, Fräulein M., zum ersten Male auftrat. 6. Das Publikum schien von ihr ganz entzückt zu sein, und die Zeitungen sind heute Morgen voll ihres Ruhmes. 7. Ich habe nie eine so klare und starke Stimme gehört. 8. In der Arie aus Lohengrin hat sie sich besonders ausgezeichnet. 9. Das Lied von Schubert mit Harfen-Begleitung gefiel mir am besten. 10. Frau S. sang auch sehr gut, aber Sie schien ein wenig heiser zu sein. 11. Trotz dem, was die Kritiker sagen, gesiel mir ihr Gesang besser als der von Frl. M. 12. Ich finde auch. dass sie mit mehr Gefühl singt und dass ihre Stimme geschulter ist. 13. Was halten Sie vom Geigenspiel des Herrn K.? 14. Es muss sehr gut sein, dem Beifall nach zu urteilen, aber ich verstehe mich nicht auf die Geige. 15. Ich ziehe die Geige jedem andern Instrumente vor. 16. Spielt Ihr ältester Bruder nicht die Geige? 17. Nein, aber er spielt die Flöte und begleitet mich oft, wenn ich auf dem Klavier spiele. 18. Ihre Familie ist überhaupt sehr musikalisch. 19. Ja wohl, wir spielen fast alle mehr oder weniger. 20. Selbst Ihre kleinen Geschwister? 21. Ja, Marie spielt die Guitarre, Anna die Geige und Friedrich nimmt seit einigen Monaten Stunden auf dem Violoncell. 22. Wissen Sie, ob viel für das Waisenhaus übrig bleibt, nachdem alle Kosten bestritten sind? 23. Etwa fünf hundert Thaler, doch beabsichtigt man, ein zweites Konzert im Laufe des Winters für denselben Zweck zu geben.

B. 1. Let us (indef.) not return evil for evil. 2. Do what is right, let it cost what it may. 3. The eighth commandment says that we are not to steal. 4. He was punished for having neglected his duty. 5. The teacher told us we should close our books, we had read enough for the present. 6. Freddy, do you stand, and give your little brother your chair. 7. In German they say of one who buys anything without seeing it that he buys a cat in a bag. 8. Do you care to go for a drive with us? 9. No, thank you. Do you ride (fahren); I prefer to walk. 10. Who has left these books lying on the table? 11. John; and he says he forgot to take them up. 12. Bid him carry them up immediately into the study, and then let him come down here. 13. Every one thought Mr. N. to be a rich man, but he failed (perf.) lately. 14. I have not a single pen fit to write with, and I have a dozen letters to write. 15. Do not allow yourself to be disturbed by my coming; do not stop writing. 16. The beggar, of whom we were speaking in another exercise, passed his youth in idling instead of working. 17. Little Frederick had the misfortune to break an arm while skating, and he was obliged to remain lying in bed a week. 18. Alfred the Great divided the day into three parts: one part was devoted to business, the second to reading, praying and studying, and the third to eating, sleeping and pleasure. 19. We wished our friends to come in, but they had no time. 20. I am glad to have made your acquaintance. 21. If you go hunting without your father knowing it, he will be very much displeased. 22. Our teacher used to insist on our writing a German exercise every day, and it was impossible for us to neglect this duty without his knowing it. 23. Before going home we must go to visit your old friend L. If you went away without his seeing you, he would be very sorry. 24. We heard some one coming behind us on the street, and we remained standing at the corner to see who it was. 25. Our old neighbour has three sons, but instead of their supporting him, he is obliged to support them. Is he not very much to be pitied?

## LESSON XLVII.

#### THE PARTICIPLES.

279. The Participles are properly Verbal Adjectives, and their uses and constructions are those of Adjectives. There are three Participles, the Present, the Past and the Future-Passive or Gerundive. The English compound Perfect Participle (e. g., 'having praised') has no corresponding form in German, and must be rendered by a clause (see § 284, below).

# 280. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The Present Participle has active force, and, like the Present Indic., marks a present or continuing state or action, the substantive which it qualifies being the subject of the action, as:

Das ichlasende Kind, The sleeping child (= 'the child that sleeps').

Eine haarsträubende Geschichte, A story that makes one's hair stand on end.

The Present Participle is for the most part used only attributively, as in the above examples. It is used predicatively only:

(a) When it is a true adjective in function, without any idea of time, as:

Seine Krantheit ist nicht bedeutend, His illness is not serious.

Die Schönheit dieser Landschaft ist entzückend, The beauty of this landscape is enchanting (i. e., delightful).

(b) In apposition with the *subject* (sometimes also with the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, when the action of the Participle is *simultaneous* with that of the principal verb, as:

Sich schnell nach mir umwendend, sah er mir ins Gesicht, Turning quickly around, he looked into my face.

Errötend schlug sie die Augen nieder, Blushing she dropped her eyes.

Preisend mit viel schönen Reben Ihrer Länder Wert und Zahl, Saßen viele deutsche Fürsten Einst zu Worms im Kaisersaal. (Kerner.)

Praising with many fine speeches the worth and number of their territories, many German princes were sitting one day in the Imperial Hall at Worms.

REMARKS. — 1. This construction is more usual in poetic or exalted diction than in ordinary language, where it is generally replaced by an adverbial clause (see § 284, below).

2. The Present Participle is not used in German, as it is in English, with the auxiliary 'to be' (see § 31, Rem. 3).

#### 281. THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The Past Participle of a *transitive* verb has passive force, not necessarily with any distinct reference to past time, as:

Das geliebte Rind, The beloved child (i. e., the child that is or was beloved).

But when the participle indicates a single action, it has perfect force, as:

Das gestuhiene Pferb, The horse which has been stolen.

The Past Participle of an *intransitive* verb has active force, as:

Die Musik hat aufgehört, The music has ceased.

REMARKS. — 1. The Past Participle of transitive verbs may be used attributively as well as predicatively, as in the first two examples above.

2. The Past Participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with sein is sometimes used attributively and denotes a *state* produced by the action of the verb, as:

Das weggelaufene Pferd, The horse which had run away; but not: Das gelaufene Pferd.

3. The Past Participle, like the Present (compare § 280 b, above), may be used predicatively in apposition to the subject (or sometimes to the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, as:

Das Bolf, bom Fürsten unterdrückt, empörte sich gegen ihn, The people, oppressed by the prince, revolted against him.

- 4. For the Past Participle with Imperative force, see §269, 5.
- 5. The Past Participle replaces the English *Present* Participle after formen to specify the manner of the motion, as:

Er fam gegangen, gelaufen u. f. w., He came walking, running, etc.

- 6. After verbs of calling, it is used for the Infinitive, as:

  Das heißt (nenne ich) für die Zufunft geforgt, That is (I call that) caring for the future.
- 7. It also replaces an Infinitive in such phrases as the following:
  - Ich muß fort! Lieber hier Alles im Stiche gelassen! I must go! Rather (would I) leave everything in the lurch here. (Lessing.)
- 8. It is used in a few *absolute* constructions, with or without a substantive, which is usually in the accusative when present, as:

Bugegeben, daß dies wahr ist, Granted that this is true. Meinen Bruder ausgenommen, waren alle zugegen, Except my brother, all were present.

## 282. THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

This Participle, also called the Gerundive, has the form of the Present Part. preceded by zu. It is formed from transitive verbs only, and is only used attributively, being replaced in the predicate by an infinitive with zu, as:

Eine zu lobende Handlung, An act to be praised; but: Eine Handlung, welche zu loben ist.

#### 283. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE PARTICIPLES.

1. Many words with the form of Participles have the value of adjectives. Some occur as adjectives only (see also § 194, Note), others with a special meaning, as: gelehrt, learned; befannt, acquainted; verschieden, different; bejahrt, aged, etc.

- 2. All Participles (except the Past Part. of some intransitive verbs, see § 281, Rem. 2, above) may be used as pure adjectives, and as such may be compared or used as adjectival substantives (see § 122), frequently with concrete meaning, as: ber Reifenbe, the traveller; ber Lefenbe, the man who reads; ber Borfitzenbe, the chairman; bas Gelefene, what one has read.
- 3. Participles, unless they have become pure adjectives, are used sparingly as adverbs; but the Participle in apposition (see §§ 280, 6; 281, 3, above) may sometimes be construed as an adverb, e.g.:

Schweigend brückte er mir die Hand, Silently (in silence) he pressed my hand.

Remark. — This participial adverb of manner may be replaced by an adverbial clause with indem.

4. The Participle, when used attributively, *always* follows all words qualifying or modifying it, and immediately precedes its substantive; as predicate, it sometimes, especially in poetry, precedes them (see § 280 b, above), but generally and more correctly follows, as:

Das von seinen Estern innig geliebte Kind, The child, dearly beloved by its parents.

Mit der einen Hand schwimmend, mit der andern das Kind über dem Wasser emporhaltend u. s. w., Swimming with one hand, with the other holding the child above water, etc.

Das Bolf, vom Fürsten unterdrückt u. s. w., The people, oppressed by the prince, etc.

#### 284. ENGLISH PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

1. The Present Participle is never used in German, as it so frequently is in English, to express adverbial relations of time

or cause, and must be replaced, where so used, by a regular adverbial clause, introduced by the proper adverb or conjunction, as follows:

(a) To express time, the conjunctions da, als, 'when,' indem, während, 'while,' must be used, as:

Seeing him turn pale, I hastened to his assistance, Da (als) ich ihn erbleichen sah, eilte ich ihm zur Hilfe herbei.
Recovering himself, the orator continued, Indem er sich sammelte, suhr der Redner fort.

REMARKS. — 1. The English Perfect Participle is replaced by a clause with maditem (or als), with the Pluperfect, as:

Having examined his papers, they let him go, Nachbem man seine Papiere untersucht hatte, ließ man ihn gehen.

- 2. The clause with indem, indicating simultaneous action, may be replaced by a participial clause in the case specified in § 280, b, above.
  - (b) To express cause, the conjunctions ba, indem, 'as,' 'since,' or weil, 'because,' must be used, as:

Being an honest man, he may be trusted, Weil er ein ehrlicher Mann ist, so fann man ihm trauen.

Hoping to see you soon, I remain ever yours, Indem ich hoffe, Sie bald zu sehen, verbleibe ich stets der Ihrige.

Not having found him at home, I went away, Da ich ihn nicht zu Hause gefunden hatte, ging ich fort.

- 2. The Present Participle qualifying a preceding substantive or pronoun is changed:
  - (a) Into a regular relative clause with finite verb, as:
    - A loaf was found at Herculaneum, still retaining its form, Gin Brot wurde zu Herculanum gefunden, welches noch die Form beibehielt.

The ship, having come straight towards us, showed the black flag, Das Schiff, welches gerade auf uns zugekommen war, zeigte die schwarze Flagge.

Note. — The tense of the verb in the adverbial clause will correspond with that of the principal verb, as shown above, the Pluperfect, however, generally replacing the English Perfect Participles.

- (b) Into an attributive participial clause, in which the Participle will immediately precede the substantive (see § 283, 4, above), as:
  - A man passing on the street, Gin auf der Strafe vorbeigehender Mann.
- 3. A Participle preceded by an adverbial conjunction is replaced by a finite clause with the corresponding conjunction, as:
  - While travelling in Europe, we met a great many Americans, Als wir in Europa reisten, trasen wir mit vielen Amerikanern zusammen.

For the Infinitive in -ing, or Gerund, and its German equivalents, see § 276, above.

#### EXERCISE XLVII.

A. 1. Haben Sie Ihr Billet schon gelöst? 2. Nein, noch nicht. 3. Dann müssen wir uns beeilen; wir sollten erst etwas geniessen, ehe wir abreisen. 4. Hier ist der Schalter; soll ich auch ein Billet für Sie nehmen? 5. Danke, ich habe meins schon gelöst. 6. Jetzt bin ich fertig, aber wir haben kaum drei Viertelstunden Zeit, bis der Zug abfährt. 7. Dann müssen wir nach der ersten besten Restauration gehen. 8. Dort drüben ist eine. 9. Das trifft sich gut; gehen wir gleich hinein. 10. Kellner, wir haben es sehr eilig. 11. Nehmen Sie Platz, meine Herren; ich werde Sie sofort bedienen; hier ist die Speisekarte. 12. Geben Sie mir gefälligst einen Teller Suppe. 13. Und Sie, mein Herr? 14. Bringen Sie mir zuerst eine Serviette. 15. Entschuldigen Sie, hier ist sie. 16. Ich nehme

eine Forelle. 17. Bedaure, es ist keine mehr da. 18. Nun, dann bringen Sie mir ein Stück Lachs. 19. Hier ist die Weinkarte; trinken die Herren Wein? 20. Bringen Sie eine Flasche Rotwein und Gläser. 21. Wie schmeckt Ihnen der Fisch? 22. Ausgezeichnet. 23. Diese Suppe schmeckt mir gar nicht. 24. Lassen Sie sich doch Fisch kommen. 25. Ich mache mir nichts aus Fisch; — Kellner! 26. Zu Befehl. 27. Eine Portion Entenbraten mit grünen Erbsen. 28. Wünschen Sie keine Kartoffeln? 29. Jawohl, gebratene Kartoffeln. Bringen Sie auch Brot. 30. Noch etwas? 31. Nein. Was wünschen Sie, Herr B.? 32. Bitte, reichen Sie mir die Speisekarte. Ich bestelle mir Kalbskoteletten mit Kartoffeln und gelben Rüben. 33. Sonst noch Gemüse? 34. Etwas Blumenkohl. 35. Erinnern Sie sich schon früher hier gespeist zu haben, Herr B.? 36. Nicht dass ich wüsste; die Restauration scheint neu zu sein. 37. Deshalb wird man vielleicht so gut bedient. 38. Ist den Herren etwas gefällig? 39. Bringen Sie mir eine Portion Eis und eine Tasse Kaffee. 40. Und mir eine Tasse Chocolade und eine Portion Erdbeeren mit Sahne, und schreiben Sie alles auf meine Rechnung. 41. Hier ist die Rechnung, mein Herr. 42. Wie viel beträgt sie? 43. Sieben Mark fünfzig Pfennig. 44. Hier sind acht Mark; das Übrige ist Ihr Trinkgeld. 45. Jetzt müssen wir fort; es hat soeben auf dem Bahnhofe zum ersten Male geläutet.

B. 1. A sleeping fox catches no chicken. 2. Sleeping dogs do not bite. 3. The past cannot be helped (changed); let us rather think of what is to come. 4. It is much better to think without speaking than to speak without thinking. 5. Man is a speaking animal, a fire-using animal, a laughing animal: these are some of the definitions which have been proposed by philosophers. 6. We learn to speak German in speaking German. 7. Well hit (treffen)! I call that well played! 8. I wanted to show you an article in yesterday's

paper, but it is nowhere to be found. 9. Let me know when you think of coming to town. 10. The skill of ants in the building of their nests is astonishing. 11. Smiling, he began to read the letter, but before having read the half of it, he threw it furiously on the floor. 12. A hussar came galloping down the street and said the battle was beginning. 13. The Paradise Lost of Milton is one of the most important works of English literature; it was written in the seventeenth century, but this does not prevent its being still much read. 14. After having been so well received by us, I wonder that he is not ashamed to speak evil of us. 15. The morning was cool and charming, but towards noon the heat became oppressive, and we saw great clouds rising in the west. 16. He says the matter is perfectly clear, but his saying so does not make any difference. 17. He went away complaining that there was no use talking to people who did not want to understand. 18. That was because he was angry, and because he had not succeeded in making himself understood (perständlich), 19. Make no mistakes in copying your exercise, or else a second copying will be your punishment. 20. Besides making mistakes the last time, you wrote very badly. 21. "The danger to be avoided," said he, "is not yet past." 22. Going (hingeben) to visit our friends in Schiller-street this afternoon, we met them coming to visit us. 23. His being rich is no excuse for his being lazy; we do not need to be idle merely because we are not forced to earn our bread. 24. A certain man, just before dying, called his sons to him, and told them there was a treasure lying hidden somewhere in his field. 25. Believing they would find it, they began digging everywhere, but without finding the wished-for (erwünscht) treasure. 26. One of them, wiser than the others, finally guessed what his father had meant by having told them this. 27. This son said that since digging the ground the crop had been much better, and that this was the treasure the father meant.

### LESSON XLVIII.

#### CONCORD AND APPOSITION.

# 285. CONCORD OF SUBJECT AND VERB.

- r. The predicate verb (the *finite* part, or that containing the *copula*) agrees with its subject in number and person.
  - 2. Two or more subjects require the verb in the plural, as:

    Mein Bater und meine Mutter sind hier gewesen, My
    father and mother have been here.

REMARKS. — 1. If the subject nearest to the verb be singular, the verb is sometimes in the singular, especially if the subjects follow the verb, as:

Seine Habsucht, seine üppige Lebensart, sein hochsahrendes Wesen brachte die Erbitterung gegen ihn aufs höchste, His avarice, his luxurious mode of living, his arrogant behaviour, excited the animosity against him to the highest point. (SCHILLER, Egmont's Leben und Tod.)

Dben bei dem Throne lag der König und die Königin, Above near the throne lay the King and Queen.

(GRIMM, Dornröschen.)

NOTE. — This is especially the case when the subjects, indicating things or abstract ideas, are regarded as forming together one idea, or are more less synonymous, e. g.:

Saus und Sof ift vertauft, House and home are sold.

Weld und Gut macht nicht glücklich, Money and property (=wealth) do not make [one] happy;

or when particular attention is called to the last (as forming a climax), e.g.:

Wein Bermögen, mein Ruf, mein Leben steht nicht auf dem Spiele, My property, my reputation, my lise (the most important of all), are not at stake.

2. If the subjects be of different *persons*, the verb agrees in person with the first rather than the second or third, and with the second rather than the third, the plural pronoun of the proper person being usually (always with the second person) expressed before the verb, as:

Du und ich (mein Bruder und ich), wir gingen aus, You and I (my brother and I) went out.

Du und beine Schwester, ihr seid ausgegangen, You and your sister went out.

3. With titles of rank and compliment the verb is usually in the plural (see also § 49), as:

Seine Majestät haben geruht u. s. w., His Majesty has been pleased, etc.

4. Collectives, if singular, take a verb in the singular, unless followed by a plural substantive in apposition or in the genitive, as:

Eine große Menschenmenge war zugegen ; - but :

Eine große Menge Menschen waren zugegen, A great number of people were present.

Notes.— i. The singular may also be used in such cases as that given in the second example above, unless the collective is considered with reference to its component parts *individually*.

2. With nouns of Number in the sing. (see § 185, 1) the verb is used in the plur. only when an *indefinite* quantity is meant, as:

Sin paar (= einige) Tage waren vergangen, A few days had passed; — but:

Ein Paar Stiefel fostet sieben Thaler, A pair of shoes costs seven dollars.

5. When the real (logical) subject is represented by ¢\$, or some other neut. sing. pron., before the verb (see §\$ 39; 82, Rem. 2; 141), the verb agrees with the *logical*, not with the grammatical subject, as:

Es find meine Brüder, It is my brothers.

NOTE. — With a *personal* pronoun as subject, this es follows the verb (see § 39, 2).

6. If the subjects be separated by a disjunctive conjunction or conjunctions, the verb regularly agrees with the last only, but this rule is by no means so strictly observed as in English, even by the best writers, e. g.:

Weder die Union noch die Lique mischten sich in diesen Streit, Neither the Union nor the league took part in this dispute.

Sowohl die Lage als die Befestigung dieser Stadt schienen jedem Angriffe Trotz zu bieten, The situation, as well as the fortification, of this city seemed to defy every attack. (SCHILLER, 30jähriger Krieg.)

Notes. - I. Constructions like the following:

Entweber bu ober ich bin taub, Either you or I am deaf, are in German, as in English, felt to be awkward, and are therefore avoided by substituting some other construction, e. g.:

Entweder ich bin taub, oder du bift es, Either I am deaf, or you are.

2. The sing is used after expressions of the time of day, and in the multiplication-table, as:

Es ift zehn Uhr, It is ten o'clock.

Behn mal elf ift (mant) hundert und zehn, Ten times eleven is one hundred and ten.

## 286. Repetition of Subject.

When several connected sentences have a common subject, the subject must be repeated (as pronoun) when the order of the words is changed, as:

Der Zug kommt um neun Uhr an, und fährt um halb zehn wieder ab, The train arrives at nine o'clock, and leaves again at half-past nine; — but:

Der Zug fommt um neun Uhr an, und um halb zehn fährt er wieder ab, The train arrives at nine o'clock, and at half-past nine it leaves again.

# 287. Omission of Predicative Verb.

haben and sein, as auxiliaries of tense, may be omitted in a subcrdinate sentence, as:

Nachdem sie den Brief gelesen, weinte sie, After she had read the letter, she wept.

## 288. OTHER CONCORDS.

- I. The Attributive (or Determinative) Adjective agrees with the substantives it qualifies in gender, number and case (for inflections see Less. XX, XXII, XXIV); the Predicative Adjective has no inflection (see § 14).
- 2. For the concord of Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives with their antecedent (in gender, number and person) see §§ 38, Rem. 4; 39; 43, Rem. 3, 4; 82, Rem. 1, 2; 83, Rem. 1; 86; 95, 1 (b); 162, 2.

Note. — A Relative Pronoun referring to an antecedent of the first or second person takes the verb in the *third* person, unless the relative is followed by the personal pronoun, as stated in § 95, 1 (b), e. g.:

Bist du e8, der so zittert? — or: Bist du e8, der du so zitterst? ? Is it you that tremble?

## **289.** The Appositive Substantive.

1. A substantive or pronoun may have another substantive attached to it attributively, giving a further description or definition of the person or thing spoken of. This latter substantive is said to be in apposition to the former, as:

Mein Freund, der Lehrer, trug seine einzige Waffe, einen diden Stod, in der Hand, My friend, the teacher, carried his only weapon, a thick stick, in his hand.

2. A substantive or pronoun may also be placed in apposition to a sentence or clause, as:

Er fagte, daß er wieder ganz gefund sei, eine Behauptung, welche ich bezweifelte, or: was ich bezweifelte, He said he was quite well again, a statement which I doubted.

- 3. The appositive substantive is in the same case as the substantive which it defines, thus:
  - Rarl (Nom.), mein jüngster Bruder, ist frank, Charles, my youngest brother, is ill.
  - Die Krankheit Karls (Gen.), meines jüngsten Bruders, The illness of Charles, my youngest brother.
  - Eine gefährliche Krankheit drohte (intr.) Karl (Dat.), meisnem jüngsten Bruder; or: bedrohte (trans.) Karl (Acc.), meinen jüngsten Bruder, A dangerous illness threatened Charles, my youngest brother.

Notes. -1. A substantive in apposition to a sentence is put in the Nominative, as in the example under 2, above.

- 2. An appositive genitive without a determinative word before it, especially when governing another genitive, is uninflected, as:
  - Die Krankheit des Krouprinzen, Sohn des deutschen Kaisers, The illness of the Crown-Prince, son of the German Emperor; but:
  - Die Krankheit des Kronprinzen, des ältesten Sohnes u. s. w., The illness of the Crown-Prince, the eldest son, etc.
- 4. The appositive substantive generally agrees also in number with the word it defines, except in the case of abstract substantives and collectives, as:
  - Corneliens Rinder, ihr Stolz und ihre Freude, Cornelia's children, her pride and joy.
  - Da lebten die Hirten, ein harmlos Geschlecht, There lived the shepherds, a harmless race. (Schiller.)
- 5. The appositive substantive agrees in gender when there is a special form for the feminine, as:
  - Die Gravitation ist die Lenkerin der Bahnen aller himmelskörper, Gravitation is the director of the courses of all heavenly bodies.
- 6. These rules are also applicable to an apposition introduced by als, 'as,' e.g.:

3ch fannte ihn als Rnabe (Nom.), I knew him as (when) a boy (i. e., when I was a boy); — but:

Ich fannte ihn als Anaben, I knew him when (he was) a boy.

#### EXERCISE XLVIII.

A. 1. Können Sie mir eine gute Buchhandlung empfehlen? 2. Was für Bücher wollen Sie kaufen? 3. Ich möchte mir die Werke einiger von den besten deutschen Schriftstellern anschaffen. 4. Sie sollten zu Herrn Braun gehen; er hat einen sehr groszen Vorrat, besonders von den deutschen Klassikern. 5. Wo ist das Geschäft? 6. Nur einige Schritt(e) von hier, Nummer fünf, um die Ecke; ich werde Sie begleiten. 7. Das wäre mir sehr angenehm. 8. Sie scheinen ein groszer Bücherfreund zu sein. 9. Ja, das ist eine Schwäche, die mich viel Geld kostet, aber mir auch viel Vergnügen macht. 10. Hier ist der Laden; ich erwarte Sie auf meinem Bureau, wenn Sie fertig sind. 11. Ich danke vielmals für Ihre Aufmerksamkeit. Also, auf Wiedersehen. 12. Zeigen Sie mir gefälligst einige Exemplare von Schillers Werken. 13. Gebunden oder ungebunden? 14. Zeigen Sie mir beides. 15. Aus wie vielen Bänden besteht dieses Exemplar? 16. Aus zwölf, und ich möchte Sie auf den ausgezeichneten Druck aufmerksam machen. 17. Der Druck ist sehr klar; haben Sie noch sonstige (andere) Ausgaben? 18. Wir haben Ausgaben in gröszerem Format', aber nur gebunden. Hier sind sie. 19. Das Format gefällt mir besser, aber ich mag den Einband nicht. 20. Dem ist leicht abzuhelfen. Ich bestelle Ihnen ein Exemplar und lasse es nach Ihrem Geschmack einbinden. 21. Gut, ich möchte es in braunem Leder mit Titel gebunden haben; aber wie viel soll ich Ihnen dafür bezahlen? 22. Die Ausgabe kostet zehn Thaler, der Einband fünf. 23. Bekomme ich Rabatt'? 24. Ja, zehn Prozent gegen bare Bezahlung. 25. Ich bezahle bar; das macht zwei und vierzig Mark. 26. Wünschen Sie noch etwas? 27. Ich

möchte auch Goethes sämmtliche Werke in demselben Format und Einband haben. 28. Es thut mir leid, dass wir keine mehr haben, aber ich kann sie bestellen und gleich mit der anderen Ausgabe einbinden lassen. 29. Zum selben Preise? 30. Nein, es wird mit Einband achtzehn Thaler netto betragen. 31. Dann besorgen Sie es gefälligst, und schicken Sie mir die Werke nebst Rechnung an diese Adresse; hier ist meine Karte. 32. Ich besorge alles aufs Sorgfältigste; binnen acht Tagen sollen Sie die Bücher haben.

B. 1. "Books," said Alfonso the Wise of Spain, "are my most honest councillors: neither fear nor hope prevents them telling me what my duty is." 2. "It is not my courtiers." said this king, "who tell me most honestly what my duty is, it is my books." 3. "No courtier dares to say to a king: 'Your Majesty is wrong,' but my books tell me so every day." 4. I asked a gentleman standing near me, if he knew what time it was, and he answered me that it was exactly twelve o'clock. 5. More than two hours have passed since then, so it must now be between two and three o'clock. 6. Was it you that came to see me yesterday, when I was away from home? 7. Yes, my brother and I wanted to visit you, and we were sorry not to find you at home. 8. Margaret, the eldest daughter of Henry VII. of England, married James IV. of Scotland. 9. These were the grand-parents of Mary Stuart, Queen of Scotland. 10. To do what\_is\_right, and to be happy, is one and the same, for virtue is its own reward. 11. Dear father and mother, do you remain sitting here until I go for a carriage to drive you home, for I know you are too tired to walk. 12. Twelve and twelve make twenty-four, and twelve times twelve is one hundred and forty-four. After having seen London and Paris, we had not much desire to see other cities. 14. I wrote to K., inviting him to pass his holidays with us, and by return of post received a letter,

saying we might expect him in a fortnight. 15. I asked you first as my oldest friend to assist me in this embarrassment. 16. I know we should avoid asking our friends for help until we have done our utmost to help ourselves. 17. The huntsman whistled, and his dogs came running from the wood. 18. Our teacher was in the habit of telling us we should do what was right, let it cost what it would. 19. Is your teacher still living? Yes, he is still living, but he is getting very old now. 20. Goethe and Schiller are the two greatest poets of Germany: it is difficult to say which of the two is most beloved by the German people. 21. If you think we are right, give us some sign of approval: a word, a smile, a glance will suffice. 22. All the rest of our party arrived at the top of the mountain before sunset, but my friend and I arrived only at nine in the evening. 23. Expect us on Thursday next, health and weather permitting. 24. The gentleman coming out of that shop is Dr. B., and the lady accompanying him is his niece, Miss L. 25. Did you ever see the Emperor William? I have never seen him as Emperor of Germany. but I saw him many years ago as King of Prussia.

#### LESSON XLIX.

APPOSITION (continued): — APPOSITIVE ADJECTIVES. — > SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

290. The Appositive Adjective.

r. Attributive Adjectives and participles are said to be used appositively when they are separated from their substantive, as:

Der Page, jung, hubich und geistreich, war der Liebling des Hauses, The page, young, handsome and clever, was the favourite of the house.

- In der Schlacht feurig und furchtlos, war Monmouth fonst überall weichlich und unschlüssig, Ardent and intrepid in battle, Monmouth was everywhere else effeminate and irresolute.
- 2. This appositive adjective or participle is, like the predicate adjective, uninflected, and is placed at the end of its clause. It is used much more sparingly in German than in English, and is almost wholly confined to apposition with the subject of the sentence (sometimes also with the direct object). In English the attributive adjective or participle is generally used appositively when it has more than one modifier, and always when it has a complement (as in the second example above). In German on the contrary the attributive adjective is freely used in all such cases before a substantive. All such appositive adjectives or participles, unless referring to the subject (or direct object) of the sentence, must be rendered in German either by an attributive or by a relative clause. The following examples will serve to illustrate to what extent the appositive adjective can be used in German, and to show how it is to be replaced in German in various connections.
  - (a) English Appositive = German Appositive (see also the examples under 1, above):
    - (Engl.) Beleaguered with present distresses and the most horrible forebodings on every side, roused to the highest pitch of indignation, yet forced to keep silence and wear the face of patience, Schiller could endure this constraint no longer. (Carlyle, Life of Schiller.)
    - (Germ.) Bon gegenwärtigen Nöten und ben schrecklichsten Uhnungen von allen Seiten heimgesucht, bis auf ben höchsten Grad entrüstet, gezwungen jedoch, stillzusschweigen und die Maske der Geduld zu tragen, konnte Schiller diesen Zwang nicht länger erdulden.

NOTE. - In this example, as in those under I. above, the adjectives (participles) beleaguered, etc., are in apposition to the subject 'Schiller.'

- (b) English Appositive Adjective = German Attributive Adjective or Relative Clause:
  - (Engl.) To judge from the quantity of light emitted from the brightest stars, there is (one has) reason to suppose that some of them are much greater than the sun.
- (i) { (Germ.) Nach der bon den hellsten Sternen ausgestrahl= ten Lichtmaffe zu urteilen, bat man Grund anzunehmen, daß einige davon viel größer find als die Sonne; or: nach ber Lichtmaffe zu urteilen, welche u. f. w. ausge= ftrahlt wird u. f. w.
  - (Engl.) In the Isle of Man vast trees are found
- standing firm on their roots.
  (Germ.) Auf der Juselln findet man mächtige Bäume, welche auf den Burzeln feststehen; or: mächtige, auf den Burzeln sessene.

Notes. - 1. The participles in these examples are in apposition to the objects 'quantity (of light)' and 'tree' respectively.

- 2. Observe the position of the Germ. attributive adj. immediately before the substantine.
  - (c) English Appositive Adjective = German Attributive Adjective:
    - (Engl.) Bruce caused his men to lie down to take
  - some sleep at a place about half a mile distant from the river.

    (Germ.) Bruce ließ seine Leute sich an einer ungefähr eine halbe Meile vom Flusse entsernten Stelle nieders legen, um ein wenig zu fchlafen.

Note. - An attributive clause is preferable here, since a relative clause would separate the clause of purpose (um, etc.) from the infin. (nieberlegen) on which it depends.

Engl.) During the eruption of the volcano, the dark-

ness occasioned by the ashes was so profound, that nothing like it was ever experienced.

(Germ.) Während des Ausbruches des Bulfans war die durch die Ashe verursachte Finsternis so tief, wie man nie etwas Ühnliches wahrgenommen hatte.

Note. - Although the participle 'occasioned' is here in apposition to the subject 'darkness,' yet the position of the subject after the verb forbids the use of the appositive construction in German, as also in the following sentence:

- (iii)  $\{ (Engl.) \text{ It was a place advantageous for defence.} \\ (Germ.) Es war eine zur Verteibigung günstige Stelle. }$ 
  - (d) English Appositive Adjective = German Relative Clause:
    - (Engl.) This plant has changed into two distinct vegetables, as unlike each other as is each of
    - them to the parent-plant.

      (Germ.) Diese Pflanze hat sich in zwei verschiedene Gemüsearten verwandelt, welche einander so unähnlich find, wie jede derfelben der Mutterpflanze ift.

Note. - Here the attributive construction is inadmissible on account of the subsequent clause wie jede u. f. w.

#### SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITIONS. 291.

The cases governed by the various Prepositions are fully treated of in Lessons IX, XIII, A, and XXXVIII, and their idiomatic use is further defined in Less. XXXIX.

The object of many verbs, as well as that of substantives and adjectives corresponding with them in signification, is expressed by prepositions. The proper use of prepositions after verbs, etc., must be learnt from practice and from the dictionary; but below is given, for convenient reference, the regimen of particular classes of verbs, etc., which differ most widely from their English equivalents.

r. at, of = ""ber + Acc., of sorrow, joy, wonder, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives. Ürger, vexation

sich ärgern, be vexed erröten, blush

Errötung, blush
Erstaunen, astonishment

erstaunen, be astonished sich freuen, rejoice

Freude, joy (also an + Dat.)

fich grämen, grieve klagen, complain Gram, grief Klage, complaint Gelächter, laughter

lachen, laugh sich schämen, be ashamed

Scham, Beschämung, shame

spotten, mock sich (ver)wundern, wonder

Spott, mockery Berwunderung, surprise

Also the Adjectives ärgerlich, vexed; böse, angry (at things); empfinblich, sensitive; froh, lustig, merry.

Note. - Böse takes auf + Acc. when referring to persons.

- 2. for = auf + Acc., of expectation, etc., as: gefaßt, prepared; hoffen, Hoffinng, hope; warten, wait.
  - 3. for = nath, of longing, inquiring, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives.

bürsten, thirst forschen, inquire hungern, hunger jagen, hunt suchen, search sich sehnen, long

verlangen, desire

Durst, thirst
Forschung, inquiry
Hunger, hunger
Jagd, chase
Lust,
Verlangen,
desire

Also the Adjectives durstig, thirsty; ehrgeizig, ambitious; gierig, greedy; hungrig, hungry.

4. for = um, of entreaty, etc., as: bitten, ask; buhlen, court; flehen, beg; sich kümmern, concern one's self.

- 5. from = vor + Dat., of protection, etc., as: bewahren, preserve; hüten, protect; retten, save.
- 6. in = an + Dat., of plenty, want, etc., as: arm, poor; fruchtbar, fruitful; reich, rich; schwach, weak; start, strong.

7. in or on = auf + Acc., of confidence, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives.

sich brüsten, boast sich verlassen, rely vertrauen, trust Stolz, pride Verlaß, reliance Vertrauen, confidence

8. of = an + Dat., of plenty, want, doubt, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives.

fehlen (impers.), be wanting mangeln " be wanting weifeln, doubt berzweifeln, despair

Mangel, want Reichtum, wealth Überfluß, superfluity Zweifel, doubt

Also the Adjectives frant, sick; leer, empty.

q. of = an + Acc., of remembrance, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives.

benken, think erinnern, remind Gedanke, thought

sich erinnern, recollect

Grinnerung, recollection

Note. — These verbs also govern the Genitive. See § 245.

10. of = auf + Acc. of suspicion, envy, pride, etc., as:

Substantives. Adjectives.

Acht (geben), (pay) attention Argwohn, suspicion Eifersucht, jealousy Neid, envy

achtsam,
ausmerksam,
argwöhnisch, suspicious
eisersüchtig, jealous
eitel, vain
neidisch, envious
stolz, proud

# 11. of = bor + Dat., of fear, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives.

Fid, fürchten, be afraid

reschrecken, be terrified

grauen, dread

Substantives.

Furcht, fear

Schreck, terror

Grauen, dread

Also the adjectives bange, afraid; sicher, certain, sure.

12. to = an + Acc., of address, etc., as: adressieren, address; schreiben, write; sich richten, turn; sich wenden, apply.

13. to = gegen, after Adjectives signifying an affection of the mind, as: barmherzig, merciful; feinblid, hostile; freund=lid, friendly; gerecht, just; gleichgiltig, indifferent; gnädig, gracious; graufam, cruel; nachfichtig, indulgent.

### EXERCISE XLIX.

1. My sister is vexed at not receiving an invitation to the party. 2. I am tired of waiting for Charles; let us go without him. 3. Oh no, do not let us go yet; he will be angry at us, if we do not wait for him. 4. Charles has many good qualities, but you cannot rely upon him. 5. The boy is proud of the watch given to him by his father. 6. If you lose your way in a city, it is always safest to apply to a policeman. 7. I have no doubt that this is good advice. 8. Mary is angry at Sarah, because Sarah has made sport of her. 9. Our neighbour has been ill for some days; he complains of rheumatism, and says he has caught cold. 10. I am less vexed at his not coming than at his not sending us word. 11. The war had already lasted more than four years, and people were longing for peace. 12. Diogenes is said to have gone once in daylight through the streets of the city, carrying at the same time a lantern. 13. People began to laugh at him and mock him, asking him what he was looking for. 14. He replied that he was looking for an honest man. 15. The general postponed attacking the enemy, because his army was weak in artillery.

16. Mr. Kalk, the architect, promised that my house should be finished before the 1st July, but I doubt it. 17. The Province of Ontario is rich in iron, but is wanting in coal to smelt it. 18. We have been thinking for some time of selling our house. but we cannot find anyone who is willing to buy it. 19. Be good enough to remind me to buy some postage-stamps, when we go past the post-office. 20. We may learn as much by paying attention to what we see and hear as we can learn from books. 21. The horses, frightened by a passing train, shied, and were on the point of running away. 22. The first settlers in this country had much to endure: they lived for the most part in houses built of [the] trunks\_of\_trees and covered in many cases with bark. 23. (Just) as many people lost their lives (the life) by the famine occasioned by the earthquake, as by the earthquake itself. 24. The bad news received yesterday has prevented our going to town to-day. 25. There are men who grow richer by giving than others [do] by receiving.

# LESSON L.

# WORD-ORDER.

# 292. THE ESSENTIAL PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

r. Every sentence contains three essential parts, viz: the Subject, or that of which something is asserted, the Predicate, or that which is said of the Subject, and, thirdly, the Verb or Copula, the word which makes the assertion, and which may include the Predicate (as in the simple tenses of a verb), but does not necessarily do so. Thus, in the sentence: 'He sings,' 'he' is the Subject, while 'sings' contains both the Verb or Copula and the Predicate, i. e., it not only asserts something of the Subject, but also says what that something is, being equivalent to 'is singing.' In the sen-

tence: 'He has sung,' on the other hand, 'has' is the Verb (or Copula), 'sung' is what is asserted, or the Predicate.

2. The Verb (or Copula) is in German the member of the sentence, the position of which is most absolutely fixed; it is the cardinal point or hinge on which the sentence turns.

# 293. NORMAL POSITION OF THE VERB.

In German, there are three normal positions for the Verb, according to the nature of the sentence.

- (a) The Verb stands first:
  - I. In *Interrogative* Sentences expecting the answer 'yes' or 'no' (i. e., when the verb is the question-word, see § 23, 2), as:

In 3hr Bruder wohl? Is your brother well?

Wird er fommen? Will he come?

Beißen Sie Rarl? Is your name Charles?

2. In sentences expressing a command or wish, as:

Besuden Sie mich morgen, Come and see me tomorrow.

Ware ich zu Sause! Were I (would that I were) at home!

NOTE. — The verb may either follow or precede the subject in the 3. Sing. Subj. used as Imperative (see § 268, 1), as:

Gott behüte dich! or: Behüte dich Gott! God preserve thee!

 In Conditional clauses, when the conjunction wenn is omitted (compare § 59), as:

Ware das Wetter schön, so wurde ich ausgehen, If the weather were fine, I should go out.

(b) The Verb comes second (is the second idea) in all principal assertive sentences (compare § 20), as:

Der Mensch ift sterblich, Man is mortal.

- Der jüngere Bruber meines Baters, welcher so frank war, ist tot, My father's younger brother, who was so ill, is dead.
- Geftern Abend ftarb ber Bruber meines Baters, Yesterday evening my father's brother died.
- Sowohl (nicht nur) mein Bater, wie (sondern auch) mein Bruder war zugegen, Both (not only) my father, and (but also) my brother were (was) present.

REMARKS. — 1. As in the last three examples above, the first member of the sentence may be complex, with several attributes, complements, etc.; the verb is still the second idea.

2. The coordinating conjunctions *proper* (§ 236) do not count as members of the sentence (see the last example above), but *adverbial* conjunctions throw the subject after the verb.

Note. — Certain adverbial phrases, of a more or less interjectional nature, such as: freilid, true; ja, yes; ja wohl, to be sure; nein, no; furz, in short; mit einem Wort, in a word; gut, well, are not regarded as part of the sentence, and do not throw the subject after the verb, thus:

Freilich, ich habe es nicht selbst gesehen, True, I did not see it myself.

Kurz (mit einem Wort), ich glaube es nicht, In short (in a word), I do not believe it.

Gut, ich werde fommen, Well, I shall come.

3. In assertive sentences of an *emphatic* or *exclamatory* character, the verb sometimes comes first, especially when the particle both is present, as:

Ift das ein Wetter! (= Was für ein Wetter ist das!)
What weather!

Sabe ich's dir boch gesagt! I told you so!

4. If a dependent clause or a quotation precede the principal sentence (compare § 294, b, Rem. 2, below), such clause or quotation is regarded as a single member of the sentence, and requires the verb immediately after it, as:

Da ich selbst nicht kommen konnte, schickte ich meinen Sohn, As I could not come myselk, I sent my son.

Mis ich anfam, war es schon nach 10 Uhr, When I arrived, it was after 10 o'clock.

Wenn er kommen sollte, werde ich zu Hause sein, If he should come, I shall be at home.

"Ich will meine Aufgabe nicht lernen," schrie ber unartige Knabe, "I will not learn my lesson," cried the naughty boy.

Notes. — r. After dependent conditional and adverbial clauses (except those of time) the particle (n usually introduces the principal sentence, as:

Da ich nicht felbst kommen konnte, fo schickte ich meinen Sohn.

Wenn er tommen follte, fo werbe ich zu Saufe fein.

2. This particle fo should always be inserted after a conditional clause with then omitted; in colloquial usage, however, the principal sentence sometimes has the subject before the verb, fo being omitted, as:

Ware er früher gekommen, so hätte er mich gesehen; or (colloquially):

Bare er früher gefommen, er hatte mich gefehen.

This latter construction, however, should not be imitated.

3. In proportional clauses introduced by je, he flo, or um fo, the dependent clause comes first, and the verb is preceded by the word expressing the comparison, as well as by the particle je, etc., as:

Se länger die Nächte find, besto fürzer sind die Tage, The longer the nights are, the shorter are the days.

- (c) The Verb is last in dependent sentences and questions (compare §§ 32; 88), as:
  - Ich weiß, baß der Mensch sterblich ist, I know that man is mortal.
  - Ein Mann, welcher gestern hier war, A man, who was here yesterday.
  - Ich gehe, weil es schon spat ift, I go because it is late.
  - Ich weiß nicht, wer hier gewesen ist, I do not know who has been here (dep. question).

REMARKS.— I. Indirect statements with baß omitted have the construction of *principal* sentences (verb *second*; see §§ 20; 87, 3), as:

Er fagte, er habe es vergeffen, He said he had forgotten it.

2. Conditional clauses with menn omitted follow the question-order (verb first; compare § 59), as:

Bare das Wetter schön, so würde ich ausgehen, If the weather were fine, I should go out.

3. The Verb precedes two infinitives (or infinitive and part.; see § 199, 3), as in the compound tenses of Modal Auxiliaries, thus:

Er fagte, daß er nicht habe fommen wollen, He said that he had not intended to come.

- 4. Clauses with benn (='unless,' \ 241, 18), having negative force, follow the construction of a principal sentence (verb second), as:
  - Ich lasse Dich nicht, Du segnest mich benn, I will not let Thee go, unless Thou bless me.
  - Ich werbe nicht kommen, es sei benn, daß das Wetter schön werbe, I shall not come, unless (it be that) the weather should become fine.
- 5. Haben and sein, as auxiliaries of tense, are frequently omitted at the end of a dependent clause, as:
  - Er leugnete, daß er daß Fenster gerbrochen (habe understood). He denied that he had broken the window.
  - Ich fragte ihn, ob er zur rechten Zeit angekommen (jei understood), I asked him if he had arrived in good time.
  - 294. Position of the Subject.

The Subject is placed:

(a) In Direct Questions, if it be the question-word, at the beginning; otherwise immediately after the Verb, as:

Wer ist hier gewesen? Who has been here? Ist er hier gewesen? Has he been here?

Bann fommt Ihre Schwester? When does your sister come?

(b) In Principal Assertive Sentences, the normal position of the Subject is first; but if any other word precede the Verb, the Subject immediately follows the Verb, as:

Ich werde morgen nicht ausgehen; or:

Morgen werde ich nicht ausgehen, I shall not go out to-

REMARKS.— 1. In point of fact it may be said that, in a principal sentence, the Subject follows the Verb quite as often as it precedes it.

- 2. A preceding dependent clause, or a quotation, always throws the subject after the verb, except when, after a conditional clause with wenn omitted, the principal sentence is not introduced by the particle is (compare § 293, 4, Note 2, above).
- 3. When the real (*logical*) subject is represented by £\$ before the verb as grammatical subject, the logical subject immediately follows the verb, as:

Es ist meine Schwester gewesen, It was my sister.

(c) In Dependent Sentences, the Subject, if a relative pronoun, begins the sentence, otherwise the Subject immediately follows the connecting word, as:

Der Mann, welcher gestern hier war, The man who was here yesterday.

Der Mann, ben ich gestern sah, The man, whom I saw yesterday.

3th fagte ihr, baß ich fommen werbe, I told her that I should come.

NOTE.—Personal Pronouns, and especially the reflective fith, sometimes precede the Subject, both in principal sentences with the Subject after the Verb, and in dependent clauses, as:

Morgen will sich mein Bruder verheiraten, My brother is going to get married to-morrow.

Er sagte, daß ihn dieser Mensch beseidigt habe, He said that this fellow had insulted him.

# 295. Position of the Predicate.

- r. The Predicate, if not included in the Verb (see § 292, 1, above), may consist of a participle or infinitive (as in the compound tenses of the verb); or it may be a substantive, an adjective, or the separable prefix of a compound verb.
- 2. The Predicate is placed last in Principal Sentences and in Direct Questions; in Dependent Sentences it immediately precedes the Verb.
- 3. If the Predicate is compound, consisting of two or more of the elements under 1, above, they will occur in the following order: 1. Predicative adjective (or substantive); 2. Separable prefix; 3. Participle; 4. Infinitive; thus:

PRED. ADJ.

Er foll stets gegen seinen armen Bruder fehr freigebig PART. INF.

nemesen sein. He is said to have always been very liberal to his poor brother.

PREF. PART. INF.

Sie würde schon gestern ab = gereist sein, She would have departed yesterday.

REMARK. — Any one of these elements of the Predicate may, for emphasis, occupy the normal position of the subject in the *first* place (*before* the Verb), as:

Schön ist bas Wetter heute nicht, The weather is not (at all) fine to-day (i. e., it is far from fine).

Coldat ift mein Bruder, nicht Matrofe, My brother is a soldier, not a sailor.

Singen will ich wohl, aber nicht spielen, I will sing, but not play.

Note. — The Separable Prefix and the Participle are, however, rarely placed in this position, except in elevated or poetic diction, or for contrast, as:

Mieder steig' ich zum Gesechte, I descend (down I go) to the fight. (Schiller.)

Burude bleibt der Anappen Troß, The retinue of squires remains behind (ibid.).

Entichleffen ift er alfobald, He is resolved at once (ibid.).

Gegeben habe id ihm das Buch nicht, sondern nur geliehen, I did not give him the book, I only lent it to him.

# 296. Position of Objects and Cases.

r. Objects (not governed by a preposition) precede adjects (objects governed by a preposition), as:

I have written a letter to him (to my father).

2. Pronouns (unless governed by prepositions) precede substantives, as:

Ich habe ihm einen Brief geschrieben, I have written him a letter.

3. Of Pronouns, Personal before other Pronouns, as:

Ich habe ihm bas (etwas) gegeben, I have given him that (something).

4. Of the cases of Personal Pronouns, the Accusative precedes the Dative, and both precede the Genitive; but the reflexive in usually precedes all others, as:

Er hat fich (Dat.) es gemerkt, He has taken\_a\_note\_of it (for himself).

- 5. Of Substantives, the *Person* (unless governed by a preposition) precedes the thing; the *Indirect* precedes the Direct Object, and the *Remoter* Object (in the Genitive) follows both, as:
  - Ich habe Ihrer Schwester das Buch geliehen, I have lent your sister the book.
  - Er hat diesen Mann des Diebstahls beschuldigt, He has accused this man of thest.
- 6. The *personal* (or subjective) Genitive (compare § 243, 2) may either precede or follow the substantive which governs it, as:

Meines Baters Haus, My father's house; or: Das Haus meines Baters.

7. The *limiting* Genitive (see § 243, 3) follows, except in elevated or poetic diction, as:

Das Ende des Rrieges, The end of the war.

8. Cases governed by adjectives precede the adjective, but a substantive with a preposition may follow the *predicative* adjective, as:

3ch bin ihm bankbar für seine Bemühungen, I am grateful to him for his exertion.

# 297. Position of Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions.

- 1. In general, adverbs precede the word they modify, as:

  3ch bin fehr mübe geworden, I have become very tired.

  Er hat das Buch nicht gelesen, He has not read the book.
- 2. Adverbs of Time precede objects (except pronouns) and all other Adverbs or Adverbial expressions, as:

Time. Object. Place. Manner. Er hat gestern das Buch zu Hause sehr sleißig studiert, He studied the book very diligently at home yesterday.

- 3. Adverbs of place precede those of manner, and both follow objects, as in the above example.
- 4. Of several Adverbs of like kind, the more general precede the special, as:

Morgen um zehn Uhr, At ten o'clock to-morrow.

REMARKS.— I. Any object, adject, adverb or adverbial phrase may occupy the normal position of the subject at the head of a principal sentence (before the verb, compare § 295, Rem., above), as:

Meinen Bater habe ich nicht gesehen, I did not see my father.

Gestern kam ich zu spät, I came too late yesterday.

2. The *relative* position of objects, abverbs, etc., is the same in principal and subordinate sentences.

298. Position of other Members of the Sentence.

r. Attributive Adjectives and Participles immediately precede the substantive they modify, as:

Gin zur Verteibigung sehr gunstiger Ort, A place very favourable for defence.

Das auf dem Hügel stehende Haus, The house standing on the hill.

- 2. Prepositions precede their case, with the exceptions given in the lists (see §§ 46; 51; 223).
- 3. Conjunctions come between the words or clauses they connect, as:

Mein Bruder und seine Familie sind hier, My brother and his family are here.

Ich weiß, daß Sie nicht kommen werden, I know that you will not come.

NOTE. — In dependent clauses that precede the sentence on which they depend the conjunction is first, as:

Weil ich frant war, fonnte ich nicht fommen, Because I was ill, I could not come.

# 299. Construction of Incomplete Clauses.

The Word-order of Incomplete or Elliptical Clauses is the same as that of Complete Clauses, there being no Verb in the former. In Infinitive Clauses the Infinitive comes last; and in Appositive Clauses, the Adjective or Participle comes last, thus:

Gute Freunde (311) haben ift ein großes Glück, To have good friends is a great blessing.

Die Runft in Öl zu malen, The art of painting in oil.

Ich werbe mich freuen, Sie morgen zu fehen, I shall be glad to see you to-morrow.

Dies alles bei mir benfend, schlief ich ein, Thinking all this to myself, I fell asleep.

Lon dem Lärm aufgeschreckt, sprang er aus dem Bette, Aroused by the noise, he jumped out of bed.

# 300. Interrogative Sentences.

- r. Direct Questions always begin with the question-word, the other members of the sentence occupying the same relative position as in principal sentences. For the position of the Verb and Subject, see §§ 293, 294, above.
- 2. Questions in German very frequently have the form of a principal assertive sentence, the question being marked only by the rising inflexion of the voice, as:

Du hast beine Leftion nicht gelernt? You have not learnt your lesson?

Notes. -- 1. This construction often occurs with a both in the sentence, as:

Du wirst body formmen? You will be sure to come (will you not?).

Er ist doch nicht frant? He is not ill (is he? I hope not).

2. Exclamatory sentences frequently have the construction of dependent questions, but may also have that of direct questions, as:

Wer mitgehen dürfte! (Happy he) who might go with you! Wie ist das Wetter schön! How beautiful is the weather!

### RECAPITULATION.

# 301. GENERAL REMARKS ON GERMAN CONSTRUCTION.

The following are the principal points in which German differs from English Construction:

- r. The Verb (containing the Copula) is the hinge on which the sentence turns, and has its position most absolutely fixed.
- 2. The Subject does not, as in English, necessarily precede the Verb in Principal Sentences; but if any other member of the sentence precede the Verb, an *inversion of the subject* takes place, and it is thrown *after* the verb.

Notes. — 1. The terms inversion, inverted sentence, often used by grammarians, refer to the Subject only, not to the Verb.

- 2. This inversion of the Subject is also found in Interrogative and Imperative Sentences (see §§ 293; 294; 300, above).
- 3. The relative rank of sentences is marked by the varying position of the Verb, which is last in Dependent Sentences.
- 4. All the other parts of the sentence, except what precedes the Verb, are included or bracketed between the Verb and the Predicate.
- 5. Dependent Sentences (including Infinitive and Appositive Clauses; see § 299, above) are marked off from the sentences on which they depend by commas.

# SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON G.

# COMPLEX SENTENCES. - CLAUSE-ORDER.

# 302. COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES.

I. A sentence is *compound* when it contains more than one *cöordinate* clause; *complex* when it contains a *subordinate* clause, thus:

Compound: Ich ging an ihm vorbei, kannte ihn aber nicht,

I went past him, but did not know him.

Complex: Er fagte mir, baf er fommen werde,

He told me that he would come.

2. Any subordinate clause may itself be complex, having another clause dependent upon it, as:

Ich erwartete ihn gestern, weil er mir geschrieben hatte, daß seine Geschäfte bald beendigt sein würden, I expected him yesterday, because he had written me, that his business would soon be finished.

Note. — In the above example, the clause weil er, etc., depends on the principal clause preceding it; whereas the clause baß seine Geschäfte, etc., depends on the clause weil er, etc., which is itself subordinate.

REMARK. — In the following observations as to the relative position or order of clauses, the term "principal sentence" includes all sentences, though themselves subordinate, which occupy the relation of a principal or governing sentence to the clauses dependent upon them.

**303.** I. In Complex Sentences, the position of the various dependent clauses is regulated by the following general principle:

Finish the principal sentence before introducing the subordinate clause.

2. Thus, in the example in § 302, 2, above, it would be wrong to insert the last clause (baß...würben) within the preceding clause on which it depends, thus:

Beil er mir, daß feine Geschäfte beendigt fein würben, geschrieben batte.

3. Similarly the following construction would make the complex sentence quite unintelligible:

Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigfeit eine Sache ohne über die Regel zu denken zu thun berleihen.

The observance of the above rule will require the clauses of this sentence to be arranged as follows:

- Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigkeit verleihen, eine Sache zu thun, ohne über die Regel nachzubenken, Habit (practice) must bestow the readiness of doing a thing without reflecting upon the rule.
- 4. In the following sentence, again, the isolation of the separable prefix is very objectionable:

Heiter ging die Sonne an jenem Morgen, an dem wir abreisten, auf, The sun rose cheerfully on that morning on which we set out.

The prefix auf should be inserted after Morgen.

- **304.** Appositive Clauses, must, however, stand immediately after the particular part of the sentence to which they refer, as:
  - Die Priesterin, von ihrer Göttin selbst gewählet und geheiligt, spricht zu dir. The priestess, chosen and consecrated by the goddess herself, speaks to thee.
  - Was fönnen wir, ein ichmach: Bolf der Girten, gegen Albrechts Seere? What can we, a weak people of herdsmen, [do] against Albert's hosts?
  - 3d have ihm diesen Fehler, daß er jede Handlung mißdeute, schon oft vorgeworsen, I have often reproached him with this mistake of misinterpreting every action.
  - Ich fonnte die Frage, ob wir fämen, nicht beantworten, I could not answer the question, whether we were coming.
  - 305. Relative Clauses must immediately follow the antecedent:
- (a) When the latter (whether subject or not) precedes the verb of a principal sentence, as:

Der Mann, welcher gestern hier war, ist heute wiedergesommen, The man who was here yesterday came again to-day.

Den Mann, welder gestern hier war, habe ich nicht gesannt, I did not know the man, who was here yesterday.

NOTE. — If the antecedent does not precede the verb, the relative is introduced after the conclusion of the principal sentence, except as under (b), below, thus:

Seute ift ber Mann wiebergekommen, welcher u. f. w. 3ch habe ben Mann nicht gekannt, welcher u. f. w.

- (b) When their separation from the antecedent would cause ambiguity, as:
- Gestern habe ich meinen Freund, den ich lange nicht gesehen, bei meinem Bruder getrossen, Vesterday I met at my brother's my friend, whom I had not seen for a long time.

Note. — If the relative clause were placed after the conclusion of the principal sentence, the relative ben might refer to Bruber.

- **306.** A Subordinate or Dependent Clause (with the exceptions specified in Remarks 3, 4, below) may also, whether subjective, objective or adverbial, *precede* the principal clause, in which case it throws the Subject after the Verb, as:
  - Ob ich fommen fann (subjective clause), ist zweiselhaft, It is doubtful whether I can come.
  - Mer gar ju tiel bedenft (subjective clause), wird wenig leisten, He who considers too much, will accomplish little.
  - Daß er mir nicht geichrichen (subjective clause), macht mir Sorgen, [The fact] that he has not written to me, causes me anxiety.
  - Ob ich werde fammen fönnen (objective clause), weiß ich nicht, I do not know, whether I shall be able to come.
  - Daß er frant ist (objective clause), habe ich gestern gehört, I heard yesterday, that he was ill.
  - Da ich frant war (adverbial clause), fonnte ich nicht fommen, As I was sick, I could not come.

REMARKS.— I. Such a clause takes the place of a subject, object or predicate, as the case may be, before the verb (compare §§ 293, b, Rem. 4; 294, Rem. 2; 295, Rem.).

- 2. Adverbial clauses in this way bring expressions of time, place, etc., but more especially those of *cause*, nearer to the verb, which is the part of the sentence they modify.
- 3. Only subjective relative clauses with the compound relative wer, was, can stand at the head of a sentence, as in the second example above.

Note. — The relative ber is sometimes used instead of mer as compound relative (including both relative and antecedent), especially in the plural, as:

- Die sich zu hart vergangen hatten, sichen aus dem Lanbe. (Schiller); i. e., Diesenigen, welche u. s. v.; or: Wer sich zu hart vergangen hatte (sing.), slob u. s. w., Those who had committed too great offences, sled from the country.
- 4. Clauses which modify not the whole sentence but a particular member, cannot stand at the head of the sentence, but stand either immediately after the word to which they refer, or after the conclusion of the sentence (compare § 297, above). This remark applies especially to relative clauses (but see Rem. 3, above, and Note), and to comparative clauses with als, as:
  - Sein Ungliid war größer, als er es ertragen fonnte (or: 3u groß, als baß er es u. s. w.), His misfortune was greater than he could bear.

Note. — Comparative clauses with wie may precede, as:

Wie im Lauß der Bogel füngt,

Mag fich jeder gütlich thun,

As the bird sings amid the boughs, let every one enjoy himself. (SCHILLER).

### EXERCISE G.

1. It seems impossible, says a great botanist, to give, in the present state of our knowledge, a complete definition of what (= that which) is to be considered as an animal, in contradistinction to what one must regard as a plant. 2. The good king Robert Bruce, who was always watchful and prudent, had received information (Runde) of (von) the intention of these men to attack him suddenly. 3. Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some sleep at a place about half a mile distant from the river (see § 200, c, i), while he himself, with two attendants, went down to watch the ford through which the enemy must pass, before they came to the place where king Robert's men were lying. 4. "If I go back," thought the king, "to call my men to (the) arms, these men will get (fourmen) through the ford unhindered; and that would be [a] pity, since it is a place so advantageous for defence." 5. In the confusion, five or six of the enemy were slain, or, having been borne down by the stream, [were] drowned. 6. With the natural feeling of a young author (Schriftsteller). he had ventured (it) to go (fich aufmachen) secretly and witness (beimohnen + dat.) the first representation of his tragedy at Mannheim. 7. He resolved to be free, at whatever risk (auf jede Gefahr hin): to abandon (= give up) advantages which he could not buy (erfaufen) at such a price; to quit his stepdame (ftiefmiitterlich, adj.) home, and go forth (fortivandern), though friendless and alone, to seek his fortune in the great market (Sahrmartt) of life. 8. Having well examined the place (Ort), the soldier reported his discovery to Marius, and urgently (bringend) advised (auraten + dat.) him, to make an attack upon the fort from that side where he had climbed up, offering (fith erbicten) to lead (= show) the way. 9. He ordered his men to advance against the wall with their shields held together in the manner which the Romans named 'testudo' or tortoise (Schilbfröte). 10. His mother was present on (bei) this joyous occasion, and she produced (= showed) a paper of (= with) poison, which, as she said, she meant to have given her son in his liquor (Getrünf, acc.) rather than that he should submit (himself) to personal disgrace.

# PART THIRD.

# WORD-FORMATION. - HISTORICAL SKETCH.

# LESSON LI.

### DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

- **307.** I. New words are formed in a language by two more or less distinct processes: Derivation and Composition.
- 2. Derivation is of four kinds, viz.: 1. without change; 2. by internal change; 3. by Suffixes; 4. by Prefixes.

Note. — All grammatical terminations (inflexions) are really suffixes, but these are not considered under the present head.

# 308. A. WITHOUT CHANGE.

Verbs are derived from substantives, adjectives, adverbs, etc., by the simple addition of the endings of conjugation, as: Arbeit, labour; arbeit-en, to labour — Gras, grass; gras-en, to graze—trocen, dry; trocen-en, to dry — näher, near (compar.); nähern, to approach — gegen, against; begegneen, to meet.

Note. — In many of these derivatives, and in most of those from adjectives, the vowel has Umlaut, as: Pflug; pflügsen, plough — Hammer; hümmersn, hammer—ftark, strong; ftürksen, strengthen — tot, dead; tötsen, kill — offen, open; öffnsen, open — empor, up; empörsen, excite.

### 309. B. BY INTERNAL CHANGE.

Derivative Verbs. - Verbs are derived from other Verbs:

(a) By change (generally Umlaut) of the root or Stem Vowel, forming causative verbs, which are always transitive and weak, as: sallen, fall; sällen, fell (cause to fall) — trinten, drink; tränten, make to drink (drench) — sitzen, sit; setzen, set — liegen, lie; legen, lay — sahren, fare, proceed; sühren, lead, cause to proceed.

(b) By change of consonant, with or without vowel-change, as: stand; stellen, cause to stand, set or place upright — biegen, bend; biesen, bow — neigen, incline; nisen, nod (incline the head) — washen, awake; wesen, arouse (cause to awake).

NOTE. — Many weak verbs and nearly all strong verbs are primitive; but derivative verbs are generally weak.

310. Derivative Substantives.—These are derived from Verbs by internal vowel-change without suffix, and are mostly masculine, as: binden, bind; Band, bond, volume; Bund, union — sitzen, sit; Satz, stake (thing set or laid down), etc. — ziehen, draw; Zug, trait, etc.—treten, tread; Tritt, step.

Note. — Observe that in both the Verbs and Substantives above occasional consemant changes also occur.

## C. BY SUFFIXES.

# 311. VERB SUFFIXES.

- 1. .ein forms derivatives from other verbs, as well as from substantives and adjectives, usually with Umlaut, implying diminution or contempt, as: indj-en, laugh; lädj-ein, smile Runit, art; fünit-ein, affect (artfully) fromm, pious; frömmeln, affect piety.
- 2. \*ern from verbs, substantives and adjectives (sometimes with Umlaut), as: folgen, follow; folg-ern, infer Schlaf, sleep; sleep; sleep arg, bad; ärg-ern, vex.
- 3. steren, mostly from foreign stems, without Umlaut, as: maridisteren, march regsieren, reign studs eren, study. Also from German roots, by analogy, as: budstabsteren, spell.

# 312. Substantive Suffixes.

- r. et (-ft, -ft), ed. ede (usually feminine) from verbs, usually with vowelchange, as: beng-en, bend; B.do-t, bay (bight) քանր-en, drive; Fahr-t, drive trag-en, wear; Trado-t, costume քանութ, come; Ann-f-t, arcoming (Aufunft, arrival; Bufunft, future) fönnen, can; Ann-f-t, art brennen, burn; Bran-d, conflagration fennen, know; Kun-de, information.
- 2., 3. :chen and :sein form diminutives, usually with Umlaut, as: Saus, house; Saus-den, little house, cot Mann, man; Männ-lein, manikin.

Notes. - 1. schen (Engl. -kin), originally Low (North) German only, is now more common than slein, which however is preferred after gutturals, as: Ringslein, Büchslein.

2. Sometimes a double diminutive suffix, el + cen, is used after gutturals, as: Nings el-chen, Buch-el-chen.

- 4. \*e forms a very large number of feminine derivatives from verbs, often with vowel-change; also, usually with Umlaut, from adjectives, as: fliegen, fly; Fliegee, fly (insect) geben, give; Gabe, gift sprechen, speak; Sprach-e, speech, language gut, good; Güt-e, goodness tren, faithful; Tren-e, fidelity.
- 5. :ei (from Fr. -ie) forms feminine derivatives, with accent on the suffix:
  - (a) From verbs in sein, sern, as: ichmeicheln, flatter; Schmeichelsei, flattery zaubern, enchant; Zaubersei.
  - (b) From substantives, indicating state, occupation, etc., most frequently from those in ser, as: Jüger, hunter; Jügersei, hunting
     Druder, printer; Drudersei, printing (-trade or -office).

Notes. - 1. It sometimes implies contempt, as: Rinber-ci, childish nonsense.

- 2. By analogy with the formations from stems in ser, there has arisen the double suffix serei, added to other stems, as: Stlauserei, slavery (from Stlaue).
- 6. sel, from verbs (sometimes with vowel-change), generally indicating the instrument, as: becken, cover; Deckel, lid fliegen, fly; Flügsel, wing schließen, lock; Schlüssel, key diehsen, pull; Zügel, rein, bridle.
- 7. εen, from verbs, including all infinitives, as well as others, e. g.: graben, dig; Grabeen (masc.), ditch schaden, hurt; Schadeen (masc.), injury.
- 8. -er, often with Umlaut, indicating the actor, chiefly from verbs, but also from substantives, as: bacten, bake; Bäck-er, bak-er masen, paint; Maser, paint-er tauzen, dance; Tänz-er, danc-er Garten, garden; Gärtu-er, garden-er Schaf, sheep; Schäf-er, shepherd.

Note. — Some derivatives from substantives insert n, as: Bildeneer, sculptor (from Bild) — Glödeneer, bell-ringer (from Glode) — Rebeneer, orator (from Rebe).

- 9. \*heit (Engl. -head, -hood) forms feminine abstracts from substantives and adjectives, as: Gott-h it, God-head Rind-heit, child-hood Blind-heit, blindness Frei-heit, freedom.
- 10. steit replaces sheit after adjectives in sel, ser, sig, slid, sbar, sfam, as: Eitelsfeit, vanity Bittersfeit, bitterness Billigsfeit, cheapness Heimlichsfeit, secrecy Brauchbarsfeit, usefulness Sparfamsfeit, economy.

Note. — Some derivatives from adjectives insert zigz before zieit, especially from those in zhaft and zloë, as: Süßzigzieit, sweetness — Standhaftzigzieit, steadfastness — Treus lojzigzieit, unfaithfulness.

- 11. -in (compare § 89, 2, Note) forms feminine appellatives from masculine substantives, usually with Umlaut (always so from monosyllables), as: Graf, count; Gräjin, countess Freund, friend; Freund-in, (female) friend Gärtner, gardener; Gärtner-in, gardener's wife.
- 12. -ling forms masculine diminutives (sometimes with Umlaut) from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: lehren, teach; Lehr-ling, apprentice— Flucht, flight; Flucht-ling, fugitive— fremd, strange; Fremd-ling, stranger— jung, young; Jüng-ling, youth.
- 13. -ni3 (Engl. -ness) forms abstracts from verbs; also from a few adjectives, usually with Umlaut, as: begraben, bury; Begrab-ni3, funeral hinder, hinder; Hinder-ni3, obstacle gefangen, captive; Gefäng-ni3, prison finster, dark; Finster-ni3, darkness.
- 14. -sal, -sel form abstracts, (generally neuter) from verbs, and also from a few substantives and adjective, as: schissen, send; Schisses, late—raten, guess; Rät-sel, riddle— Mühe, trouble; Müh-sal, fatigue—trübe, sad; Trüb-sal, tribulation.
- 15. singit (Engl. -ship, -scape) forms feminine abstracts from verbs and adjectives, as: Bander-singit, wandering Freund-singit, friend-ship Land-scape Gemein-singit, community Eigen-singit, peculiarity; also some collectives, as: Priester-singit, priesthood; Gesell-singit, society.
- 16. **:tum** (Engl. -dom) forms (generally neuter) abstracts from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: Wadhs-tum, growth Eigen-tum, property Neich-tum (masc.), wealth Rönig-tum, royalty (king-dom).
- 17. \*ung (= Engl. -ing in verbal nouns) forms a large number of feminine abstracts, chiefly from verbs, as: Besepreung, instruction Beregebeung, forgiveness.
- 18. The suffixes end, eig, eight, eing are only found after stems which no longer have an independent existence, as: Abecnd, Duteend, Effeig, Röfeig, Sabeicht (hawk).

# 313. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

- 1. \*bar (connected with bören, 'bear') from verbs (= Engl. -able) and substantives, also (rarely) from adjectives, as: εβ-bar, eat-able fruchtsbar, fruitful furcht-bar, frightful offen-bar, evident.
- 2. een, een form adjectives denoting material or kind from substantives, as: goldeen, golden blei-een, leaden filber-n, silver hölz-een, wooden.

Note. - Gifern, 'iron,' from Gifen, is anomalous.

3. -haft (connected with haben, 'have') forms adjectives, denoting the quality of the primitive, chiefly from substantives (also from a few verbs and adjectives), as: fünd-haft, sinful — tugend-haft, virtuous — wohushaft, resident — bos-haft, malicious — wahr-haft, true.

Note. — The suffix sin is often added to adjectives in shalt, as: wahrhaftsin (compare also § 312, 10, Note, above).

- 4. -int sometimes replaces -in (see below) after names of materials, as born-int, thorny stein-int, stony; also in tör-int, foolish.
- 5. \*ig (= Engl. -y, as in might-y, etc.) forms a very numerous class of adjectives, usually with Umlaut, from verbs, substantives and particles, and from other adjectives (including the possessive pronouns, see § 119, c), as: nadjgieb\*ig, yielding giinft\*ig, favourable midht\*ig, might-y fdjufb\*ig, guilt-y giit\*ig, kind völl\*ig, complete heut\*ig, of to-day vor\*ig, former.

Note. For sig before steit, see § 312, 10, Note; for sig after shaft, see 3, above.

- 6. -ifth (= Engl. -ish) forms adjectives:
  - (a) From proper names, denoting origin, as: luther -iff, Lutheran prenfi-iff, Prussian.
  - (b) From substantives, as: dieb-iff, thiev-ish himml-iff, heavenly; sometimes also with depreciatory sense, as in English, e. g.: find-iff, child-ish weib-iff, woman-ish (compare find-liff, child-like weib-liff, woman-ly).
  - (c) From foreign words (= Lat.-icus; Engl.-ic,-ical), as: histor-iss. histor-ical Iog-iss, log-ical.
- 7. -lei forms variative numerals; see § 182, (c).
- 8. \*[iff (Engl. -like, -ly) forms numerous adjectives from verbs (with active or passive sense), substantives (usually with Umlaut) and other adjectives (generally with diminutive meaning, like Eng. -ish), as: erfreus liff, delightful [dhāb-liff, injurious begerif-liff, intelligible glaub-liff, credible verādt-liff, contemptible jāhr-liff, year-ly mānu-liff, man-ly natūr-liff, natural röt-liff, redd-ish läng-liff, long-ish.
- 9. sam (Engl. -some) from verbs and substantives (also from a few adjectives), as: aufmerfssam, attentive heilssam, whole-some surthtssam, timid einssam, lone-some.

# D. BY PREFIXES.

# 314. VERB PREFIXES.

The Verb Prefixes coming under the head of derivation are those which are always inseparable, viz: be, ent, or emp, er, ge, miß, ver, ger. Their various meanings are given below.

- 1. be- (connected with the prep. bei) is intensive, and
  - (a) forms transitive verbs from intransitive (its most frequent use), as: fallen, fall; be-fallen, be-fall — gehen, go; be-gehen, commit (a crime, etc.) — flagen, mourn; be-flagen, mourn for;
  - (δ) it forms verbs from substantives and adjectives, with the meaning 'provide with,' 'make,' as: be-friend, be-friend be-friend felling fell, make strong, strengthen.
- 2. ents (emps before an i, akin to auts, as in antivorten) corresponds frequently to the (Latin) prefixes dis-, de- in English words and denotes
  - (a) 'in return,' as: emp=fangen, receive; emp=fehlen, recommend;
  - (b) 'contrary,' 'against,' 'away from,' having privative force, from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: ent-binden, relieve ent-beccen, dis-cover ent-gehen, ent-saufen, get away, escape;
  - (c) transition, origin, as: ent-schlasen, fall asleep ent-stehen, arise, originate.
  - 3. er= (Engl. a-, as in a-rouse, a-rise, etc.) denotes:
    - (a) 'out from,' 'upwards,' as: er=heben, raise er=weden, a-waken;
    - (δ) transition (compare ent, above), as: er-beben, begin to tremble
       - er-blühen, come out in blossom er-falten, grow cold;
    - (c) acquisition or attainment by the action of the verb (a very common use), as: er=fettefu, get by begging er=fiften, get by cunning;
    - (d) accomplishment, as: er=sadjiessen, shoot (kill by shooting) er-trinsen, be drowned.
- 4. ges often has no perceptible force, as in : gestesett, recover (from illness) gestießen, enjoy; but commonly it is frequentative and intensive, as: gestieten, command gestenten, remember, mention gestoben, vow.
- 5. miße (Engl. mis-) has negative force, sometimes with the notion of falsehood or failure, as: mißenditen, despise mißefallen, displease mißegliden, fail mißeverstehen, mis-understand.
- 6. her: (Engl. for- in for-get, for-give) has the general meaning of 'away' and often, like ent:, answers to a dis- or de- in English.
  - (a) It is intensive, and expresses excess, etc., as: ber-blithen, fade away ber-fommen, go to ruin ber-fagen, despair.
  - (b) It denotes a mistake, etc., as: per-führen, lead astray perlanfen (refl.), lose one's way — per-fegen, mis-lay.
  - (c) It is privative (its most frequent use), and denotes loss, parting, waste, dissolution, as: ber=gehen, pass away ber=trinfen, waste in drink ber=[pielen, gamble away.

- (d) It forms verbs from substantives and adjectives denoting a change or transition into the state of the primitive, as: b(r) armen, grow poor b(r)-golden, gild.
- 7. ger- denotes separation, destruction, 'to pieces,' as: ger-brechen, break to pieces ger-gliedern, dis-member.

# 315. Substantive Prefixes.

- 1. Cr3- (= Engl. arch-), as: Cr3-bifdof, arch-bishop Cr3-feind, arch-enemy.
  - . Ges forms usually neuter derivatives:
    - (a) Collectives, from substantives, as: Gebirge, mountain-range
       Gesteber, feathers Gesträud, bushes.
    - (b) Associatives (of persons), from verbs and substantives, as:

      @e-[piefe, playmate @e-[d]wifter, brothers and sisters (of a family) @e-[efle, fellow.
    - (c) Frequentative or intensive abstracts, also from verbs, as Gespräd, conversation Gesssäfter, (continued) whispering Gestöse, uproar.

Note. - The substantives @=lud, @=laube contain this prefix.

- 3. Miß-, with the same force as in verbs, e.g.: Miffe-that, misdeed Miß-qunft, envy.
- 4. Un: is negative prefix, as in English, e. g.: Un:glüd, bad luck— Un:recht, wrong— Un:finn, nonsense. It also expresses something monstrous or unnatural, as: Un:that, unnatural or monstrous deed— Un:unenfd, inhuman monster.
  - 5. 11r= (akin to cr=, see above) denotes
    - (a) origin, as in Ur-teil (rr-teilen), sentence, judgment Ur-laub (er-lauben), furlough, leave of absence;
    - (b) primitiveness, as: ur-sadd (original thing), cause ur-menst, primitive man ur-wald, primeval forest.

REMARK. — Substantives with Verb Prefixes (see § 314, above) are derived from verb-stems having these prefixes (e. g.: Mb-zug, Be-zug, from abziehen, beziehen), except those with ge: (see 2, above).

# 316. Adjective Prefixes.

The Prefixes of Adjectives are the same as those of substantives, and with the same force, except  $\mathfrak{ge}_{\tau}$ , which forms:

- (a) Past Participles, some without corresponding verbs, as: ge-fittet, well-behaved — g2-fittefelt, booted;
- (δ) adjectives from verb-stems, as: ge-nehm, agreeable, acceptable
   ge-wiß (from wissen, 'know'), certain;
- (c) from other Adjectives, as: ge-recht, just—ge-treu, faithful.

# 317. OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

Pronouns, Numerals, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections are for the most part either primitive or compound; for Derivative Numerals and Numeral Adverbs, see §§ 182, 183; for the derivation of other Adverbs, § 189.

## II. COMPOSITION.

- 318. I. A compound word is one made up of two or more words, each of which maintains its separate form and meaning.
- 2. In genuine compounds, the last component only is inflected; but there are also spurious compounds, in which one or more of the preceding components takes an inflectional ending (see § 319, I, Notes 2, 3, below), without liability to further variation.

NOTE.—In a few words arbitrarily written as compounds, both elements are inflected; see § 319, 2, Note, below.

3. Compounds are made with much greater freedom in German than in English. Words that in English are written separately, are often written as one word in German, forming compounds of a length and complexity unknown in the English language, as: Feuerversicherungsgesellschaft, fire insurance company — Luströhrenschwindsucht, bronchial consumption.

Note. — These long compounds are generally broken up by one or more hyphens as: Feuerversigerungs-Gesellicaft, a capital letter usually following the hyphen.

- 4. When the last component is common to several successive compounds, it is expressed with the last component word only, the omission being indicated in the other cases by a hyphen, as: Apfels, Kirichs und Birnbäume, apple, cherry and pear-trees eine frendens und untiofe Aufgabe, a joyless and profitless task.
- 5. The Composition of Verbs is fully treated of in Less. XXXVI, and Supp. Less. E.; that of Numerals in Less. XXVIII, and also in §§ 182, 183. The compound Prepositions will be found in Less. XXXVIII, and Conjunctions in Less. XL, and require no special explanation.

# 319. Composition of Substantives.

The last element is (with exceptions noted under 5, below) a Substantive, which determines the gender, and is alone inflected; the first element generally having the principal accent. The varieties of Compound Substantives are:

1. Substantive + Substantive, the first element being in apposition or in some case or other relation (usually genitive) to the other, as below, as: Himmel-reich, kingdom of heaven (apposition) — Aug-apfel, eye-ball — Landes-herr, sovereign — Freuden-fest, joyous festival — Kinder-stude, nursery (genitive elation) — Tinten-saß, inkstand (stand for ink) — Tanz-stunde, dancinglesson (dative relation) — Ratten-sänger, rat-catcher — Beg-weiser, guide, singer-post (accusative relation) — Ost-wind, East wind — Freuden-thräne, tear of joy (origin) — Fuß-tritt, kick (instrument) — Dach-senster, window in the roof (place) — Tage-weist, day's work.

Notes.—r. Primary Compounds are those composed of stem + substantives, either with the stem-suffix \*e, as: Tagewert; or without suffix, as: Hand-wert, trade — Jagds horn, hunting-horn.

- 2. Secondary Compounds are made up with a Genitive case, Singular or Plural; if singular, the first component takes \*\$ after strong masculines and neuters, and \*en after weak substantives, whether sing. or plur.; thus: Sountag\*\$\*fleib, sunday-dress Freub\*ensgefchrei, cry of joy Wörter\*buch, dictionary.
- 3. The suffix =8 is also added to feminines in =t, =heit, =feit, =lhaft, =ung, and the foreign endings =ion, tät, as: Geburt=8=tag, birthday Freiheit=8=liebe, love of liberty Mäßigkeit=8=verein, temperance society Religion=8=krieg, religious war Universfität=8=gebäube, University building.
- 2. Qualifying Adjective + Substantive, as: Edel-stein, precious stone, jewel Jungfran, virgin Hodf-zeit, wedding (high time) Boll-mond, full-moon.

Note. — In a few spurious compounds of this kind, the adjective is declined, as: ein Hoherspriester, high-priest; ber Hohepriester — bie Lange-weile, tedium, ennui; Gen. ber Langenweile.

- 3. Adverb or Preposition + Substantive, usually from compound verbs, but not always, as: Herefunft, origin Bohlethat, benefit Ansgahl, number Beisspiel, example Hinterslift, cunning Übersmacht, superiority.
- 4. Verb-stem + Substantive, sometimes with connecting suffix se, as: Lefee-budh, Schreib-feber, Sing vogel.
- 5. Other Compound Substantives. There is a special class of substantive compounds of a character different from those enumerated above, and of various composition, consisting of:

- (a) A limiting word (not a subst.) + Substantive, as: Blinde-fuh, blind-man's-buff Rahl-fopf, bald-head Groß-manl, boaster Lang-bein, long-legged person Schrei-hals, bawler Bicreck, square.
- (b) Limiting word + Adjective, as: ber Nimmer-satt, the glutton bas Immer-grün, the evergreen.

Note. — These compounds are masculine when referring to persons, otherwise neuter.

The same rule holds good for the compounds under (c), below.

(c) Verb + Object, limiting word or phrase, as: Der Tauges nichts, the good-for-nothing — Der Spring-ins-feid, the romp — Der Stören-fried, the kill-joy — Das Stell-dich-ein, the rendezvous.

# **320.** Composition of Adjectives.

Compound Adjectives consist of an Adjective preceded by a limiting word, viz.:

- 1. Adjective + Adjective, as: taub-stumm, deaf-mute buntes-blau, dark-blue rot-bädig, red-cheeked.
  - 2. Substantive + Adjective:
    - (a) with connecting inflexional suffix (compare § 319, 1, Note 2, above), as: [iebes-frant, love-sick gedanten-boll, pensive hoffmungs-los, hopeless;
    - (b) without suffix, as: liebe=boll, affectionate hulb-reith, gracious freude=leer, joyless.

Notes. — r. The Adjectives  $lo\beta$ , reiff, boll are of such constant occurrence as to have almost acquired the character of suffixes.

- 2. In some of these compounds, the substantive expresses comparison, or has intensive force, as: treibeweiß, white as chalk feberleicht, light as a feather felsenselt, firm as a rock.
- 3. Verb + Adjective, as: miß-begierig, eager for knowledge merfwürdig, remarkable (noteworthy).

Note. — In Compound Adjectives like bantens-wert, 'welcome' ('thankworthy'), the first element is the infinitive used as a Substantive.

4. Adverb or Preposition + Adjective, as: hoch-geboren, high-born - wohl-seil, cheap — unter-than, subject — über-klug, overwise.

# **321.** Composition of Adverbs.

Adverbs are compounded of various parts of speech:

I. With Nouns (mostly in the Genitive) affixed to other parts of speech, as: Fall: gleith-falls, likewise; jeden-falls, in any case—

Maß(e): einiger-maßen, in some degree — Seite: einer-seits . . . andrer-seits, on the one hand . . . on the other hand — Teil : meisten-teils, chiefly; meines-teils, on my part — Weg: gerades-wegs, straightway; keines-wegs, by no means — Beile: einst-weilen, mittler-weile, meanwhile, meantime — Beise: gliicklicher-weise, fortunately; kreuz-weise, crosswise; thörichter-weise, foolishly.

NOTE. — The *masc*. and *neuter* genitive-inflection \*β, from its frequent use in adverbial genitives, has become an adverbial suffix, and is sometimes attached to fem. substs., as: bit Macht, adv. machts, by night. So also has the suffix \*wärt\$, as: bi.nmel\*luärt\$, heavenward — noto-wärt\$, northward.

- 2. With Prepositions (or original Adverbs) prefixed or suffixed to other parts of speech, as: ju-gleid, at the same time gerade-ju, straight on auf-warts, upward; berg-auf, uphill unter-wegs, on the way; berg-unter, downhill heutju-tage, nowadays jahre-lang, for years.
- 3. With Pronouns (or Stems originally Pronominal) compounded with each other, as: wohin? whither? dahin, borthin, thither woher? whence? daher, borthin, thence, etc.

For Numeral Adverbs, see § 182.

# LESSON LII.

# HISTORICAL SKETCH. - GRIMM'S LAW. - UMLAUT, etc.

# 322. RELATION BETWEEN GERMAN AND ENGLISH.

I. A comparison of German words and forms with their English equivalents will serve to show that a very large number of both words and grammatical forms are common to both languages. Though rarely absolutely identical in form, the resemblances are both so close and so numerous that they cannot be the result of mere borrowing on the part of either language from the other, but must imply relationship, or, in other words, a descent from a common source, a common origin.

# English and German are therefore Modern Dialects of one and the same original language.

2. This original language is no longer extant, either as a spoken or as a written language. There are, however, other languages — some still spoken, some known to us only as written — which were once also

dialects of this common ancestor, or Grundsprache, as German philologists call it. This group or sub-family of languages is called the Germanic or Teutonic, the common source or Grundsprache of which was itself a dialect of a larger family, all of whose members were dialects of, and derived from, one common primitive source (Uriprache). This family is called the Indo-Germanic, Indo-European or Aryan family, and includes most European and several Asiatic languages.

- 3. The divisions of this great family, with the chief representatives, ancient (written) and modern (spoken), of each, are as follows, beginning from the East:
  - (a) INDIC ancient: Sanskrit, etc.; modern: Hindustani, etc.
  - (b) Persic " Zend, etc.; " Persian, etc.
  - (c) GREEK ancient and modern.
  - (d) ITALIC ancient: Latin, etc.; modern: the Romance languages (Italian, French, Spanish, etc.).
  - (e) LITHUANIC.
  - (f) SLAVONIC Russian, Polish, Bohemian, etc.
  - (g) GERMANIC see below.
  - (h) CELTIC Irish, Gaelic, Welsh, etc.

# 323. THE GERMANIC LANGUAGES.

The Germanic or Teutonic group of languages may be classified as follows:

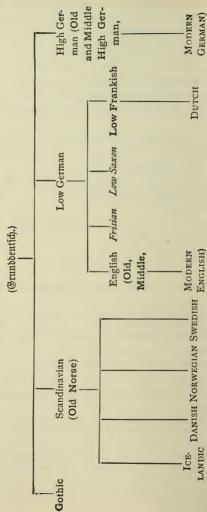
- r. Gothic or East Germanic, once spoken by the Goths of Mœsia, on the Danube, represented only by a translation of portions of the Bible, made by Ulfilas, Bishop of the Goths, in the 4th century, A. D.
- 2. SCANDINAVIAN or NORTH GERMANIC ancient: Old Norse; modern: Icelandic, Danish (Norwegian), Swedish.
- 3. LOW GERMAN OF WEST GERMANIC—ancient: Frisian, Low Saxon, Low Frankish, Old English (Anglo-Saxon), Middle English; modern: Dutch, English.

Note. — The modern representatives of the other Low German languages are mere dialects — known as *Plattdeutsch* (i. e., Flat German), the present (High) German literary language having displaced them.

4. HIGH GERMAN or SOUTH GERMANIC, including the (no longer spoken) Old and Middle High German, and the GERMAN, as spoken and written at the present day.

The following diagram will serve further to illustrate the relationships of the German language:

# PRIMITIVE TEUTONIC.



NOTES. - 1. The languages printed in heavy tye are extinct; those in Italics are now only represented by dialects; those in CAPI-TALS are languages (not mere dialects) of the present day. 2. High-German includes also Middle German; it is now, and has been since the 16th century, the only literary language of the German empire, extending also into parts of Austria and Switzerland.

# 324. HISTORY OF HIGH GERMAN.

The High German (including the Middle German) branch of the Germanic sub-family has passed through three stages, as follows:

1. Old High German, to the 12th century. Its literature is chiefly ecclesiastical—its principal authors being monks, such as Otfrid, the Frank, author of a rhyming harmony of the Gospels, and Notker, of St. Gallen in Switzerland. Each author wrote in his own dialect.

Note. — The chief characteristic of this Old High German, which distinguishes it from the subsequent stages, is the comparative fulness and distinctiveness of its grammatical forms. Thus Tagen, Gößnen, Gößen (dat. pl.) = O. H. G. tag-um, sun-um, geb-ôm respectively; and the pres. indic. of nëman (neßmen) is as follows: nim-u, nim-is, nim-it, nëmam-(ês), nëm-at, nëm-ant. It also has a fifth case (the Instrumental).

2. Middle High German (A. D. 1100—1500). Literature during this period passed from the hands of the clergy into those of the nobles; hence its courtly character. The branches of poetic composition therein represented were Epic and Lyric Poetry, the former comprising not only the great National Epics of the 'Nibelungenlied' and 'Gudrun,' but also the Courtly or Art Epics of Chivalry, such as Wolfram von Eschenbach's 'Parcival' and Gottfried von Straszburg's 'Tristan und Isolde'; the latter comprising the productions of the 'Minnesänger,' of whom the greatest was Walther von der Vogelweide. The Dialect of Suabia (which included Baden, Würtemberg and parts of Bavaria) became the leading literary language.

Note. — Middle is distinguished from Old High German chiefly by the loss of the full vowels of infectional syllables, which were for the most part changed into c. Thus the O. H. G. datives pl. tag-um, geb-6m are in Mid. H. G. tag-en, geb-en; and the pres. indic. of nömen is: nim-e, nim-est, nim-et, nöm-en, nöm-et, nöm-ent. It is further distinguished from O. H. G. by the spread of the Umlaut (see § 326, below), which in the former is confined to the vowel a, to the vowels o and u also; and from both O. H. G. and Modern German by the large number of its diphthongal sounds (ai, ei, oi, öi, au, ou, öu, eu, ia, ie, io, iu; ua, ue, üe, uo), the greater number of which are unknown in both the preceding and the later stage of the language.

3. New or Modern High German, from 1500 to the present day, forming, since before the beginning of the 16th century, the standard literary language of all German-speaking people. Its basis is Doctor Martin Luther's translation of the Bible (1522—34), in which he adopted the "Ranzleiprache" or official court language particularly of the Duchy of Saxony, as being, in his own words, "die gemeine deutsche perache, welcher nachfolgen alle Fürsten und Könige in ganz Deutschaub."

Note. — The chief characteristic which distinguishes Modern (New) High German from Middle High German is the lengthening of all stem-vowels before a single consonant. Thus sagen, sprach, soben, all have the stem-vowel long in Modern German, but short in Middle High German. To this may be added the use of the letter h to mark a preceding long vowel, as in nehmen, M. H. G. nemen (with short e); the change of f into stiff before I, n, as: Schlaf, Schnee, M. H. G. slâf, snê; and that of the long vowels 1, û, into the diphthongs ei, su respectively, as: mein, bein, brei, Weiß, Mauß, Saut, laut, M. H. G. min, dîn, drl, wib, mûs, hûs, hût, lût.

# 325. GRIMM'S LAW OF Laufverichiebung.

- I. The law of the progression or shifting of mutes, Germ. Rents teriffiching, also called Grimm's Law after its chief discoverer, Jakob Grimm, the illustrious grammarian, is one of the most striking features of the Germanic languages.
- 2. The Mutes are divided into three classes, according to the organ with which they are uttered, viz.: LINGUALS (or DENTALS): t, th, d; LABIALS: p, ph (f), b; and PALATALS (or GUTTURALS): k (c), ch (h), g. Each of these classes contains a tenuis (or surd), an aspirate or spirant, and a media (or sonant), thus:

	TENUES.	ASPIRATES or SPIRANTS.	MEDIAE.
LINGUALS:	t	th	d
LABIALS:	p	ph, f	b
PALATALS:	k, c	kh, ch (h)	g

3. In the majority of the Germanic languages — Gothic, Scandinavian, Low German (including therefore English) — as compared with the other members of the Indo-Germanic family (Greek, Latin, etc.; see § 322, 3, above), each of these mutes has undergone one "shifting," or been pushed forward one stage in its own class, the tenues having been changed into aspirates (or more strictly spirants), the aspirates into mediæ, and the mediæ into tenues. In High German alone they have undergone a second "shifting" in the same direction.

Note.—The accompanying diagram will serve further to illustrate this process, showing how the mutes observe the following rotation from primitive Indo-Germanic through general Germanic (including English) to High German, viz.: Tenuis, Aspirate, Media; Aspirate, Media, Tenuis; Media, Tenuis, Aspirate

3. Taking Latin or Greek as representing the first or primitive Indo-Germanic stage, and English as representing the second, or general Germanic stage (the first shifting), the following scheme will show the theoretical working of this law:

Linguals.		LABIALS.	PALATALS.	
Latin, Greek, etc.:	t, th, d	p, ph, b	k, kh, g	
= English, etc.:	th, d, t	ph, b, p	kh, g, k	
= (High) German:	d, t, th	b, p, ph	g, k, kh	

- 5. The operation of the law is, however, subject to the following general exceptions:
  - (a) p and k were changed in the second shifting, not into aspirates proper, but into the *spirants* f and h (= dj) respectively, and these spirants were not subjected to any further change.
  - (b) The lingual aspirate is represented in High German by 3, \$, \$, \$, or \$.
  - (c) The second shifting of media to tenuis took place in High German in the *lingual series* only, except in one dialect (the Alemannian).
  - (d) The aspirate (or spirant) the is never found in Modern German at the beginning of a word.
- 6. Hence the modified scheme below will represent approximately the actual working of the law:

	L	INGUALS.	L	ABIAI	JS.	Pa	LATA	ALS.	
Latin, Greek, etc.:	t, th	, d	р,	ph (f)	, b	k, k	h (h)	, g	
= English, etc.:	th, d,	t	f,	b,	p	h,	g,	k	
= (High) German:	d, t,	z, s, ss, sz	f,	b,	f	h(d)	g,	k (0	h)

Note. — Latin has c, f, and h for k, ph and kh respectively; and the d at the bottom of the last column does not occur at the beginning of words; see 5, (d), above.

### EXAMPLES OF Lautverschiebung.

(Note. - Examples from Lat. unless otherwise specified.)

- 1. Linguals: (a) t th d; as: tectum thatch Dath; tenuis thin bünn; tu thou bu; tres three brei; frater brother Bruber; (b) th d t, as: thygatêr (Gr.) daughter Todyter; thyra (Gr.) door Türe; thêr (Gr.) deer Tier; (c) d t z, s, ss, sz, as: domus timber Zimmer; dakr-y (Gr.) tear Zühre; sedere sit fitch; edere eat effen.
- 2. LABIALS: (a) p-f-f, as: pugno—fight—fechten; pedem—foot—Fuß; piscis—fish—Fish(; (d) ph (Lat. f)—p—b, as: frater—brother—Bruder; fagus—beech—Buche; (c) b—p—f, as: cannabis—hemp—Haus.
- 3. PALATALS: (a) k (Lat. c) h f (h if initial), as: canis hound Guid; octo eight -- aft; noc-tem night Naft; (b) kh (Lat. h) g g, as: hostis guest Gast; hortus garden Garten; (c)

g-k(c) -- h (k if initial) as; gelidus -- cold -- talt; genu -- knee Anie; jugum -- yoke -- Joh; frango -- break -- brechen.

Note. — A further class of exceptions is caused by the fact that the mutes are sometimes protected from change by an adjacent consonant, as: wander—wandern; stone — Setin; haste —  $\Re a[t]$ , night —  $\Re a[t]$ ; craft —  $\Re a[t]$ . There are also other deviations from the strict rule too numerous to be mentioned here.

# 326. UMLAUT.

I. Umlaut is the modification of an accented a, o, u, au into  $\ddot{a}$  (e),  $\ddot{v}$ ,  $\ddot{u}$ ,  $\ddot{u}u$  respectively, and is caused by the influence of an  $\dot{i}$  or  $\dot{j}$  in the following syllable.

REMARKS.—I. The vowels a, n, u, with the diphthong au, are guttural or "back" vowels, and approach the sound of the following i, which is a palatal or "front" vowel.

- 2. This i or j appears in Old High German, but has disappeared—with some exceptions, as under (d), (e), (f), below—in Modern German, and even in Middle High German. The following are a few examples of the origin and working of this law:
  - (a) In the plur. of Substantives of the Cohn Model (§ 21), the termination e is in O. H. G. -i, as: Gäfte, O. H. G. gast-i; βτäfte, O. H. G. krafti.

Note. — Not all substantives with Umlaut in the plural have this origin; a number of them (e.g., Sohn), which originally belonged to declension-forms without an -i, having followed the analogy of the others.

- (b) In the plur. of the Dorf Model (§ 36), the ending er is in O. H. G. -ir, as: Rülber, O. H. G. kalbir.
- (c) In diminutives in schen (orig. -kîn) and stein (orig. -lîn), as: Ruäbchen, Ruäbcein, from Ruabe.
- (d) In fem. appellatives in sin, as Gräfin, from Graf.
- (e) In substs. in =nis, as Begräbuis, from graben.
- (f) In adjs. in sig, as gütig, thätig, from gut, That.
- (g) In the impf. subj. of strong verbs, the final of is in O. H. G. -i, as: gübe, O. H. G. gabi.
- 3. Sometimes the Umlaut of a is represented by e instead of ä, as in Engel (angel), from angil, Gr. angelos; Eltern, parents, from alt.
- 4. Instances of Umlaut occur in English also, as in mouse, mice, goose, geese; old, elder; but they are comparatively rare, and the in fluence of Umlaut ceased in English at a very early period. In German on the contrary it is still an active principle.

# APPENDICES.

---

# A. SUBSTANTIVES OF Maler MODEL WITH UMLAUT IN PLURAL.

### (Lesson V. § 17.)

Masculine. Ader, field Bruber, brother Sammer, hammer Schwager, brother-in-law Bater, father

Boben, bottom, loft Faben, thread Garten, garden Graben, ditch

Safen, harbour Laben, shop Dfen, stove Schaben, damage

Apfel, apple Sammel, wether Sanbel, affair, quarrel Mantel, cloak Nabel, navel

Nagel, nail Sattel, saddle Schnabel, beak Bogel, bird

Feminine. Mutter, mother Tochter, daughter

Neuter. Rlofter, cloister

# B. MASCULINE MONOSYLLABLES OF Sund Model (WITHOUT UMLAUT)

# (Less. VII, § 22, 1.)

Mal, eel Mar, eagle Arm, arm Borb, board, shelf Born, well Docht, wick Dold, dagger Dom, dome, cathedral Drud, pressure, print Grab, degree Gurt, girth Sag, hedge Sall, sound Salm, blade (of grass), etc. Sauch, breath horft, eyry Sort, refuge Suf, hoof

Sund, dog

Ralt, lime Rorf, cork Arahn, crane Lachs, salmon Lact, lac Laut. sound Luchs, lynx Moldy, salamander Monto, moon Morb, murder Drt, place Part, park Pfab, path Pfau, peacock

Pol, pole Buls, pulse Puntt, point Bunfc, punch

Quartz, quartz Quaft, tassel Schuft, mean fellow Schuh, shoe Spat, spar (mineral) Staar, starling Stahl, steel Stoff, material Sund, strait, sound Taft, taffeta Tag, day

Tatt, tact, bar (in music) Talt, talc Thran, train-oil Thron, throne

Torf, peat Tuid, flourish of trumpets

Boll, inch

# C. FEMININES OF Sohn Model.

(All with Umlaut; Less. VII, § 22, 3.)

Angst, anguish	Haut, skin	Nacht, nigh <b>e</b>
Ausflucht, evasion	Mluft, cleft	Naht, seam
Art, axe	Rraft, strength	Not, need
Bant, bench	Ruh, cow	Nuß, nut
Braut, bride	Runst, art	Sau, sow
Bruft, breast	Laus, louse	Schnur, string
Faust, fist	Luft, air	Stabt, town
Frucht, fruit	Lust, desire	Manb, wall
Gans, goose	Macht, power	Wurft, sausage
Gruft, grave	Magb, maid-servant	Bunft, guild
Sand, hand	Maus, mouse	Zusammenkunft, meeting

Also those ending in -nis and -fal.

### D. IRREGULAR FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

(Less. VII, § 22, 6.)

- 1. Der Raplan, chaplain, pl. Raplane.
- 2. The following foreign substs. with accent on last syll. follow the Hund Model: ber Wonolog', soliloquy; ber Dialog', dialogue; also those in -or accented, as: ber Humor', humour; ber Major', major.
- 3. The following are mixed (Ohr Model): ber Miga'tor, alligator; ber Damon, demon; ber Ron'ful, consul; bas Stereostope; bas Telestop', telescope; also those from the Lat. in -or unaccented, as: ber Dottor, ber Prosessor.
- 4. The following are weak or mixed (Ohr Model): ber Abamant', adamant; ber Dias mant' (or Demant), diamond; ber Magnet', magnet.

# E. NEUTER MONOSYLLABLES OF Sund Model.

# (Less. VII, § 22, 5.)

Beet, flower-bed	Gift, poison	Moos, moss	Shilf, rush
Beil, hatchet	Gleis, rut	Net, net	Schrot, shot
Bein, leg	Heft, handle	Öl, oil	Schwein, pig
Bier, beer	Horn,2 horn	Pferb, horse	Seil, rope
Blech, tin-plate	Зоф, yoke	Pfund, pound	Sieb, sieve
Blei, lead	Rnie, knes	Bult, desk	Spiel, game
Boot, 1 boat	Arenz, cross	Recht, right	Stüd, piece
Brot, bread	Land, 2 land	Reh, roe-deer	Tau, cable
Ding,2 thing	Licht,2 light	Reich, empire	Teil, share
Erg, ore	Loos, lot	Riff, reef	Wehr, weir
Fell, hide	Ma(a)I, mole, mark;	Rog, horse	Wert, work
Fest, festival	time	Salz, salt	Mort,2 word
Fett, fat	Maß, measure	Schaf, sheep	Belt, tent
Flog, 1 raft	Moor, moor	Schiff, ship	Beug, stuff
			Biel, goal

Also eight in -r:

haar, hair Jahr, year Baar, pair Tier, animal beer, army Meer, sea Rohr, reed Thor, gate

1 Also with Umlaut. 2 See also App. G.\*

## F. WEAK MASCULINES NOT ENDING IN -t.

(Less. XIV, § 57, 2.)

Raffer, Caffir Bär, bear Ged, fop Pring, prince Gefell, fellow Menich, man Spat, sparrow Baier, Bavarian Bulgar', Bulgarian Graf. count Mohr. Moor Steinmen, stone-Marr. fool Thor, fool [mason Burich, lad Sagestola, old bachelor Chrift, Christian Selb, hero Merv. nerve Ungar, Hungarian Kint, finch herr, master Das. ox Borfahr, ancestor Würft, prince Sirt, herdsman Bommer, Pomeranian

## G. SUBSTANTIVES OF MIXED DECLENSION.

(Less. XV, §§ 61-63.)

## (a) Name Model (Masc.).

Balle(n), beam Slaube, faith Shaben, injury (pl. Shaben)
Buchftabe, letter of the alphabet Halphabet Hame, name
Friebe, peace Same, seed Wille, will

Also one neut. : bas Berg, G. bes Bergens.

# (b) Nachbar Model.

. Masculines:

Gebante, thought

Bauer, peasant Lorbeer, laurel \*Rantossel, slipper \*Stiefel, boot Gevatter, godfather Nachbar, neighbour Stackel, sting Better, cousing Ron'sul, consul

2. Neuters: Auge, eye Enbe, end

\* Also after Maler Model.

# (c) Ohr Model.

1. Masculines:

21hn, ancestor Maft, mast Straug, 3 ostrich Sporn, spur Forft, forest Pfau,1 peacock (also Sporen) Unterthan,2 subject Gau,1 district Schmerz, pain Staat, state Bierat, ornament Sufar,2 hussar See, lake Strafil, beam Bins, interest 2. Neuters: Bett, bed Semb, shirt Ohr, ear

1 Also after hund Model. 2 Also after Anabe Model.

To these may be added the foreign substantives in App. D. 8 See also App. G.

# G.\* DOUBLE PLURALS WITH DIFFERENT MEANINGS. (Less. XV, § 64.)

has Ranh . Bänber, ribbons Banbe, ties

bie Bant : Bante, benches Banfen, commercial banks

Dinge, things Dinger, creatures bas Ding :

ber Dorn : Dorne or Darner, thorns Dorney, thorns (collectively) bas Geficht: Seficite, visions

Wefichter, faces bas Sorn: Börner, horns Sorne, kinds of horn ber Laben : Läben, shops Enben, shutters

bas Lanb: Länder, separate countries1 Lanbe, provinces or districts.

bas Licht: Lichte, candles Lichter, lights ber Mann: Männer, men Mannen, vassals

ber Monb: Monde, satellites Monden, months (poetic) Örter, (single) places? ber Ort : Orte, places (collectively)

bie Sau : Saue, sows Sauen, wild boars

ber Strauß: Straufe or Straufen, os-Sträuße, nosegavs triches

Tücher, cloths Tuce, kinds of cloth bas Tuch: bas Wort: Wörter, single words Morte, coherent words

ber Boll: Bolle, inches Bolle, tolls

- 1 For instance bie Länder Europas, the countries of Europe (individually considered); but die Deutschen Lande, the German districts or provinces; die Rieberlande, the Netherlands. Poets use the latter form also in the sense of the former.
- 2 For instance in allen Örtern ber Proping, in all (inhabited) places of the province; but an allen Orten, in all places generally, everywhere.

# H. Nouns (mostly abstract) WHICH FORM THEIR PLURAL BY MEANS OF A DERIVATIVE OR OF A COMPOUND FORM - WHICH ITSELF IS USED BOTH IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

(Supp. Less. B., § 66, 3, Note.)

Singular.

Plural bie Bauten ber Bau, building bie Baue)

(ber Bau, burrow, etc. bas Beftreben, effort bie Beftrebungen ber Betrug, deceit, fraud bie Betrügereien ber Bund, alliance bie Bunbniffe ber Dant, thanks bie Dantfagungen bas Erbe, inheritance

bie Erbichaften ber Friebe, treaty of peace bie Friebensverträge bie Gemalt, force, violence bie Gemaltthätigfeiten

bie Gunft, favour bie Gunftbezeugungen ber Rummer, affliction, trouble bie Rümmerniffe

bie Lobiprüche bas Lob, praise ber Morb, murder bie Morbthaten ber Rat, counsel, advice bie Ratichläge

# Singular.

# Plural.

Othig will t	
(ber Rat, councillor	bie Räte)
ber Raub, robbery	bie Räubereien
ber Segen, blessing	bie Segnungen
ber Streit, quarrel, dispute	bie Streitigkeiten
ber Tob, death, decease	bie Tobesfälle
bas Unglück, misfortune	bie Unglücksfälle
ber Berbrug, vexation	bie Berbrießlichkeiten
ber Bant, quarrel	bie Bankereien

## I. EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULES ON GENDER.

(Less. XVII, XVIII, §§ 80, 89, 90.)

- 80. 1. (a) Fem.: die Mannsperson, male-person. Neut: all diminutives in -cen and -lein.
- 2. (a) Neut.: bas Beib, woman; bas Menich, wench; bas Frauenzimmer, woman, and all diminutives in -chen and -lein.

## (b) Trees, etc.:

ber Ahorn, maple	ber Rohl, cabbage	bas Moos, moss
ber Apfel, apple	ber Kohlrabi, Brussels-spouts	ber Roggen, rye
bas Epheu, ivy	bas Korn, grain	ber Spargel, asparagus
bas Geranium, geranium	ber Lauch, leek	ber Spinat, spinach
ber Hafer, oats	ber Lorbeer, laurel	ber Tabat, tobacco
ber Sanf, hemp	ber Mais, maize	ber Beigen, wheat !
her Glee clover	•	, ,

Also Compounds, as: ber Schwarzborn, blackthorn; bas Geißblatt, honey-suckle; bas Vergißmeinnicht, forget-me-not; bas Tausenbsch, daisy; and diminutives, as: bas Beilchen, violet.

- 3. (a) Metals Masc.: ber Kobalt, cobalt; ber Stahl, steel; ber Tombad, pinchbeck; ber Nismut, bismuth; ber Bint, zinc. Fem.: bie Platina, platina.
  - (b) Countries, etc. Masc.: ber Peloponnes, Peloponnesus; ber Hague; also those in -gau, as: Nargau. Fem.: bie Arim, Crimea; bie Levante, the Levant; bie Ukraine, the Ukraine; and those in -et, -au, -z.

## 89. 1. (a) Neut. : bas Meffing, brass.

#### (h) Feminines in -el:

(b) I continues in			
Achfel, shoulder	Diftel, thistle	Gurgel, throat	Mangel, mangle
Ampel, lamp	Droffel, thrush	Summel, humble-	Miftel, mistletoe
Amsel, black-bird	Cichel, acorn	bee	Muschel, shell
Angel, fish-hook	Fabel, fable	Infel, island	Mabel, needle
Bibel, bible	Fadel, torch	Kanzel, pulpit	Neffel, nettle
Budel, boss (of a	Fessel, fetter	Rartoffel, potato	Drgel, organ
shield)	Fibel, spelling-book	Roppel, leash; brace	Pappel, poplar
Cymbel, cymbal	Formel, formula	(of dogs)	Parabel, parable
Dattel, date	Gabel, fork	Rugel, ball	Primel, primrose
Deichfel, carriage-	Geißel, scourge	Ruppel, cupola	Raspel, rasp
pole	Gonbel, gondola	Manbel, almond	Regel, rule

Hunzel, wrinkle	Semmel, roll of bread	d Tafel, table	Baffel, waffle
Schachtel, band-box	Sidel, sickle	Trobbel, tassel	Winbel, swaddling-
Schaufel, shovel	Spindel, spindle	Trommel, drum	cloth
Schaufel, swing	Staffel, step of a	Trüffel, truffle	Burzel, root
Schindel, shingle	ladder	Bachtel, quail	Zwiebel, onion
Schüffel, dish	Stoppel, stubble		
In -cr:			
Alder, vein	Folter, rack	Marter, torture	Steuer, tax
Alfter, aster	Salfter, halter	Mauer, wall	Tochter, daughter
Auster, oyster	Rammer, chamber	Mutter, mother	Trauer, mourning
Blatter, blister	Relter, wine-press	Matter, adder	Besper, even - tide,
Butter, butter	Riefer, pine	Nummer, number	vespers
Ceber, cedar	Rlammer, cramp-iron	Oper, opera	Wimper, eyelash
Dauer, duration	Rlapper, rattle	Otter, otter	Biffer, cipher
Elfter, magpie	Lauer, lurking-place	Rüster, elm	Bither, guitar
Fafer, fibre	Leber, liver	Scheuer, barn	
Feber, feather, pen	Leier, lyre	Schleuber, sling	
Feier, celebration	Leiter, ladder	Schulter, shoulder	

NOTE. — The names of rivers ending in -er or -el are also feminine, e.g.: bie Ober, bie Befer, bie Mofel.

Rubel, herd, flock Siegel, seal

Rapitel, chapter

Neute	rs in -cl:
Bünbel,	bundle

Dunfel, darkness	Mittel, means	Scharmütel, skirmis	h Übel, evil
Egempel, example	Drafel, oracle	Segel, sail	Biesel, weasel
In -en:			
Almosen, alms	Füllen, colt	Lafen, sheet (bed-	Bappen, coat-ot
Beden, basin	Riffen, cushion	clothes)	arms
Cifen, iron		Lehen, fief	Beiden, token

## And all infinitives when used as substantives.

#### In -er:

In -er:			
Abenteuer, adven-	Gatter, grate, rail-	Meffer, knife	Scepter or Bepter,
ture	ing	Mieber, bodice	sceptre
MIter, age	Gitter, trellis	Mufter, pattern	Silber, silver
Bauer, bird-cage	Rlofter, cloister	Opfer, sacrifice	Steuer, helm
Citer, pus	Rupfer, copper	Pflafter, plaster	Theater, theatre
Cuter, udder	Lager, couch	Polfter, cushion	Ufer, shore
Fenfter, window	Laster, vice	Bulver, powder	Wasser, water
Feuer, fire	Leber, leather	Register, register,	Metter, weather
Fieber, fever	Luber, carrion	index	Bunber, wonder
Fuder, load	Malter, a grain mea-	Ruber, oar	Bimmer, apartment
Futter, fodder	sure	Schauer, shower	

NOTE. — Münster, 'minster,' occurs both as masculine — from its present form — and as neuter — from its derivation from the Latin monasterium.

# (c) Feminines:

Acht, proscription	Bant, bench	Brunft, conflagration	Burg, castle
Art, manner, kind	Bai, bay	Brut, brood	Fahrt, expedition
Bahn, path	Braut, bride	Bucht, bay	Flucht, flight

Flur, field	Araft, strength	Sham, shame	That, deed
Flut, flood	Ruh, cow	Schar, host, troop	Thür, door
Form, form	Sur, (obsolete), elec-	Shau, show	Tradit, load, cos-
Fracht, freight	tion	Scheu, dread	tume
Frau, woman	Last, load	Schicht, layer, stratum	Trift, pasturage
Frist, time	Lift, cunning	Shlacht, battle	Uhr, watch
Furcht, fear	Mart, boundary	Shlucht, ravine	Bacht, guard
Furt, ford	Marid, marsh, fen	Schmach, disgrace	Wahl, choice
Geiß, goat	Mauth, excise	Schrift, writing	Wehr, defence
Gicht, gout	Milch, milk	Schuld, guilt, debt	Welt, world
Gier, eagerness	Naht, seam	Schwulft, swelling	Bucht, bulk, heavy
Glut, glow	Mull, zero	See, sea	weight
Gunst, favour	Pein, torment	Sicht, sight	Bulit, pad
Saft, custody	Pflicht, duty	Spreu, chaff	Mut, rage
Saft, haste	Pojt, post	Spur, trace	Bahl, number
Sulb, grace	Pracht, splendour	Statt, stead, place	Beit, time
Sut, guard	Qual, torment	Stirn, brow	Bier, ornament
Sagb, chase	Maît, rest	Streu, litter [sion	Bucht, discipline
Rost, food	Saat, seed	Sucht, longing, pas-	Bunft, guild
Also those in App. C.			

#### Neuters:

Mas. carrion

Umt, office

Bab, bath

Bett, bed

Band, ribbon

Bilb, picture

Blatt, leaf

Blut, blood

Buth, book

Dad, roof

Ci, egg

Gis, ice

Fag, cask

Weld, field

Meijch, flesh

Gelb, money

Gleis, groove, rut

Garn, yarn

Glas, glass

Glieb, limb

Ding, thing

Dorf, village

Bund, bundle

Golb, gold Grab, grave Gras, grass Harz, resin Fad), compartment

Saupt, head Haus, house Seil, prosperity Semb, shirt Berg, heart Seu, hay hirn, brain Solz, wood Suhn, fowl Ralb. calf Rind, child Rinn, chin Aleid, garment Rorn, corn Rraut, herb Lamin, lamb Land, land Laub, foliage

Glüd, luck

Leib, suffering Schilb, sign-board Lieb, song Schloß, lock; cas-Lob, praise tle Loch, hole Schmalz, grease, Gut, property, estate Lohn, wages lard Lot, plumb-line Schwert, sword Mahl, meal, repast Stift, foundation Malz, malt Stroh, straw Mart, marrow Thal, valley Maul, mouth (of Tud, cloth beasts) Bieh, cattle Mehl, flour Bolf, nation Menich, wench Bachs, wax Mus, pap, jam Bamms, jacket. Mest, nest vest Dbft, fruit Deh, woe Dhr, ear Weib, woman Pech, pitch Werg, tow Pfand, pledge Wild, game Mab, wheel Mohl, wellbeing Reis, twig Bort, word Rieß, ream Wrad, wreck

Relt, tent

Binn, tin

Also those in App. E.

Rind, head of cattle

Scheit, log of wood

- a. (a) Der hornung, February; bas Betfchaft, seal
  - (b) Der Abend, evening; bas Dutend, dozen.

#### (c) Masculines:

Buchftabe, letter of Wille, will Glaube, faith Löwe, lion the alphabet Saufe, heap Mife, monkey Rabe, raven Friede, peace Name, name Drache, dragon Rafe, cheese Same, seed Ralfe, falcon Funte, spark Gebante, thought Schabe, injury Safe, hare

And names of males, as: ber Bote, messenger: ber Anabe, boy, etc. Neuters: Auge, eye; Enbe, end; Erbe, inheritance.

- (e) Der Ratholit', Catholic.
- 3. (b) Masculines: Srrtum, error; Reichtum, wealth.
  - (c) Feminines in -ni3:

\*Bebrananis, distress Erlaubnis, permission \*Berbammnis, damnation \*Befugnis, authority Ersparnis, savings Berberbnis, corruption (is Mäulnis, putrefaction Befümmernis, sorrow Beforgnis, apprehension \*Körbernis, furtherance Betrübnis, affliction Finsternis, darkness Bewandtnis, conjuncture Renntnis, knowledge Empfängnis, conception \*Schrednis, terror Erfenntnis, cognition Trodnis, drought

also used as neuter) Berfäumnis, neglect. omission Wilbnis, wilderness

\* Also neuter.

Feminines in -fal: Drangfal, tribulation; Mühfal, trouble; Trübfal, affliction. Masculine in -jel: Stöpfel, stopper, etc.

90. 4. Feminine compounds of Mut: Anmut, grace; Demut, humility; Grogmut, generosity; Langmut, long-suffering; Santtmut, meekness; Schwermut, melancholy; Mchmut, sorrowfulness.

# J. Nouns which have a double Gender.

## (Less. XVIII, § 91.)

bas Banb (pl. Bänber), ribbon

bas Bund (pl. Bünde), bundle

bas Chor (pl. Chore), choir bas Erbe, inheritance

bas Erfenntnis, verdict

bas Reis (pl. Reifer), twig

bie Geißel, scourge

bas Bauer, cage

ber Banb (pl. Bänbe), volumes ber Bund (pl. Bünde), confederacy ber Bauer (pl. Bauern), peasant ber Chor (pl. Chöre), chorus ber Erbe (pl. Erben), heir bie Erfenntnis, intuition ber Geisel, hostage bie Gift (Mitgift), dowry ber Sarz, Hartz mountains ber Beibe (pl. Beiben), heathen ber But (pl. Biite), hat ber Riefer, jaw ber Runbe, customer ber Leiter, guide ber Mangel, want bas Mart, marrow ber Meffer, measurer, surveyor ber Reis, rice

bas Gift, poison bas Sarz, resin bie Seibe, heath bie Sut, heed, guard bie Riefer (pl. Riefern), pine-tree bie Runbe, knowledge, tidings bie Leiter, ladder bie Mangel, mangle bie Mart (pl. Marten), border-land bas Meffer, knife

ber Schilb (pl. Schilbe), shield bas Schilb (pl. Schilber), sign-board ber See (pl. Seen), lake bie See, sea, ocean ber Sproffe, offspring bie Sproffe, step (in a ladder) bie Steuer, tax, duty bas Steuer, helm ber Stift, pencil, tack bas Stift, pious foundation ber Teil, part bas Teil, share, portion bas Thor (pl. Thore), gate ber Thor (pl. Thoren), fool ber Berbienft, gain bas Berbienft, merit

# K. Monosyllabic Adjectives without Umlaut.

## (Less. XXV, § 125.)

barid, harsh	hohl, hollow	platt, flat	fcroff, rugged
brav, good	holb, favourable	plump, clumsy	ftarr, stiff
bunt, variegated	tahl, bald	rafd), quick	ftolg, proud
bumpf, dull (said	farg, stingy	roh, raw	ftraff, tight, stretched
of sound)	fnapp, tight	runb, round	ftunipf, blunt
falb, fallow	Iahm, lame	fact, gentle, low	toll, mad
falfd, false	laß, tired	fanft, soft	voll, full
flach, flat	matt, wearied	fatt, satiated	wahr, true
froh, joyful	morfc, rotten	fdlaff, slack	zahm, tame
alatt, smooth	nadt, naked	fclant, slender	

The practice varies with bang or bange, afraid; blaß, pale; fromm, pious; gefund, sound; flar, clear; naß, wet; zart, tender.

## L. STRONG VERBS NOT GIVEN IN THE LISTS.

## (Less. XXXII, § 192. - Rare forms in [].)

1.	bingen (W.), hire		gebunger
2.	gä(h)ren (W.), ferment	gor	gegoren
3.	gebären,1 bear, bring forth	gebar	geboren
4.	teifen (W.), chide, scold	fiff	gekiffen
5.	flieben (W.), split, cleave	flob	gefloben
6.	fneipen 2 (W.), pinch	fnipp	gefnippen
7.	pflegen,3 practise	{ pflog } { [pflag] }	gepflogen
8.	jangen 4 (W.), suck	fog	gefogen
9.	fcinden (W.), flay	{ [[danb] } } } [[dunb] }	geschunden
10.	fcleißen (W.), fray	jchliß	geschliffen
11.	fcnauben (W.), snort	jonob	geichnoben
12.	screw (W.), screw	fcrob	gefdroben
13.	fcwären,5 fester	{ idwor } { [[dwur] }	geschworen
14.	fpleißen (W.), split	[pliß	gefpliffen
15.	fteden 6 (W. N.), stick, be stuck	ftat	[geftoden]
16.	ftieben (W. N.), scatter	ftob	geftoben
17.	ftinken, stink	ftant	gestunken

¹ gebierit, etc. ² Rarely strong. ³ Weak in other meanings. ⁴ fäugst, fäugt, or saugt, saugt. ⁵ schwiert. ⁶ stidst, etc.; generally weak.

# EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

EXPLANATIONS.— 1. References are to the §.

- 2. Words in Italics are not to be translated.
- 3. Words connected by \_, if followed by a note, are included in that note; otherwise such connected words are to be rendered by a single word in German.
  - 4. The gender is not given, where it is according to rule.
- I. One may 1 say of the metaphysicians 2 what Scaliger said of the natives 3 of the Basque 4 Provinces 5: "I am told 6 that they understand each other, but I do not believe it."
- 1' can.' 2 Metaphysiter. 3 ber Eingeborene. 4 bastifch. 5 Proving, f. 6113, 2.
- II. "A friend of mine," 1 says Lord Erskine, "suffered from 2 continual 3 sleeplessness. 4 Various 5 means 6 were tried 7 to send\_him\_to\_sleep 6—but in\_vain. At\_last his physicians resorted 10 to an experiment 11 which succeeded perfectly. They dressed 18 him in a watchman's\_coat, 14 put 15 a lantern into his 16 hand, placed 17 him in a sentry-box, 18 and he was asleep 19 in ten minutes."
- 1119, 3 (c). 2 an + dat. 3 fortwährend. 4 Schlastofigkeit. 5 verschieden. 6 Mittel, n. 7 verschieden. 8 ihn einzuschläfern. 9 vergebens. 10 versallen auf + acc. 11 Versuch, m. 12 vollständig. 13 anziehen + dat. of pers. and acc. of thing. 14 Nachtwächterkittel, m. 15 steden. 16 44, 6 (b). 17 stellen. 18 Wachthäuschen. 19 eingeschlasen.
- III. The great Goethe was not particularly <sup>1</sup> fond <sup>2</sup> of music. When a pianist <sup>3</sup> once, at a Court <sup>4</sup> concert in Weimar, was in the middle <sup>5</sup> of a very long sonata, <sup>6</sup> the poet suddenly <sup>7</sup> rose <sup>8</sup> up and, to the horror <sup>9</sup> of the assembled <sup>10</sup> ladies and gentlemen, exclaimed <sup>11</sup>: "If it lasts <sup>12</sup> three minutes longer, I shall confess <sup>13</sup> everything."
- 1 besonder, adj. 2 Freund. 3 Mavierspieler. 4 hof, m.; use compound word. 5 mitten in. 6 Sonate, f. 7 plötslich. 8 stehen. 9 Schrecken, m. 10 versammeln. 11 rufen. 12 dauern. 13 gestehen.

IV. In the first piece 1 Theodore Hook wrote for the stage, 2 a traveller 3 comes up\_to 4 the door of an inn, 5 and says: "Excuse me, my friend, are you the master of this house?"—"Yes, sir," is 6 the reply; "my wife has\_been 7 dead these 8 three weeks."

<sup>1</sup> Stück, n. <sup>2</sup> Bühne. <sup>3</sup> ber Neisende. <sup>4</sup> auf... zu, 224, 4. <sup>5</sup> Gasthaus. <sup>6</sup> sautet. <sup>7</sup> 257, 4, Note. <sup>8</sup> for the last three weeks'; 46.

V. "Ven you're a married man, Samivel," said old Weller, "you'll understand a\_good\_many\_things as you don't understand now; but vether it's worth\_while going\_through so much to learn so little, as the charity\_boy said ven he got\_to\_the\_end\_of the alphabet, is a matter\_o'\_taste. I rayther think it isn't."

<sup>1</sup> a proper name preceded by an adj. takes the art. <sup>2</sup> Biese. <sup>3</sup> 'that,' 96, 5. <sup>4</sup> der Mühe wert. <sup>5</sup> durch'machen. <sup>6</sup> Armenschüler. <sup>7</sup> sertig sein mit. <sup>8</sup> Geschunckssache. <sup>9</sup> 'I scarcely think (glauben) it.'

VI. George Selwyn's morbid 'passion for public executions and similar horrors was notorious. He paid visit to Lord Holland while the latter lay on his deathbed. When his lordship was told that Mr. Selwyn had called, he said: "Should he come again, please bring him up. If I am still alive I happy to see him. If I am dead he will be happy to see me."

\* frankhaft. 2 Leibenschaft. 3 hinrichtung. 4 ähnlich. 5 Gränel, m. 6 allgemein bekannt. 7 44, 6 (a). 8 Sterbebett. 9 Se. Gnaden. 10 benacherichtigen. 11 'been there.' 12 210, 3, (b). 13 am Leben. 14 sich freuen.

VII. At the time when Napoleon the Third lived as an exile in London, he was always a welcome guest at Lady Blessington's, at Gore House. Very soon after his return

to Paris, while his political <sup>6</sup> prospects <sup>7</sup> were still rather <sup>9</sup> doubtful, <sup>9</sup> her\_ladyship <sup>10</sup> paid\_a\_visit\_to <sup>11</sup> that capital, and met <sup>12</sup> the Prince driving <sup>13</sup> in the Bois de Boulogne. It was an embarrassing <sup>14</sup> encounter, <sup>15</sup> for the future <sup>16</sup> Emperor of the French had shown <sup>17</sup> himself anything\_but <sup>18</sup> grateful for her ladyship's <sup>10</sup> courtesy. <sup>10</sup> He saluted <sup>20</sup> her, however, <sup>21</sup> with forced politeness, <sup>22</sup> and asked: "Countess, <sup>23</sup> shall you stay long in Paris?"—"I really <sup>24</sup> cannot say," answered Lady Blessington, with a bewitching <sup>25</sup> smile; "and you?"

1 227, (b), 2. 2 ber Berbannte. 3 bei. 4 in. 5 Rüdfehr, f. 6 politisch.
7 Aussicht, f. 8 ziemlich. 9 zweiselhaft. 10 'the lady.' 11 besuchen. 12 treffen (trans.). 13 auf einer Spaziersahrt. 14 verlegen. 15 Zusammentreffen.
16 zukünftig. 17 erweisen. 18 nichts weniger als. 19 Freundlichkeit. 20 grüßen.
21 indessen. 22 Hösslichkeit. 23 gnädige Gräfin. 24 wirklich. 25 bezaubernd.

VIII. Talleyrand was bored <sup>1</sup> for <sup>2</sup> his <sup>3</sup> autograph <sup>4</sup> by a dull <sup>6</sup> English nobleman. <sup>6</sup> At\_last <sup>7</sup> he sent him the following invitation <sup>8</sup>: "Dear Lord, — Will you honour <sup>9</sup> me with your company <sup>10</sup> next Wednesday evening, at eight o'clock. I have invited a number <sup>11</sup> of exceedingly clever <sup>12</sup> people, and I do not like <sup>13</sup> to be the only fool <sup>14</sup> among them."

13um Überdruß bestirmen. 2um. 3'an.' 4Autograph, n. 5einfältig. 6 Sdelmann. 7 endlich. 8 Einladung. 9 bechren, imper. 10 Gegenwart (presence). 11 Auzahl, f. 12 geistreich. 13 gerne mögen. 14 Dummkopf.

XI. At a dinner\_party<sup>1</sup> in Paris, a dull<sup>2</sup> and ugly<sup>3</sup> baron<sup>4</sup> sat between Madame de Staël and Madame Récamier (the acknowleged belle<sup>5</sup> of the day), and whispered<sup>6</sup> to the former: "Am I not fortunate to be<sup>7</sup> sitting between beauty and genius<sup>8</sup>?"—"Not so very fortunate," replied the offended authoress,<sup>9</sup> "for you possess<sup>10</sup> neither the one nor the other!"

Diner (Fr.), n. 2 dumm. 3 häßlich. 4 Baron'. 5 Schönheit. 6 inst Ohr flüstern. 7 sich befinden. 8 Genie, n. 9 Schriftstellerin. 10 besitzen.

X. When the dramatist Gilbert was one day descending in the greatest hurry 2 the steps 3 fronting 4 the Savage Club, a stranger, in a state 6 of excitement 7 which defied 8 regular 2 construction, 10 addressed him thus: "Excuse me, have you seen a gentleman with one eye of the name of 11 X.—?" Gilbert answered 12 this question with another: "Stop 13 a moment. What's the name of his other eye?"

1 heruntersteigen. 2 Eile, f. 3 Treppe, sing. 4 vor. 5 use the Engl. words. 6 Zustand, m. 7 Aufregung. 8 spotten + gen. 9 regelrecht. 10 Wortsfolge. 11 Namens. 12 beautworten. 13 erlauben.

XI. When Charles Lamb was still a clerk 1 in the India-House, 2 he was one day rebuked 3 as follows 4 by a superior 5: "I have remarked, Mr. Lamb, that you always come to 6 the office 1 very late." — "That's true, to be sure, 3" answered Elia; "but you must not forget that I always go away very early." Of course 9 such an explanation 10 was more than enough."

1 Schreiber; 44, 5. 2 use the Engl. words. 3 zur Rede stellen. 4 folgendermaßen. 5 der Borgeichte. 6 auf. 7 Bureau, n. 8 wohl (after the verb 'is'). 9 natürlich. 10 Erklärung. 11 hinreichend.

XII. I never in my life committed more than one act of folly, si said Rulhière one day in the presence of Talleyrand. But when will it end ? inquired the latter.

begehen, trans. 2 Torheit. 3 enden.

XIII. While Sheridan was staying at the country\_house of a friend, he was one morning asked by a lady to accompany her on a walk. The lady was neither witty nor beautiful, and the author of the 'School for Scandal' was at\_a\_loss for an excuse, until he luckily discovered and announced to her that it was raining. His disappointed persecutress.

retired, 10 but shortly 11 came back to announce 12 that the weather had cleared up. 12 "So\_it\_has, 14 madam, 15" said Sheridan, driven 16 to despair 17; "but it has only 18 cleared up enough for one — not yet for two."

<sup>1</sup> auf Besuch sein. <sup>2</sup> Landhaus. <sup>3</sup> bitten. <sup>4</sup> Lästerschuse. <sup>5</sup> verlegen um. <sup>6</sup> glücklicherweise. <sup>7</sup> mitteilen + dat. <sup>8</sup> in ihren Erwartungen (expectations) getäuscht; 283, 4. <sup>9</sup> Versolgerin. <sup>10</sup> sich zurückziehen. <sup>11</sup> bald. <sup>12</sup> mit der Nachricht. <sup>13</sup> sich ausstätzeren. <sup>14</sup> allerdings. <sup>15</sup> gnädige Fran. <sup>16</sup> 299. <sup>17</sup> Verzweissung; use def. art. <sup>18</sup> höchstens.

XIV. Foote, being annoyed 1 one day by an itinerant 2 fiddler, 3 who produced 4 harsh 6 discords 6 under his window, threw him down a coin 7 and bade him be gone, 8 as one scraper 9 at 10 a door was quite sufficient. 11

\* beläftigen ; 284, 1, (a). 2 herumziehend. 3 Geigenspieler. 4 hervorbringen. 5 schrill. 6 Mifton, m. 7 Gelbstück, n. 8 sich aus dem Staube machen. 9 Krater. 10 an. 11 genug.

**XV.** A certain nobleman was detected 1 trying 2 to cheat 3 at 4 cards, 5 and turned 6 out of the house with the threat 7 that he should be thrown out\_of the window if he came again. He related his misfortune 8 to Talleyrand, protested 9 his innocence, 10 and asked 11 him at the same time 12 for 13 advice. 14 "Well, my dear friend, I advise you to play in\_future 15 only on\_the\_ground\_floor. 16"

<sup>1</sup> entbecken. <sup>2</sup>" in the attempt." <sup>3</sup> betrügen. <sup>4</sup> im. <sup>5</sup> Kartenspiel, <sup>n.</sup> <sup>6</sup> weisen. <sup>7</sup> Drohung. <sup>8</sup> Mißgeschick, <sup>n.</sup> <sup>9</sup> beteuern. <sup>10</sup> Unschuld, <sup>f.</sup> <sup>11</sup> bitten. <sup>12</sup> Jugleich. <sup>13</sup> um. <sup>14</sup> Nat, <sup>m.</sup> <sup>15</sup> künstig. <sup>16</sup> ju ebener Erbe.

XVI. A barrister <sup>1</sup> entered <sup>2</sup> the court <sup>3</sup> one morning with his wig <sup>4</sup> stuck quite on one side. Not being aware <sup>5</sup> how ridiculous <sup>6</sup> he looked, <sup>7</sup> he was surprised <sup>8</sup> at <sup>9</sup> the observations <sup>10</sup> made <sup>11</sup> upon it, <sup>12</sup> and at length <sup>13</sup> he asked Curran: "Do

you see anything ridiculous <sup>14</sup> in this wig, Mr. Curran?"—
"Nothing except the head," was the consolatory <sup>15</sup> answer.

<sup>1</sup> Abvokat'. <sup>2</sup> treten in + acc. <sup>3</sup> Gerichtssaal, m. <sup>4</sup> Perrücke, f. <sup>5</sup> wissen, 284, I (b). <sup>6</sup> sächerlich. <sup>7</sup> aussehen. <sup>8</sup> sich wundern. <sup>9</sup> über + acc. <sup>10</sup> Besmerkung. <sup>11</sup> 290, 2 (b). <sup>12</sup> darüber. <sup>13</sup> endlich. <sup>14</sup> 122, II. <sup>15</sup> tröstlich.

XVII. After a duel with young O'Connell, Lord Alvanley gave a guinea to the coachman who had driven him to and from the scene of the encounter. Surprised at the largeness of the sum, the man said: "My lord, Look you to Alvanley interrupted him with the words: "My friend, the guinea is for bringing me back, not for taking me."

1 Duell', n. 2 Guinee', f. 3 Ruticher; 45, Rule 2. 4"to the scene of the encounter (Stellbichein, n.) and from there back." 5 burch. 6"large sum (Summe)." 7 gnädiger Herr. 8 ich habe Sie ja nur hin—. 9 277. 10 hinnehmen, use the perf.

XVIII. A gentleman, who had been\_worsted <sup>1</sup> in a dispute <sup>2</sup> with Porson, lost his\_temper. <sup>3</sup> "Professor, <sup>4</sup>" said he, "my opinion <sup>5</sup> of you is most <sup>6</sup> contemptible. <sup>1</sup>" — "Sir," returned the great Grecian, <sup>8</sup> "I never yet met <sup>9</sup> with any <sup>10</sup> of your opinions that was <sup>11</sup> not contemptible."

1 ben Kürzern ziehen. 2 Disputation. 3 die Geduld. 4 herr Professor. 5 Meinung. 6 127, 2. 7 verächtlich. 8 Grieche. 9 vorkommen (impers. + dat. of pers.). 10 ein (nom.). 11 plupf. subj.; 268, 4.

XIX. The English, says Sydney Smith, are a calm, reflecting people; they are ready to give time and money as soon as they are convinced of a thing; but they love dates, names, and certificates. In the midst of the most heartrending narratives, John Bull requires the day of the month, the year of our Lord, the name of the parish, 12

and the countersign <sup>13</sup> of three or four respectable <sup>14</sup> householders. <sup>15</sup> As soon as these affecting <sup>16</sup> circumstances <sup>17</sup> have been stated, <sup>18</sup> he can no longer hold\_out, <sup>19</sup> but <sup>20</sup> gives way <sup>21</sup> to his natural kindness — puffs, <sup>22</sup> blubbers, <sup>23</sup> and subscribes.

\*\* Engländer.
 2 ruhig.
 3 überle'gend.
 4 überzeu'gen.
 9 verlangen.
 Deglaubigungsschein, m.
 7 herzzerreißend.
 8 Erzählung.
 9 verlangen.
 Datum.
 11 Jahreszahl.
 12 Kirchipiel, n.
 13 Unterschrift, f.
 14 angeschen.
 15 Hansherr.
 16 rührend.
 17 Umstand, m.
 18 angeben.
 19 es aushalten.
 20 236, 1, Rem. 1.
 21 freien Lauf lassen.
 22 schnauben.
 23 schling.
 24 dinanben.

XX. A young poet once came to Piron to read¹ him a couple of new sonnets² written³ by him, and ask him which he preferred.⁴ The moment⁵ he had finished the first, Piron said hastily⁵: "I prefer the other," and positively refused⁵ to listen even⁵ to a line¹o of it.

1 vorlesen. 2 Sonnett', n. 3 verfassen; 290, 2 (d). 4 vorziehen. 5 Sobald ... nur. 6 hastig. 7 durchaus. 8 sich weigern. 9 auch nur. 10 Zeile.

XXI. Wewitzer, the well-known actor <sup>1</sup> and wag, <sup>2</sup> was joking <sup>8</sup> and laughing at <sup>4</sup> rehearsal <sup>5</sup> one day, instead of minding <sup>6</sup> his part. <sup>7</sup> Raymond, the stage-manager, <sup>8</sup> took <sup>9</sup> him to task, <sup>10</sup> saying: "Mr. Wewitzer, I wish <sup>11</sup> you would pay <sup>12</sup> a little attention. <sup>13</sup>" — "Well, <sup>14</sup> sir, <sup>15</sup>" answered Wewitzer, "so I am <sup>16</sup>; I'm paying as little attention as possible."

<sup>1</sup> Schauspieler. <sup>2</sup> Withold, m. <sup>3</sup>scherzen. <sup>4</sup> auf. <sup>5</sup> Probe, use def. art. <sup>6</sup> passen + auf, with acc.; 224, 2, (b). <sup>7</sup> Nolle. <sup>8</sup> Regissen. <sup>9</sup> stellen. <sup>10</sup> zur Nebe. <sup>11</sup> wollte. <sup>12</sup> geben. <sup>13</sup> Acht. <sup>14</sup> Nun. <sup>15</sup> Herr Regisseur. <sup>16</sup> das thue ich ja auch.

XXII. The younger Dumas once perpetrated 1 a cruel 2 joke 3 at the expense 4 of the Manzanares, 5 the rivulet 6 that

runs\_through <sup>7</sup> Madrid and is called a river by the grandiloquent <sup>8</sup> inhabitants of this city. When the famous dramatist <sup>9</sup> was <sup>10</sup> one day present <sup>10</sup> at a bull light, <sup>11</sup> either the heat, or some <sup>12</sup> revolting <sup>13</sup> incident <sup>14</sup> in the show, <sup>15</sup> overcame <sup>16</sup> him to\_such\_an\_extent <sup>17</sup> that he fainted. <sup>18</sup> On <sup>19</sup> somebody bringing him a glass of water, as he was recovering, <sup>20</sup> Dumas declined <sup>21</sup> it, saying <sup>22</sup> in <sup>23</sup> a faint <sup>24</sup> voice: "Go and pour it into the Manzanares; the river needs <sup>26</sup> it much more than I!"

1 machen. 2 bitter. 3 Wits. 4 auf Kosten. 5 masc. 6 Bach. 7 burchs laussen. 6 großsprecherisch. 9 Dramastifer. 10 beiwohnen + dat. 11 Stiers gesecht. 12 157. 13 empörend. 14 Borsall, m. 15 Schauspiel, n. 16 übers wälstigen. 17 bermaßen. 18 ohnmächtig werden. 19 277, Rem. 6. 20 sich erhosen. 21 abschnen. 22 284, 1 (a). 23 mit. 24 schwach. 25 nötig haben + acc.

**XXIII.** Frank Talfourd, who rejoiced\_in 1 a stature 2 of six feet and several inches, was playfully 3 challenged 4 at the Savage Club one evening to raise his foot as\_high\_as 5 the chandelier 6 that hung in the middle of the room. Lifting 7 his foot with\_rather\_too\_much\_vigour, 8 he knocked down one of the glass\_globes, 9 which fell to the ground and was\_smashed 10 to atoms. 11 Frank rang the bell instantly, and asked the responding 12 waiter for 13 the amount 14 of his bill. 15 "Pray, sir, what have you had?"—"Oh!" said Talfourd, pointing 16 up to 17 the chandelier, "only a glass of that."

<sup>1</sup> sich erfreuen + gen. <sup>2</sup> Höhe. <sup>3</sup> im Scherze. <sup>4</sup> auffordern. <sup>5</sup> bis zu. <sup>6</sup> Kronleuchter. <sup>7</sup> in die Höhe werfen, 284, 1 (b). <sup>8</sup> etwas zu fräftig. <sup>9</sup> Stastuppel, f. <sup>10</sup> zerschellen, neut. <sup>11</sup> "into a thousand pieces." <sup>12</sup> erscheinen. <sup>13</sup> nach. <sup>14</sup> Betrag, m. <sup>15</sup> Rechnung. <sup>16</sup> hirzeigen, 284, 1 (a). <sup>17</sup> auf.

**XXIV.** Douglas Jerrold once said to a young gentleman who burned with 1 an ardent\_desire 2 to see himself in\_print 3:

"Be advised by me, young man; don't take down the shutters until you have something in the window worth\_looking\_at.""

<sup>1</sup> vor + dat. <sup>2</sup> Begierde. <sup>3</sup> gebruckt. <sup>4</sup> use lassen, with reft. form, 114, (b). <sup>5</sup> ab. <sup>6</sup> sehenswert, 122, 11.

XXV. Alexandre Dumas had a well-won reputation in Paris society as a teller\_of\_anecdotes. At a large evening\_party, he was rather annoyed at the persistent fefforts of his hostess to induce\_him to exhibit his power in this accomplishment. At last, tired of refusing, he said: "Every one has his trade, madam. The gentleman who entered the room just before me is a distinguished artillery\_officer. Let him bring a cannon here and fire the I will tell one of my little stories."

\* wohlverdient. 2 Parifer, 122, 9. 3 sich ärgern + über with acc. 4 nicht wenig. 5 unablässig. 6 ihn dahin zu bringen. 7 zeigen. 8 Fertigkeit. 9 Fach, n. 10 subst. inf. 11 Handwerk. 12 gnädige Frau. 13 eintreten in. 14 ausgezeichnet. 15 abseuern.

XXVI. Some brainless 1 acquaintance 2 of Rivarol's was boasting 3 of 4 his having 5 mastered 6 four languages. "I congratulate 7 you," said Rivarol; "you'll have in\_future 8 four words for one idea.9"

<sup>1</sup> gebankenarm. <sup>2</sup> ber Bekannte, 122, 1, 2. <sup>3</sup> prahlen. <sup>4</sup> 277, Rem. 1. <sup>5</sup> baß clause. <sup>6</sup> sich völlig aneignen. <sup>7</sup> gratulieren + dat. <sup>8</sup> künftig. <sup>9</sup> Gebanke.

**XXVII.** On the day after the first representation <sup>1</sup> of <sup>4</sup> L'Ami des Femmes, <sup>2</sup> a comedy <sup>3</sup> by Alexandre Dumas (the second), the author's father sent him a letter, congratulating <sup>4</sup> him on <sup>5</sup> the success <sup>6</sup> of his piece, <sup>7</sup> and volunteering <sup>8</sup> his own collaboration <sup>9</sup> on <sup>10</sup> some future <sup>11</sup> one. <sup>12</sup> The letter

closed with a somewhat grandiloquent phrase <sup>18</sup>: "If a guarantee <sup>14</sup> is desired <sup>15</sup> for my ability, <sup>16</sup> I beg to refer <sup>17</sup> you to <sup>17</sup> 'Monte Christo' and 'The Three Musketeers.' <sup>18</sup>" The son replied: "Even if I did not know the great works you <sup>19</sup> mention, <sup>20</sup> I should gladly <sup>21</sup> accept your offer, <sup>22</sup> on account of the high opinion <sup>23</sup> my father evidently <sup>24</sup> entertains <sup>25</sup> of you."

1 Aufführung. 2 der Frauenfreund. 3 Lusthiel, n. 4 "in which he congratulated." 5 zu. 6 Erfolg, m. 7 Stück, n. 8 sich erbieten. 9 "to collaborate (mitarbeiten)." 10 an. 11 später. 12 122, 4, Note. 13 Phrase. 14 Bürgsschaft. 15 verlangen. 16 Fähigkeit. 17 hinweisen auf + acc. 18 Musketier. 19 96, 7. Obs. 20 erwähnen. 21 mit Freuden. 22 Anerdieten, n. 23 Meinung. 24 augenscheinlich. 23 "has."

**XXVIII.** Curran happened\_to\_tell <sup>1</sup> Sir <sup>2</sup> Thomas Turton that he could never speak in\_public <sup>8</sup> a quarter\_of\_an\_hour without moistening <sup>4</sup> his lips. <sup>5</sup> Sir Thomas declared that he had spoken *for* five hours in the House\_of\_Commons <sup>6</sup> on <sup>7</sup> the Nabob of Oude without feeling <sup>8</sup> the least <sup>9</sup> thirst. "That is very remarkable indeed, <sup>10</sup>" observed <sup>11</sup> Curran, "for everybody <sup>12</sup> agrees <sup>13</sup> that it <sup>14</sup> was the driest <sup>15</sup> speech of the session. <sup>16</sup>"

² erzählte gelegentlich. ² dem Sir. ³ öffentlich. 4 anfenchten; 224, 2, (b). 
⁵ Lippe, f. 6 Unterhaus. 7 über + acc. 8 verspüren. 9 gering. ¹o ja (immediately after the verb). ¹¹ bemerken. ¹² Alle (pl.). ¹³ darin übereinstimmen. ¹⁴ das. ¹⁵ trocken. ¹⁶ Session.

**XXIX.** A gentleman praising the personal charms of a very plain lady in Foote's presence, the latter said: "Why don't you lay claim to such a beauty?"—"What right have I to do so?" was the counter-question." Every right," replied Foote, "by the universal law of nations to as the first discoverer.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> 284, I (a). <sup>2</sup> personsich. <sup>3</sup> Reiz, m. <sup>4</sup> "anything but (241, 19, Note)

beautiful." <sup>5</sup>134. <sup>6</sup> mochen. <sup>9</sup> Anspruch, m. <sup>8</sup> auf + acc. <sup>9</sup> dazu. <sup>10</sup> Iaustete. <sup>11</sup> Gegenfrage. <sup>12</sup> nach. <sup>13</sup> allgemein. <sup>14</sup> Bölterrecht. <sup>15</sup> Entdecker.

XXX. One day the poet and banker¹ Rogers took² Thomas Moore and Sydney Smith home in his carriage from a breakfast, and insisted³ on showing them by\_the\_way⁴ Dryden's house in some obscure⁵ street. It was very wet weather; the house looked⁶ very much like⁶ other old houses, and, having¹ thin shoes on, they both strongly⁶ remonstrated⁰; but in\_vain. Rogers got\_out¹⁰ himself,¹¹ expecting¹² them¹³ to do likewise¹⁴; but Sydney Smith leaned¹⁵ laughing out of the window, and exclaimed: "Oh,¹⁶ now you see why Rogers doesn't mind¹¹ getting¹⁵ out: he has goloshes¹⁰ on. But, my dear Rogers, lend each of us a golosh; we will then each stand upon one leg and admire the house as long as you please.²⁰ ''

<sup>1</sup> Bauquier (pron. as in French). <sup>2</sup> bringen. <sup>3</sup> bestehen auf + acc., 277. 
<sup>4</sup> unterwegs. <sup>5</sup> obscur. <sup>6</sup> aussehen wie. <sup>7</sup> 284, I (b). <sup>8</sup> energisch. <sup>9</sup> protestieren. <sup>10</sup> ausseigen. <sup>11</sup> 42, 3, Rem. <sup>12</sup> "and expected." <sup>13</sup> 275. <sup>14</sup> das Gleiche. <sup>15</sup> sehnte. <sup>16</sup> Oho. <sup>17</sup> sich schen vor + dat. <sup>18</sup> 277, Rem. 3. <sup>19</sup> Galosche, f. <sup>20</sup> gesallen, impers., + dat.

XXXI. "When I was going from my house at Enfield to the India House one morning," says Charles Lamb, "I met Coleridge on his way to pay me a visit. He was brimful¹ of some² new idea, and—in\_spite\_of³ my telling him that my time was precious⁴—he drew me into the door of an unoccupied⁵ garden by the roadside,6 and¹ there—sheltered³ by an evergreen¹¹ hedge¹¹ from observation¹²—he took¹³ me by¹⁴ the button\_of\_my\_coat,¹⁵ closed¹⁶ his¹¹ eyes, and commenced an enthusiastic¹⁶ discourse,¹⁰ waving²⁰ at\_the\_same\_time²¹ his right hand gently,²² as²³ the musical²⁴ words flowed in an unbroken²⁵ stream²⁶ from his²¹ lips. I listened²⁵ entranced²ҫ; but the striking³⁰ of a church\_clock re-

called <sup>31</sup> me to a sense of my duty. <sup>32</sup> I saw it was of no use to attempt to break away <sup>53</sup>; so <sup>34</sup> I took\_advantage\_of <sup>55</sup> his absorption <sup>36</sup> in his subject, <sup>37</sup> quietly <sup>58</sup> cut off the button from my coat with my pen-knife <sup>29</sup> and decamped. <sup>40</sup> As I was passing <sup>41</sup> the same garden five hours afterwards on my way\_home, <sup>42</sup> I heard Coleridge's voice, looked\_in, <sup>43</sup> and — there he stood, with closed eyes, the button <sup>44</sup> in his fingers, gracefully waving his right hand, just as when I had left <sup>45</sup> him. He had never <sup>46</sup> missed <sup>47</sup> me."

¹ iibervoll' von. ² irgend ein. ³ trothem daß. ⁴ fostdar. ⁵ unbenutzt. ⁶ Landstraße. † Insert verb and object here. 8 schützel, 291, 5; 299. ⁵ durch. ¹º immergrün. ¹¹ Hece. ¹² Beobachtung. ¹³ sassen. ¹² 280 dachtung. ¹³ sassen. ¹² 280 dachtung. ¹³ sassen. ¹² 280 dachtung. ¹³ sassen. ¹² Nocknops. ¹² schützel. ¹² Nede. ²² hin und her bewegen, 131, B., Rem. ²¹ wobei. ²² aunmutig ('gracefully'). ²³ während. ²² wohstönend. ²⁵ unaushalt'sam. ²² serinnern an + acc. ³² Pflicht, f. ³³ "I saw (erkennen) the uselessness (Nutslossistist) of an attempt to break away (sich losreißen)." ³³ beshalb. ³⁵ benutzen (trans.). ³⁵ "it that he was absorbed (völlig versunsen in + acc.)." ³² Gegenstand, m. ³³ ruhig. ³³ Federmessen, n. ⁴⁰ Neißauß nehmen. ⁴¹ vorbeisommen an + dat. ⁴² Deinuweg. ⁴³ hineingusen. ⁴⁴ 255, 2. ⁴⁵ verlassen. ⁴⁶ gar nicht. ⁴² vermissen.

# Sir Thomas More.

"More seems to be made" and born for Friendship 4; of this virtue he is a sincere 5 follower 6 and very strict observer." He is not afraid 8 to be accused 9 of 10 having many friends, which, 11 according to Hesiod, is said 12 to be no great praise. 13 Every one may 14 become More's friend; he is not slow 15 in choosing, 16 he is kind 17 in cherishing, 18 and constant 19 in keeping 20 them. 21 If by accident 22 he becomes the friend of one 23 whose vices 21 he cannot correct, 25 he slackens 26 the reins 27 of friendship towards 28 him, diverting 20 it rather 30 by little and little, 31 than entirely 32 dissol-

ving 38 it. Those 34 persons whom he finds 35 to be sincere 36 and consonant 37 to his own 58 virtuous 39 disposition, 40 he is so charmed 41 with, 42 that he appears to place 43 his chief 44 worldly 45 pleasure in their conversation 46 and company. And although More is negligent 47 in 48 his own temporal 40 concerns, 50 yet 51 no one is more assiduous 52 in assisting 53 the suits 54 of his friends than he. What shall I say more? If any person is desirous 55 to have a perfect 56 model 57 of friendship, no one can afford 58 him a better than More. In his conversation 59 he shows so much affability 69 and sweetness of manner, 51 that no man can be of so austere a disposition, 62 but that 63 More's conversation must 64 make 56 him cheerful 65; and no matter 66 so unpleasing, 67 but that with his wit 68 he can take away 69 from it all disgust. 50 yr

1 beschreiben. 2 solgenbermaßen. 3 schaffen, 186; 299. 4 44, 1 (b). 5 aufrichtig (adv.). 6 "to be a follower of" = nachsolgen + dat. 7 "and very strictly observes (beobachten) it." 8 277; 291, 11. 9 "of the reproach (Borwurf) of having." 10 277, Rem, 1. 11 96, 5. 12 200, 5 (c). 13 Muhm, m. 14 "can." 15 langsam. 16 Wählen, 270; use def. art. 17 freundlich. 13 psegen. 19 unerschütterlich. 20 seschiehten. 21 "of his friends." 22 zufällig, 239, Rem. 2. 23 "a man (Mensch)." 24 Laster, n. 25 verbesser. 13 allmälig. 32 ganz. 33 lößen. 34 solsenben; 284, 1 (a). 30 lieber. 13 allmälig. 32 ganz. 33 lößen. 34 solsenben; 284, 1 (a). 30 lieber. 14 weichten + dat. 38 eigen. 39 tugenbhaßt. 40 Sinneßart. 41 bezaubern. 42 Use as prep. before "those persons." 43 stellen in + acc. 44 "greatest." 45 westlich. 46 Unterhaltung. 47 gleichgisstig. 48 gegen. 49 westlich. 50 Angelegenheit. 51 doch. 52 strebsam. 53 "in the support (Unterstützung) of." 54 Angelegenheit. 55 wünschen. 56 vollkommen. 57 Gbeal', n.; use compound word. 58 siefern. 59 Umgang, m. 60 Lentseitzisteit. 61 Liebenswürdigkeit. 62 so herbe gesinnt, 63 daß nicht. 64 solste. 65 ausseleiten. 66 Gegenstand, m. 67 widrig. 68 Wit, m. 69 entsernen von. 70 Alles Widerwärtige.

VOCABULARY.

# ABBREVIATIONS.

## I. German:

Anm. = Anmerkung, note.

M. T. = MItes Teftament, Old Testament.

a. a. D. = am angeführten Orte, in the place referred to.

bgl., bergl. = bergleichen, the like.

b. = any case of the definite article.

b. h. = bas heißt, } that is.

b. i. = bas ift, f that is.

b. J. = bieses Jahres, of this year.

b. M. = biefes Monats, of this month.

Dr. = Doftor, Doctor.

Em., Emr. = Guer, Gure, Gurer (in titles).

fl. = Gulben, florin.

Fr. = Frau, Mrs.

Frhr. = Freiherr, Baron.

Frl. = Fraulein, Miss. geb. = geboren, born.

geb. = gebbten, born.

geft. = geftorben, died. Gr. = Grofchen (a coin).

b., beil. = beilig, holy, saint.

Br., Brn. = Berr, herrn, Mr.

t. 3. = im Sahre, in the year.

Rap. = Rapitel, chapter.

Kr. = Kreuzer (a coin).

I. = lies, read.

M., Mt., M. = Mart (money).

Mffr. = Manuffript, manuscript.

Maj. = Majestät, Majesty.

uj. — Diujejiut, majesty.

N., N. N. = Name, name.

n. Chr. = nach Christo, after Christ.

N. S. = Nachschrift, postscript.

N. T. = Neues Testament, New Testament.

Pf., Pfb. = Pfunb. pound.

Pf. = Pfennig, penny.

pp. = und so weiter, and so forth.

Se. Er. = Seine, Seiner, his (in titles). S. = Seite, page.

St., Sft. = Santt, Saint.

f. = flehe, see.

f. o. = flehe oben, see above.

f. u. = fiebe unten,

f. w. u. = fiehe weiter unten, } see below.

T., Th., Thl. = Teil, Theil, part.

Thir. = Thaler (money).

u. a. m. = und andere mehr,

u. bgl. m. = und bergleichen mehr,

u. s. f. = und so fort,

u. f. w. = und fo weiter,

D. = Bers, verse.

v. Chr. = vor Christo, before Christ. vergl., vgl. = vergleiche, compare.

v. o. = von oben, from the top.

v. o. = von oben, from the top.
v. u. = von unten, from the bottom.

3. B. = jum Beispiel, for example.

II. Latin (in addition to others which are used in English also):

A. C. = Anno Christi, in the year of Our Lord (Christ).

a. c. = anni currentis, of the current year.

S. T. = Salvo Titulo, without prejudice to the title (used in addresses where the proper title of the person addressed is uncertain).

## VOCABULARY:

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

EXPLANATIONS. - 1. The numerals refer to the §.

- 2. All verbs are weak and regular, unless referred to a §; the conjugation of others will be found under the § indicated.
- 3. A indicates that the word in question is to be supplied; under masc, and neuter substantives, the terminations of the gen. sing. and nom. plur. are given; thus: Bagen (-3: -) means that the gen. sing. of Magen is Magens, and the nom. plur. the same as the nom, sing. The sign " indicates Umlaut in the pl., e. g.; Garten, (-3; ") means that the gen. sing. of this word is Gartens, and the nom. pl. Garten; Cohn (-es; "e) means: gen, sing. Sohnes, nom, pl. Sohne; under fem, substs. the pl. only is given.
  - 4. With adjectives, "er indicates Umlaut in the compar. and superl,
  - 4. Proper names are not given when they are the same in German as in English.

#### 21.

Ab. off.

M'benb. m. (-es: -e), evening : heute -, this evening. abends, in the evening.

aber, but; however.

abfahren (186; fein), to set off, depart, go; set sail.

abhalten (188), to hinder, deter.

abhelfen (159), to help, remedy; bem ift leicht ab= auhelfen, that is easily remedied.

abholen, to call for.

abfühlen (fich), to (get) cool. abreisen (jein), to set out,

start, depart. abichneiben (118), to cut off.

acht, eight; - Tage, a week. Adt, f., attention, care; fid) in - nehmen, to be care-

ful, take care.

abbieren, to add.

Utreffe, f. (-n), address.

Ml'gebra, f., algebra. allein', adj., alone, only; conj., but, only.

all(er. e. e3), all, (the) whole: alle Tage, every day; Mlles, n. sing., all, everything.

allerbings', adv., certainly, of course.

als, than, as; as a; when; als ob, as if.

also, thus, so; so then, accordingly.

alt ("er), old, ancient.

MIter, n. (-3), age, old age. Amerifaner, m. (-3, -) American.

an (dat. or acc., 65), on, at (227), to, towards, in, by, near, of; er ftarb am Ficber, he died of fever

(231, c). anbieten (131), to offer. ander, other : bie Unbern.

the others.

änbern, to alter, change; es läßt fich nicht -, it cannot be helped.

anberthalb, one and a half. Anfang, m. (-es; "e), commencement, beginning.

anfangen (188), to begin, commence.

anfangs, in the beginning, at first.

angenehm (dat.), pleasant, agreeable.

änastlich, frightened, timid, anxious.

anhalten (188), to continue. Anhöhe, f. (-n), hill.

antaufen (fid), to settle, buy up property.

antleiben (jid), to dress.

antonmen (167; fein), to arrive; in B. (dat.) -, to arrive at B.

anrichten, to cause. anschaffen, to provide, pro-

cure.

antreffen (167), to meet with, find.

Untwort, f. (-en), answer, reply.

antworten (dat.), to answer, reply.

anziehen (131), to draw on; put on (clothes).

Apfel, m. (-3; "), apple. Apfelbaum, m. (-3; "c),

apple-tree.

Mr'heit f (-en) work

Mr'beit, f. (-en), work; labour; task.

arbeiten, to work.

Arbeiter, m. (-3; --), workman.

Architett', m. (-en; -en). architect.

Mrie (trisyll.), f. (-n), air, song

arm ("er), poor

Arm, m. (-es; -e), arm.

artig, well behaved; — fein, to behave one's self properly (of children).

Arzt, m. (-e3; "e), physician, doctor. [rella. Uschenputtel, n. (-3), Cinde-

Ajt, m. (-e3; "e), bough, branch.

Aftrolog', m. (-en; -en), astrologer.

aud, also, too, even; wer —, whoever; wir find eš —, so are we.

auf, (dat. or acc.) on, upon (65); for, in (230); at (227, 3); to; open; — bret Woschen, for three weeks (fut., 229, b, 2); — baß, in order that; — bem Lande, in the country.

aufbleiben (120), to stay up, sit up, remain up.

Mufenthalt, m. (-es; -e), sojourn, stay; delay.

Aufgabe, f. (-n), task, lesson, exercise.

aufgeben (181), to give up. aufhängen, to hang up.

aufheben (131), to raise up, lift up, pick up; abolish, annul, cancel.

aufhören, to cease, stop. aufmachen, to open.

aufmertsam, attentive; einen auf etwas — machen, to call the attention of anyone to anything.

Mufmertfamteit, f. (-en), attention; kindness.

aufschieben (131), to put off, postpone, delay.

aufsețen, to put up; put on (of a hat). aufstehen (186; sein), to rise,

get up. aufsteigen (120; sein), to

rise, ascend, mount.
auftreten (181; fein), to ap-

pear.
aufziehen (131), to wind up
(of a time-piece).

Auge, n. (-3; -n), eye. Augenblick, m. (-e3; -e), moment, instant.

aus (dat., 46), out of; from, of: out.

Musbruck, m. (-es; "e), expression.

Mussing, m. (-es; "e), excursion, pleasure-trip; einen — machen, to take a pleasure-trip.

Ausgabe, f. (-n), edition. ausgezeichnet, excellent.

ausgleiten (118; fein), to slide, slip.

auslassen (188), to omit, leave out.

auslöschen, to put out, extinguish. [nach).
aussehen (181), to look (like, Aussicht, f. (-en), view, prospect.

aussprechen (167), to pronounce. Musstellung, f. (-en), exhibition.

außer (46), outside of; conj. except, besides.

außerhalb (gen.), outside of.

ausziehen, to distinguish. ausziehen (131; sein), to remove (intr.).

Agt, f. ("e) axe.

## B.

baden (186), to bake. Badftein, m. (-es; -e), brick.

Bahnhof, m. (-es; -e), brick. Bahnhof, m. (-es; \*\(\frac{u}{e}\)), railway-station.

balb (eher, am eheften), soon, shortly.

Band, n. (-es; "er), ribbon; m. (-es; "e), volume.

Bant, f. (-en), bank; ("e), bench.

bar, (paid in) cash, ready (of money).

Bär, m. (-en; -en), bear. Barbier, m. (-es; -e), bar-

ber.

bauen, to build.

Bauer, m. (-n or -3; -n),
peasant, countryman.

Baum, m. (-e3; "e), tree. Bauplaţ, m. (-e3; "e), site.

bebauern, to pity; regret; (id) bebaure, I am sorry. bebenken (99, 2), to consider.

bedienen, to serve, wait upon; fich —, to help one's self.

Bebingung, f. (-en), condition.

beeilen (fich), to hasten, hurry. Beere, f. (-en), berry.

Befchl, m. (-es; -e), command, order; zu -, at

(your) service, what is (your) pleasure? befehlen (167), to command.

besseißen (sid), 118), to apply one's self befriebigen, to satisfy, con-

begegnen, (dat.; fein), to meet.

begießen (123), to water (flowers, etc.).

beginnen (158), to begin. begleiten, to accompany.

Begleitung, f. (-en), accompaniment.

beanugen (fich - mit), to be satisfied, be contented (with).

Begriff, m. (-es; -e), idea, notion; im - fein, to be upon the point of, be about (to).

behaupten, to assert, affirm : to maintain.

bei (46), by, at, about; with: - Tifche, at table ; - meis nem Ontel, at my uncle's; - mir, with me, at my house, about me; - fchos nem Better, in fine weather.

beibe, both, two. beibes, n. sing., both. Beifall, m. (-es), applause. beinahe, almost, nearly. beißen (118), to bite.

beifteben (186; dat.), to assist, aid.

Befanntichaft, f. (-en), acquaintance.

betennen (99), to acknowledge; confess.

befommen (167), to obtain, get, receive, have.

bemerten, to perceive, ob-

bemüben (fich), to take pains.

bequem', convenient, comfortable, commodious.

Berg, m. (-es; -e), mountain, hill.

bergen (159), to hide.

berften (159), to burst.

berühmt, famous, celebrated, besauttigen, to occupy, employ : befchäftigt, busy, employed.

befinnen (fich : 158), to deliberate, reflect.

befonbers, particularly, especially.

beforgen, to attend to. besprechen (167), to discuss. beffer (see gut), better.

best, (superl, of aut, which see), best : jum Beften, for the benefit of; am beften, best (of all).

bestehen (186), to undergo, pass (an examination); -(aus), to consist (of); -(auf + acc.), to insist (upon).

besteigen (120), to ascend. bestellen, to order. beftrafen, to punish.

bestreiten (118), to defray.

Befuch, m. (-es; -e), visit, visitors; - haben, to have visitors; -e machen, make calls; bei Jemanb auf fein, to be on a visit at any one's.

befuchen, to visit: bie Uni= perfität -, to study at the university.

beten, to pray, say prayers. betragen (186), to amount to. Betragen, n. (-3), behaviour. conduct.

betreffen (167), to concern; mas mich betrifft, as for me.

betrügen (131), to cheat, de-

Bettler, m. (-3; -), beggar. bewegen (131), to induce; to move.

bemeisen (120), to prove, demonstrate.

bewundern, to admire. bezahlen, to pay (acc. of thing; dat, of person and acc. of thing when both are present, otherwise acc. of person).

Bezahlung, f.(-en), payment. Bioliothet', f. (-en), library. biegen (131), to bend. Bier, n. (-e3; -e), beer, ale.

bieten (131), to offer. Bilb, n. (-es; -er), picture.

portrait. Bilbung, f. (-en), education.

Billet' (pron. bill-vett), n. (-tes; -te), ticket.

billig, cheap. binben (144), to bind, tie, fasten.

binnen (dat.), within.

bis (34), till, until, up to, as far as; amei - brei, two or three; - 311 (dat.), nach (dat.), as far as.

Bischof, m. (-e3, "e), bishop. bitten (181; for, um), to ask, beg; (id) bitte, if you please, please (lit., I beg,

pray); wenn ich - barf, if you please (lit., if I may ask).

blasen (188), to blow.

Blatt, n. (-es; "er), leaf. blau, blue.

bleiben (120; fein), to remain.

Bleiftift, n. (-es; -e), leadpencil.

blinb, blind.

Blit, m. (-e3; -e), lightning.

bligen, (impers.), to lighten. Blume, f. (-en), flower.

Blumentohl, m. (-3), cauliflower.

bombardieren, to bombard. Boot, n. (-es; Böte, or -e), boat.

böfe, bad, evil; cross, angry. Bofemicht, m. (-es; -er). villain.

Bote, m. (-n: -n), messenger. braten (188), to roast. brauchen (gen. or acc.), to require, want, need, use, make use of. braun, brown. brechen (167), to break. breit, broad, wide.

brennen (99), to burn, be burning.

Brief, m. (-es: -e), letter. epistle.

bringen (99, 2), to bring,

Brot, n. (-es; -e), bread; loaf.

Brüde, f. (-n), bridge. Bruber, m. (-\$; "), brother.

Buch, n. (-es: "er), book. Bücherfreund, m. (-es; -e), lover of books.

Buchhändler, m. (-3: -). book-seller.

Buchhandlung, f.(-en), bookshop.

Bitreau (pron. bu-ro'), n. (-3; -3), (business) office. Bürgermeifter, m. (-5; -), mayor.

Butter, f., butter.

#### C.

Chofolabe, f., chocolate. Chrift, m. (-en ; -en), Christian. Coufine, f. (-n), cousin.

# ba, there, in that place;

here; conj., as, when, because, since. Dad, n. (-es; "er), roof. bafür, for that, for it, for them (of things). baher', thence, hence, there-

bamit, therewith, with it, with that.

Dampferlinie, f. (-n), steam- | beutich, German; auf Deutich, ship-line.

Dampfichiff, n. (-es; -e), steam-boat, steamer. bantbar, thankful, grateful.

Dantbarteit, f., thankfulness.

banten (dat.), to thank; ich bante (Ihnen), (no) thank you.

bann, then.

baran, thereon.

barauf, thereon, on it, on them (of things), etc. barin, therein, in that, in it.

barüber, over that, over it: about it, at it.

barum, therefore.

bas, n. of ber, which see. bajelbit, there, in that place. baß, that; (auf) -, in order that.

bavon, thereof, of it. bein, beine, bein, thy. benten (99; gen. or general-

ly an + acc.), to think; fid) -, to imagine.

benn, for, conj.

ber, bie, bas, def. art., the (4; 44); rel. pr., who, which, that (92, 93, 95); dem. pr., the one, he, she, it, that (133; 140-143).

berjenige, biejenige, basje= nige (135; 140), that, this, the one; he, she, it.

berfelbe, biefelbe, basfelbe (136; 143), adj. and pr., the same; he, she, it, etc. bes'halb, for this or that reason, therefore, on that ac-

count. besto, (all) the, so much the;

- beffer, so much the better; je mehr - beffer, the more, the better.

beswegen, on that account. beutlich, clear, distinct; clearly, distinctly.

im Deutschen, in German. Deutsch'land, n. (-3), Ger-

many. Diamant', m. (-3 or -en:

-en), diamond. bie, f. of ber, which see.

Dieb. m. (-es: -e), thief. Diener, m. (-3: -), servant.

Dienstag, m. (-es; -e), Tues-

biefer, biefe, biefes (bies). (6; 134, 140, 143), this, that: the latter.

bies'feits, adv., on this side. bingen (App. L.), to hire.

bivibieren, to divide. both, yet, however, but, after

all, pray, well, just. Dol'tor, m. (-3: Dolto'ren), doctor.

Donner, m. (-3; -), thunder.

bonnern, to thunder.

Donnerstag, m. (-es; -e), Thursday.

Dorf, (-es; "er), village. bort, there, yonder, in that place.

brci, three.

breifach, three-fold, triple, treble.

breimal, three times, thrice. breifig, thirty.

breschen (159), to thresh, thrash.

bringen (144), to press. brittehalb, two and a half. brüben, over there, over the

way. Drud, m. (-es), printing,

print.

bu, thou, you. bünn, thin.

burd) (34), through; by.

burthaus', absolutely, entirely; - nicht, by no means, not at all.

burdsud'en, to search through.

bürfen (196-202; permission), to dare; be permitted, allowed; barfich? may

Durst, m. (-es), thirst; - haben, to be thirsty.

Dug'enb, n. (-es; -e), dozen.

#### Œ.

eben, adv., even, just; exactly; fo-, just now.

Ede, f. (-n), corner. E'belstein, m. (-cs; -e), pre-

cious stone, jewel.

ehe, adv. and conj., ere, before.

ehren, to honour, esteem.

ehrlich, honest; — währt am längsten, honesty is the best policy.

Ei, n. (-es; -er), egg.

Eigentum, (-es; "er), property, possession, estate.

Gile, f. haste, hurry; was haft bu für —? what is your hurry?

eilen, to hasten, hurry.

eilig, hasty, speedy; es haben, to be in a hurry, be in haste.

ein, eine, ein (9), a, an; one; die Einen, some.

einanber, one another, each other.

Einbanb, m. (-e3; "e), binding.

einbinden (144), to bind (a book).

einbringen (144; fein), to enter by force; rush in; press in, penetrate.

einer, eine, ein(e)3 (150), pron., one (equivalent of man).

einfältig, simple, silly.

Einfluß, m. (-e3, "e), influence.

einige, some, several, a few. einlaben (186), to invite. einmal, once.

Ginmaleins, n. (indecl.), multiplication-table.

einpaden, to pack up.

einrechnen, to reckon in; comprise in account. einschlagen (186), to strike

(of lightning).

einschreiben (120), to book, inscribe, check (luggage). einsesen (181), to perceive, comprehend.

einseitig, one-sided.

einsteigen (120; fein), to mount into, get into (carriage, etc.).

Gin'tritt@ga'men, n.(-\$; —), entrance-examination, matriculation-examination.

Sinwohner, m. (-3; -), inhabitant.

Eis, n. (-es), ice; ice-cream. Eisen, n. (-s), iron. Eisenbahn, f. (-en), railway.

elegant', elegant.

Eltern (no sing.), parents. empfehlen (167; dat. of pers.),

to recommend.
empfinben (144), to feel, experience.

enblid, at last, finally, at length.
english, adi., English; out

englisch, adj., English; auf Englisch, in Englisch.

Ente, f. (-n), duck; Entens braten, m. (-s; -), roast duck.

entge'gengehen (188; fein; dat.), to go to meet.

entge'genkommen (167; sein; dat.), to come to meet. entschließen (sid); 123), to resolve, decide.

entschuldigen, to excuse. entweber, either; entweber

entweber, either; entwebe

entwerfen (159), to draw (a plan, etc.); design.

entziidt, delighted, charmed. cr, he.

Erbse, f. (-n), pea.

Erbbeben, n. (-3; -), earthquake.

Erbbeere, f. (-n), strawberry. Erbe, f., earth, ground. erfinden (144), to invent.

Erfinbung, f. (-en), invention.

Erfolg, m. (-e3; -e), success. erfrieren (131; fein), to freeze, be frozen.

ergreifen (118), to seize. erhalten (188), to receive,

erinnern (fich; gen. of thing remembered), to remember.

erfälten (sich), to catch cold. Erfältung, f. (-en), cold.

erfennen (99), to recognize. erflären, to explain.

erfundigen (fich), to inquire; fich bei jemand nach etwas —, to inquire of anyone about anything.

erlauben (dat. of pers.), to permit, allow.

erleben, to experience.

come.

ernennen (99), to nominate, appoint; zum Gouverneur —, to appoint (as) governor. erobern, to conquer, over-

erschreden (167; sein), to be frightened.

erft, first; fürß erfte, for the present; ber erfte befte, the first which comes to hand; adv., first, only, not before, not till.

erftens, first, in the first place. ertrinten (144), to drown, be drowned.

erwählen (zu), to elect (as). erwarten, to expect, wait for.

ermünschen, to wish for, de-

cranhlen, to relate, narrate, tell.

es (38, 39), it; they; there; er ist —, it is he; es sind Männer, they are men.

effen (181), to eat; zu Mittag
—, to dine.

etwa, nearly, about.

Etwas, something, anything.

ener, eure, euer, your. Europa, n. (-5), Europe. Era'men, m. (-5; —), examination.

Exemplar', n. (-3; -e), copy (of a work, etc.).

#### ₩.

Rabril', f. (-en), factory. Naben, m. (-3; 1), thread. fahren (186; fein), to go, drive, ride (in a conveyance); travel; sail. Kahrt, f. (-en), journey, voyage: ride, drive. Fall, m. (-es; "e), fall; case, event: in bem Falle, in that case. fallen (188; fein), to fall. falls, in case. Kami'lie, f. (-n), family. fangen (188), to catch. fast, almost, nearly; - nie, hardly ever. Rebruar, m. (-3), February. fecten (124), to fight, fence. Reber, f. (-n), feather; pen; spring. feiern, to celebrate. Reiertag, m. (-es; -e), holi-Reind, m. (-es; -e), enemy. Relb, n. (-es; -er), field. Rels(en), m.(-ens; -en), rock.

Fenfter, n. (-3; -), window.

Kerien, pl. (no sing.), vaca-

tion, holidays.

Ferne, f. (-n), distance; in ber —, at a distance.

fertig, ready, done; — fein (mit), to have finished (with).

Festlichkeit, f. (-en), festivity. Fener, n. (-&; —), fire. Kieber, n. (-&; —), fever.

finben (144), to find; meet with; think, be of opinion; man finbet fid nicht leicht, people do not find each

other easily. Fifch, m. (-es; -e), fish. Flasche, f. (-n), bottle. slechten (124), to weave. Fleisch, n. (-es), meat.

fleißig, diligent; industrious;
diligently, etc.

fliegen (131; fein), to fly. fließen (131), flee. fließen (123), flow. Slöte, f. (-1), flute. Slügel, m. (-5; --), wing. Tuß, m. (-65; -e), river. folgen (fein; dat.), to follow.

Forelle, f. (-n), trout. Format', n. (-e3; -e), size (of a book).

fort, forth; away, gone; mir müffen —, we must be off. fortgehen (188; fein), to go away.

fortwährenb, perpetual, continual, incessant.

fragen (186), to ask questions; Fragen, n. (-3), questioning, asking questions (action of).

Frankreich, n. (-3), France. französsisch, French.

Frau, f. (-en), woman, wife, lady, madam, mistress, Mrs.

Fräulein, n. (-8; --), young lady, Miss; mein --, Miss. freigebig, liberal, generous. freilassen (188), to set free, liberate.

freilich, to be sure, indeed, of course.

Freitag, m. (-es; -e), Friday. fremb, strange; foreign. Frembe, (adj. subst.) m. or f., stranger, foreigner.

Frembling, m. (-e3; -e), stranger.

fressen (181), to eat (said of beasts).

Freude, f. (-11), joy, delight. freuen (fich; at, über + acc.), to rejoice, be glad; es freut mich, I am glad.

Freund, m. (-e3; -e), friend; ich bin ein — von, I like. Freundin, f. (-nen), friend (female).

freundlich, friendly, kind. Freundschaft, f. (-en), friendship.

Friede(n), m. (-ns), peace. Friedrich, m.(-s), Frederick; Friedrichstraße, Frederickstreet.

frieren (131), to freeze; feel cold; es friert mid, I feel cold; mid, friert, I am cold.

frifth, fresh.

Frig, m. (-ens), Fred, Freddy.

froh, joyful, glad; frohen Mutes, cheerfully. fröhlich, joyous, merry. Frucht, f. ("e), fruit.

früh, early; früher, earlier; formerly. Frühling, m. (-es: -e).

Frühling, m. (-e3; -e), spring. früh'ftüden, to breakfast.

Fuchs, m. (-es; "e), fox. führen, to lead; go, lie. füllen, to fill.

fünf, five.

fünftehalb, four and a half. fünfzig, funfzig, fifty. Funke(n), m. (-ns; -n),

spark.

für (34), for.

Furcht (por), f. fear (of).

fürchten, to fear; sich — vor (+ dat.), to fear, be afraid of.

бив, т. (-ев; "е), foot.

#### G.

gä(h)ren (App. L.), ferment.
ganz, adj., whole, entire;
the whole of; adv., quite,
wholly, altogether, entirely.

gar, even; — nicht, not at all; — nichts, nothing at all.

Garten, m. (-3; <sup>11</sup>), garden. Gärtner, m. (-3; —), gardener.

Gaft, m. (-es; #e), guest. Gafthaus, n. (-es; #er), inn,

hotel. gebaren (167), to bear, bring

forth.

geben (181), to give; v. impers., es giebt, there is, there are.

Sebot', n. (-es; -e), commandment.

Geburts'tag, m. (-es; -e), birthday; zum —, as a birthday-present.

Gebante, m. (-ns; -n), thought.

gebeihen (120), to thrive.

gebenien (99), to intend.

Gebicht, n. (-e3; -e), poem. gebrängt, packed, com-

pressed, crowded. Gebulb, f., patience.

gefährlich, dangerous; dangerously.

gefallen (188), to please, suit; wie gefällt es Ihnen in Boston? how do you like Boston?

gefällig, pleasing, complaisant, kind; ift bem herrn etwas —? will the gentleman be helped to anything? gefälligst, if you please.

Gefühl, n. (-es; -e), feeling; emotion.

gegen (34), towards, against, about; for.

gehen (188; fein), to go; walk; wie geht es 3hnen? how do you do? how are you?

gehören (dat.), to belong (to). Geige, f. (-11), violin; Geigenspiel, n. (-2), violinplaying.

gelb, yellow.

Gelb, n. (-e3; -er), money. Gelbbeutel, m. (-5; -), purse.

gelegen, convenient; opportune; nichts fönnte mir gelegener sein, nothing could suit me better.

gelingen (144; fein), to succeed; es gelingt mir, I succeed.

gelten (159), to be worth.

Gemälbe, n. (-3; -), painting, picture.

Semüfe, n. (-5; —), vegetables.

genau, precise, exact; precisely, exactly, carefully, minutely.

Seneral', m. (-es; -e), general.

genesen (181; sein), to get well, recover (from an illness).

genießen (123; fein), to enjoy; eat or drink.

genug, enough.

Geometrie', f., geometry.

Gepäd, n. (-es), luggage, baggage.

gerabe, adj., straight; adv., exactly, just.

Geräusch, n. (-es; -e), noise. gering, small, trisling, mean; nicht im —sten, not in the least. gern (lieber. am liebsten), with pleasure, willingly, gladly; etmoå — haben, to like a thing; — lernen, to like to learn, study; bað ist — möglið, that is very probable.

Gerfte, f. barley.

gefalzen, falzen, salt.

Gesang, m. (-e3), singing. Geschäft, n. (-e3; -e), busipess: mercantile establish-

ment; shop, store. Geschäftsangelegenheit, f.

(-en), business matter, business engagement.

pen.

Geschent, n. (-es; -e), gift, present.

Geschichte, f. (-n), history, story.

Seschmad, m. (-e3), taste. geschult, p.p., schulen, trained, cultivated.

Geschwister, pl., brothers and sisters.

Sefellichaft, f. (-en), company, party.

Sesicht, n. (-e3; -er and -e), face, countenance; Gesichs ter, faces; Gesichte, visions.

Gefpiele, m. (-n; -n), playmate.

geftern, yesterday.

Gefundheit, f. health.

gewinnen (158), to win, gain. gewiß (gen.), certain (of); certainly, surely.

gemissenhaft, conscientious.

Gewitter, n. (-3; --), thunder-storm, storm.

Gewohnheit, f. (-en), custom, habit; bie — haben, to be accustomed to.

gewöhnlich, usual custome ary; generally, usually

gießen (123), to pour.

glängen, to shine, glitter. alangenb. brilliant. Glas, n. (-es; "er), glass. glatt, smooth, slippery. glauben (dat. of pers.), to believe: think. gleich, at once, at the same time, immediately, directly; fo-, immediately, etc. aleichen (118), to be like, resemble. gleiten (118), to glide, slip. glimmen (123), to glimmer. Glüd, n. (-es), (good) fortune, good luck; success; - wünschen, to congratulate, wish success to. glüdlich, happy, fortunate: successfully. Gold, n. (-es), gold. golben, of gold, golden. Couverneur', m. (-es; -e). governor. graben (186), to dig. Grab, m. (-es; -e), degree. Graf, m. (-en; -en), count, Gräfin, f. (-nen), countess. Gramma'tit, f. (-en), gram-Gras, n. (-es; "er), grass. gratulieren (dat.), to congratulate. greifen (118), to grasp. Griechenland, n. (-3), Greece. groß ("er, sup. größt), great, large, big, tall. grün, green. aranblich, thoroughly. grüßen, to greet, salute, bow to; Ihr Freund läßt Sie -, your friend wishes to be remembered to you. Guitarre, f. (-n), guitar. qut, adi., good; kind; adv., well ; fo - fein unb, to be so kind as to. Gutes, n., good (thing).

Saar, n. (-es: -e), hair. haben (24), to have; Recht -, to be (in the) right; Unrecht -, to be (in the) wrong: mas - Sie? what is the matter with you? por-, to intend, propose, purpose. Safen, m. (-3; "), port, harbour, haven. Safer, m. (-8), oats. Sagelforn, n. (-es; "er), hail-stone. hazeln, to hail. half; - brei, half past two. Sälfte, f. (-n), half. halten (188), to hold, think; - für, consider; ich halte viel von ibm. I think highly of him (esteem, value him highly). Sand, f. ("e), hand. Banbler, m. (-6; -), dealer, shop-keeper. Sanbiduh, m. (-es; -e), glove. hangen (188), to hang, be suspended; bas Bilb hängt, the picture is hanging. hängen, to hang, suspend. Sarfe, f. (-n), harp; Sar= fen=Begleitung, accompaniment on the harp. hart ("er), hard. Safe, m. (-11; -11), hare. haffen, to hate. hauen (188), to hew. hauptstatt, f. ("e), capital. Saus, n. (-es; "er), house; ju Saufe, at home; nach Saufe, home. heben (131), to raise, lift. Seer, n. (-es; -e), army. heftig, violent, heavy; heavily (of rain). Seibe, m. (-n; -n), heathen. Beinrich, m. (-6), Henry.

M., my name is A. Selb, m. (-en; -en), hero. helfen (159; dat.), to help. hell, bright; brightly. herabsteigen (120; fein), to descend. herauskommen (167; fein), to come out. Berbit, m. (-es; -e), autumn. Berbe, f. (-11), flock, herd. hereinkommen (167; fein), to come in. herr, m. (-n; -en), master; gentleman : Lord : Mr. ; Ihr - Bater, your fa-Serz, n. (-ens; -en), heart. heralid, heartily, exceedingly. Seu, n. (-es), hay. heute, to-day; - Abenh, this evening; - Morgen, this morning; - fiber vierzehn Tage, this day fortnight; heutzutage, now-a-days. hier, here; - zu Lande, in this country. hiermit, herewith, with this. Simmel, m. (-\$; -), heaven, hinaufgeben (188; fein), to go up. hinaussehen (181), to look out (at the window, gum Fenfter). hincingeben (183; fein), to go in. hinachen (188; fein), to go (hence); go anywhere. hinter (65), behind. Site, f. heat.

beifer, hoarse.

beißen (188), to be called, be

named; mean, signify; wie beift bas auf Deutid?

how do you say that in German? wie heifit? what

is the name of? ich heiße

beiß, hot.

both (loses c in inflection; compar. höher, sup. höchft), high. hoffen, to hope. hof'fentlich, adv., (it is) to be hoped, I hope. Soffnung, f. (-en), hope. höher, compar. of hoch, which see. holen, (to go and) bring, fetch; get; - laffen, to send for. Solz, n. (-es), wood. boren, to hear: listen: fagen -, to hear say, hear. hübich, pretty. Suhn, n. (-es; "er), fowl; chicken. Sund, m. (-es; -e), dog. bunbert, hundred. Sunbert, n. (-3; -e), hundred. Sunger, m. (-3), hunger; ich habe -, I am hungry. hungrig, hungry. But, m. (-es; "e), hat. hüten, to guard, keep. 3. ich, I. ihr, pers. pron., to her, her (dat. sing.); you (nom. pl.). ihr, ihre, ihr, poss. adj., her; its; their. 3hr, 3hre, 3hr, poss. adj .. your. ihrer, ihre, ihres, poss. pron., thre (ber, hers; its; bie, bas). theirs. ihrige (ber, bie, bas), Ihrer, Ihre, Ihres, poss.

Ihre (ber, bie,

Ihrine (ber, bie,

bas).

bas).

pron ..

yours.

Shretwillen, for your sake. im, contr. for in bem. immer, always; at all times; not) —, still. in (65; dat. or acc.), in, at; into, to.

indem', while, whilst. innerhald (gen.), on the inside, within.

Inftrument', n. (-e3; -e), (musical) instrument. interessing. irgenb einer, — jemanb, any one.

Irland, n. (-3), Ireland. Italien, n. (-3), Italy.

### 3.

Na, yes, indeed, certainly, you know; did I (etc.) not; jas wohl, yes indeed, yes to be sure, yes certainly. jagen, to hunt, chase, pursue. Sagen, n. (-8), hunting (act of).
Näger, m. (-8; —), hunter,

Jager, m. (-5; —), nunter, huntsman. Jahr, n. (-e3; -e), year. Ja'tob, m. (-3), James.

jamohl, see ja.
je, ever (at any time); the (before comparative degree,

126, 4); — zwei, two at a time. jebenfalls, certainly, at all events.

jeber, jebe, jebes, every, each, every one, any.

jebermann, everyone, everybody.

jemals, ever, at any time. jemans, somebody, some one.

any body, any one. jener, jene, jenes, that, that one, that person; yonder;

the former.
jenseits, on the other side,
beyond.
jest, now, at present.

Sohann', m. (-5), John. 3u'qenb, f., youth. 3u'qenb, f., youth. 3u'li, m. (-6), July. jung ("er), young. 3unge, m. (-n; -n), boy, lad. 3üngling, m. (-e5; -e), young man, youth. 3u'ni, m. (-5), June.

#### R

Raffee, m. (-3), coffee. Raijer, m. (-3; —), emperor. Ralbstotelette, f. (-n), vealcutlet. talt ("er), cold.

Ramin', n. (-e3; -e), fireplace.

Rarbinal', m. (-5; -e), cardinal. Rarl, m. (-5), Charles.

Rarte, f. (-n), card. Rartoffel, f. (-n), potato. Raje, m. (-\$; —), cheese. faufen, to buy. faunn, hardly, scarcely. teifen (App. L.), to chide.

tein, teine, tein, no, not a, not any.

feiner, teine, tein(e)3, pron., nobody, not anybody, no one. none.

Rellner, m? (-3; —), waiter. tennen (99), to know, be acquainted with.

Renntnis, f. (-e), knowledge; pl. acquirements, attainments.

Kind, n. (-es; -er), child. Kirche, f. (-n), church. flar, clear.

Rlasse, f. (-n), class.

Klas'fiter, m. (-3; —), classic writer, classic. Klavier', n. (-3; -e), piano.

Rleib, n. (-65; -er), prano.
Rleib, n. (-65; -er), dress;
pl. clothes.

flein, small, little. flieben (App. L.), to cleave. flimmen (123), to climb.

etc.). Hingen (144), to sound. Anabe, m. (-n: -n), bov. Anall, m. (-es; -e), loud quick sound: clap, thunder-clap. Rnecht, m. (-cs; -e), (farm) servant, man-of-all-work. Ineifen (118), to pinch. Ineipen (App. L.), to pinch. Rnochen, m. (-3; -), bone. Rod, m. (-es; "e), cook. Romet', m. (-en; -en), tommen (167; fein), to come; arrive; - laffen, to send for: wie fommt bas? how is that? Rönig, m. (-(e)s; -e), king. Rönigin, f. (-nen), queen. Rönigstraße, f. King-street. fonnen (196-202; ability. etc.), to be able, can; know, be versed in, know Rongert', n. (-es; -e), concert Ropf, m. (-es; "e), head. Rorb, m. (-es; "e), basket. Roften, pl., expenses. leften (acc. of pers. and of thing), to cost. frant ("er), ill; sick; Rrante, (adj. subst.), sick person, patient. Rrantheit, f. (-en), disease, illness. Rrieg, m. (-es; -e), war. friechen (123), to creep. Kri'titer, m. (-3; --), critic. Rüche, f. (-n), kitchen. Ruh, f. ("e), cow. Runft, f. ("e), art. Riinftler, m. (-3; -), artist. furg ("er), short.

fürglich, not long ago, lately, | leben, to live; be alive. flingeln, to ring (said of recently. Leben, n. (-3: -), life. small bells); es flingelt, Ruticher, m. (-3: -), coach-Lebewohl, n. (-5), farewell, there is a ring (at the door, man, driver. adieu. Leber, n. (-3; -), leather. legen, to lay, put, place, set. Iachen (gen, or über + acc.). Lehrer, m. (-B; --), teacher. to laugh (at). master. Lachs, m. (-cs; -e), salmon leicht, light, easy; easily, laben (186), to load; invite. readily. Laben, m (-3; — and ±), window-shutter (pl. —); Icib (only used as bred, with fein and thun), sorry, shop, store (41. "). grieved; es ift, es thut mir Land, n. (-es; er and -e), -, I am sorry. land, country untry (opleiben (118), to suffer; an posed to town): auf bem etwas -, to suffer from -e, in the country; aufs anything. - gehen, to go into the leiber, alas! unfortunately! country; 311 -e, by land: leihen (120), to lend. hier zu -e, in this country. Leiften, m. (-3; -), (shoe-Landichaft, f. (-en), landmaker's) last. scape. leisten, to accomplish. lang ("er), long. Lettion', f. (-en), lesson. Iange, adv. long, a long time Iernen, to learn, study. or while, for a long time; Iefen (181), to read. fo -, so long as: er ift -Lefen, n. (-3), (act of) readnicht bier gemesen, he has ing. not been here for a long lett, last, final. time; er ift nicht - hier Leute, pl. (no sing.), people. aemesen, he has not been persons. here long. Licht, n. (-es: -er and -e), Iangjam, slow; slowly. light. längft, long ago, long since. lieb, dear. Liebe, f. love, affection; -Lärm, m. (-es), noise. laffen (188; 200, 7), to let, au, love of. allow; leave; have (a thing lieben, to love. done); fagen -, to send lieber (comp. of gern); conj., word; tommen -, to send rather; ich gehe -, I prefer for: ich laffe bas Buch to walk. Lieb, n. (-e3; -er), song. einbinden, I am having the book bound: es läßt liegen (181; fein, haben), to lie; be; be situated. fich nicht leugnen, it canlint, left. not be denicd. linte, to (or on) the left. Lafter, n. (-3; -), vice. Latein, n. (-3), Latin. loben, to praise. Lauf, m. (-es;  $\mu$ e), course. Loch, n. (-e3; "er), hole. laufen (188; fein), to run. Löffel, m. (-3; -), spoon. Lohengrin, m. (-3), name of läuten, to ring (of large bells), an opera by Wagner. toll.

los, loose, slack; mas ift —? what is the matter?

lösen, to free, redeem; ein Billet —, buy a ticket.

Losspringen (144; sein; auf + acc.), to spring upon, leap upon.

Louise, f. (-ns), Louisa.

Löwe, m. (-n; -n), lion.

Lubwig, m. (-5), Louis. Luft, f. ("e), air, atmosphere.

Iügen (131), to lie, utter a falsehood.
Lügner, m. (-\$; —), liar.

luftig, merry; merrily; fid)
über einen — machen, to
make sport of one.

#### m.

maden, to make; arrange; cause, give; be (in arithm calculations); id made mir nidits baraus, I care nothing for it; eine Seereise—, to take a voyage; einen Spajiergang—, to take a walk.

Mäbchen, n. (-3; —), girl. Magb, f. (<sup>4</sup>e), maid, maid-

servant.

Mai, m. (-e8 or -en), May.

Mai, n. (-e8; -e), time (occasion); jum letten —, for the last time.

malen, to paint.

Maler, m. (-6; —), painter. Malerei', f. (art of) painting.

man, pron., one, we, you, they, people; — jagt, they say, people say, it is said.

mancher, manche, manches, adj. and pron., many a.

Mangel, m. (-3), want. Mann, m. (-e3; "er), man.

Mantel, m. (-3; "), cloak, mantle.

Margarete, f. (-ns), Margaret.

Marie, f. (-ns), Mary.

Mart, f. (-), mark (a coin = 100 Pfennig or about 25 cents).

Markt, m. (-cs; "e), market. marfdieren (fein or haben), to march.

März, m. (-e8), March. Masern, pl., measles. Mathematit, f., mathematics. Matrose. m. (-n: -n) sailor.

Mathematit, f., mathematics. Matrofe, m. (-11; -11), sailor. Maus, f. ("c), mouse. Mehl, n. (-es), four.

mehr, more; hight -, no

longer, no now. mehrere, samal; mehreres,

several things, a good deal. mehrmals, several times. meiben (120), to avoid.

Meile, f. (-n), mile (German), league.

mein, meine, mein, my. meine (ber, bie, bas), mine. meinen, to think, be of opinion, suppose, mean; bas

follte id) —, I should think so (emphatic).

meinetwegen, (um) meinet= willen, for my sake; for all I care.

meinige (ber, bie, bas), mine. Meinung, f. (-en), opinion. meift (superl. of viel), most; am —en, most, most of all. Meiser, m. (-3; —), master. melsen (124), to milk.

Melobie', f. (-n), melody, tune; air.

Menge, f. (-n), great quantity or number.

Mensch, m. (-en; -en), a human being, man; person; pl., mankind, people. messen (181), to measure.

Messer, n. (-\$; -), knise. Metall', n. (-e\$; -e), metal. mieten, to rent.

Mild, f. milk.

Million', f. (-en), million. Minute, f. (-n), minute. Minutenzeiger, m. (-5; -), minute-hand.

mir (dat. of id), (to) me.

mit (46), with; by (in multiplication).

Mittag, m. (-es; -e), midday, noon; zu — essen, to dine.

Mittagseffen, n. (-3; -),

mitten, in the middle or midst of; — im Binter, in the middle of winter.

Mittwoth, m. (-es), Wednesday.

mögen (196–202; preference, liking), to be able; may; like; idj mag baš nidjt, I do not like that; idj mödte, I should like.

möglich, possible; das ist gern —, that is very probable.

Monardy', m. (-en; -en), monarch.

Mo'nat, m. (-es; -e), month. Montag, m. (-s; -e), Monday.

Morgen, m. (-8; —), morning; guten —, good morning; bes —8 (or morsgens), in the morning.

morgen, to-morrow; — früß, to-morrow morning.

mübe, tired, weary.

Mühe, f. trouble; nicht ber

wert, not worth while.

Mühle, f. (-11), mill. multiplizieren, to multiply.

Music, f. music.

musicalifd, musical.

to be obliged or forced, must.

Mut, m. (-e8), mood, courage, spirit; mir ift schlecht zu -e, I feel ill; frohen -e8, cheerfully.

Mutter, f. ("), mother.

M.

nach (46), after; according to; by (of time-piece); past (of hour of day); to (before proper names of places); — Sause, home.

Machbar, m. (-3 and -n; -n), neighbour.

nachbem', conj., after.

nadygehen (188; fein), to go after; go or be too slow (of a time-piece).

Madmittag, m. (-es; -e), afternoon; bes —s, in the afternoon.

Machricht, f. (-en), news. nächst (superl. of nah), next.

Mächste, m. (adj. subst.), fellow-creature, neighbour.

nächstens, shortly, soon, very soon.

Macht, f. ("e), night.

nah, (näher, nächft), near.

Mähe, f, nearness; neighbourhood; in meiner —, near me; in my neighbourhood.

Mame, m. (-ns; -n), name, title.

natür'lich, naturally, of course, I suppose.

neben (65), beside, besides; near, alongside of, by.

nebst (51), together with, including.

Messe, m. (-n; -n), nephew. nehmen (167), to take; sid in Adt —, to take care, beware.

nein, no.

nennen (99), to call, name. netto, net (commercialterm). neu, new.

neulid), lately, the other day, not long ago.

meuntehalb, eight and a half. micht, not; — mehr, no longer; — wahr? is (it, etc.) not (so)? nichts (indecl.), nothing. nie, never.

Mieberlande (bie), pl., The Netherlands.

nie/manb, nobody, no one, no person, not anybody, etc.

noth, still, yet, even; — ein, one more, another; — ets was, something (anything) more; — einmal, over again; — peute, before the end of the day, before the day is over; — immer, up to the present time, still; — vor vierzeßn Zagen, only a fortnight ago.

Nord'eisenbahn, f. (-en), Northern-Railway.

nötig, necessary.

Movember, m. (-3), November.

Nu'mero, n. (-3), number. nur, only. just. Nuß, f. ("e), nut.

nüşlich, useful.

D.

ob, whether, if.
oben, above, up-stairs; nach
—, upward.
obgleich, although.

ober, or. Ofen, m. (-3; "), stove.

offen, open Offizier', m. (-es; -e), officer.

öffnen (jid), to open.

oft ("cr), often, frequently. O'heim, m. (-eš; -e), uncle. ohne (34), without; but for. Onfel, m. (-š; —), uncle.

P.

Palast, m. (-es; "e), palace. Pantossel, m. (-s; -n), slipper.

Papier', n. (-e8; -e), paper. Papst, m. (-e8; \*e), pope. Paris', n. (von —), Pari passent, suitable. pfeifen (118), to whistle.

Pfennig, m. (-e3; -e), (the one hundredth part of a mark), penny.

Pferd, n. (-es; -e), horse.

Pferbebahn, f. (-en), tramway, tram; street-cars, horse-cars.

Pflaume, f. (-n), plum.

pflegen (weak), to attend to; to be accustomed, wont; — (strong, App. L.), to practise, exercise.

Pfunb, n. (-es; -e), pound. Philosophie', f. (-u), philosophy.

Plan, m. (-3; -e or "e), plan, design.

Planet', m. (-en; -en),

Play, m. (-es; #e), place;
— nehmen, to sit down, be seated.

Platregen, m. (-3; -), shower, down-pour.

plaubern, to chat, talk.

Portion', f. (-en), portion, plate (of meat, etc.).

Post, f. (-en), post, post-

Postbote, m. (-n; -n), post-

prächtig, magnificent.

Preis, (-es; -e), price; prize.

preisen (120), to praise. Procent', n. (-e3; -e), per

Professor, m. (-3; -en), professor.

promovieren, to take a degree, graduate.

Publitum, n. (-3), public; audience.

Punkt, m. (-es; -e), point; — zehn Uhr, at ten o'clock precisely.

Pünktlichkeit, punctuality.

23.

Dua'berstein, m. (-es; -e), cut-stone, freestone. quellen (124; sein), to gush.

N.

Rabatt, m. (-es; -e), discount, abatement.

Rand, m. (-es; "er), edge, rim, brim.

Mat, m. (-es), counsel, advice.

raten (188), to counsel, ad-

Rauch, m. (-es), smoke. Raupe, f. (-11), caterpillar.

Raupe, f. (-11), caterpillar. Rechnen, n. (-3), arithmetic.

Rechnung, f. (-en), account, bill, reckoning; calculation; ein Strich burch bie —, disappointment; fcreis

ben Sie bas auf meine -, charge that to me.

recht, right.

Mecht, n. (indecl.), right;— haben, to be right, be in the right.

rechts, to (on) the right.

recht'seitig, at the right time, punctually.

Mebe, f. (-n), speech; oration.

reben, to speak, talk.

Reformation', f. (-en), reformation.

Negen, m. (-3), rain.

Re'gentropfen, m. (-\$; --), drop of rain.

regieren, to reign, rule, go-

Regierung, f. (-en), government, reign; unter ber —, in the reign (of).

Regiment', n. (-es; -er), regiment.

reguen, to rain.

reiben (120), to rub.

reich, rich, wealthy.

reichen, to reach, hand.

reif, ripe.

Reise, f. (-n), journey, voyage; eine — machen, to take a journey.

Meisekosten, pl., travellingexpenses.

reisen (sein and haben), to travel, journey, go.

Reisenbe (adj. subst.), traveller.

reißen (118), to tear, pull. reiten (118; fein), to ride.

rennen (99; fein), to run, race.

Meftauration', f. (-cn), eating-house, restaurant.

retten, to save, rescue; ich rettete ihm das Leben, I saved his life.

reuen (impers.), to repent; es reut mich (gen.), I repent (of).

Mheumatismus, m. (gen. —), rheumatism.

richtig, right, correct; correctly; — gehen, to be correct (of a time-piece); auf bie—e Weife, in the right way.

Richtung, f. (-en), direction. riechen (123), to smell.

Niefe, m. (-n; -n), giant. Ninbsteisch, n. (-es), beef.

Ming, m. (-e3; -e), ring.

ringen (144), to wring. rinnen (158), to run, flow.

Rod, m. (-es; "e), coat.

Roman', m. (-3; -e), romance, novel.

Mömer, m. (-\$; --), Roman (subst.).

rot, adj. ("er), red.

Rot'fäppchen, n. (-5; —), Little Red (Riding) Hood. Not'wein, m. (-65), redwine.

Mübe, f. (-n), turnip; gelbe —, carrot. Aubin', m. (-e3; -e), ruby. rubern, to row.

rufen (188), to call. ruhia, quiet.

Ruhm, m. (-es), praise.

rund, round. Russe, m. (-n; -n), Russian.

ල

Saal, m. (-es; Säle), hall. Sache, f. (-11), thing, matter, affair, business; bift bu beiner — gewiß, are you certain of your information, etc.

fagen, to say, tell; — hören, to hear say, hear.

Sahne, f., cream.

jämmtlid, complete (of literary works).

Sanft Lorens, m., St. Law-rence.

Sängerin, f. (-nen), (female) singer.

Sara, f. (-3), Sarah.

Saţ, m. (-eš; "e), sentence. saufen (123), to drink (of beasts).

faugen (App. L), to suck. Schabe(11), m. (-118; "11), damage, injury, harm, mischief; es ift fcabe, it is a

pity. Schäfer, m. (-3; —), shepherd.

schaffen (186), to create.

sound. (123), to sound, resound.

et, ticket-office.

schämen (sich; gen. or über + acc.), to be ashamed. scharf ("er), sharp.

scheiben (120), to separate.

fceinen (120; dat.), to sliine; appear, seem.

schelten (159), to scold.

idjenten (dat. of person and acc. of thing), to give, make a present of, present. icheren (131, B.), to shear. ichiden, to send.

schieben (131), to shove, push. fchiegen (123), to shoot.

Schiff, n. (-es; -e), ship, vessel.

Schild, n. (-es; -er), signboard.

Schildfrote, f. (-n), tortoise. fcinben (App. L.), to flay. Schlacht, f. (-en), battle.

fclafen (188), to sleep; fich - legen, to retire to rest, go to bed.

Schlafrod, m. (-es: "e). dressing-gown.

Schlaf'zimmer, n. (-3: -). bedroom.

fclagen (186), to beat, strike. schlecht, bad; badly.

fcleichen (118; fein), to slink, sneak.

fcleifen (118), to sharpen, grind.

ichleißen (App. L.), to slit. fcliegen (123), to lock, shut, close; conclude, finish.

fclimm, bad.

fclingen (144), to sling.

Schlitten, m. (-3; -), sleigh.

Schlitt'schuhlaufen, n. (-3), (act of) skating.

Schloß, n. (-es; "er), castle, palace.

ichmeden, to taste, relish; wie fdmedt Ihnen biefes? how do you like (the taste of) this?

Schmeichelei', f., flattery. ichmeicheln (aat.), to flatter. schmeißen (118), to throw,

fcmelzen (124), to melt, smelt. Schmerg, m. (-es or -ens: -en), pain.

chnauben (App. L.), to snort. Schnee, m. (-3), snow.

ichneiben (118), to cut; reap; ichmars ("er), black.

fich in bie hanb -, to cut | fcmeigen (120), to be silem. one's hand.

Schneiber, m. (-3; -), tai-

schneien, to snow.

fcnell, quick; quickly.

Schnellzug, m. (-es; "e), express-train.

fcon, already, as early as, readily, easily, indeed; lange, for a long time (past).

fcon, fine, beautiful, hand-

Schönheit, f. (-en), beauty. Schotte, m. (-n; -n), Scotch-

ichrauben (App. L.), to screw. schreden (167), to be startled. ichreiben (120), to write (to.

dat. or an + acc. of pers.). ichreien (120), to cry, scream.

ichreiten (118; fein), to stride, step, stalk.

Schriftsteller, m. (-8; -), writer, author.

Schritt, m. (-es; -e), stride, step, pace.

Schubert, m. (-3), Schubert (German musician).

Schuh, m. (-es; -e), shoe. Schuld, f., guilt; (-en), debt; ichulb an etwas fein, to be to blame for anything.

Schule, f. (-n), school. Schüler, m. (-3; -), pupil, scholar, school-boy.

Schufter, m. (-3; -), shoemaker, cobbler.

schütteln, to shake.

fcwach ("er), weak, infirm. Schwäche, f. (-11), weakness, infirmity.

Schwager, m. (-3; "), brother-in-law.

Schwalbe, f. (-n), swallow. ichwären (App. L.), to fester. keep silence.

Schweigen, n. (-3), keeping silence, (act of) silence. Schweig (bie, gen. ber

Schweiz), Switzerland. fcmellen (124; fein), to swell. fdmer, heavy, hard, difficult. fcmerlich, hardly, scarcely.

Schwefter, f. (-n), sister. schwimmen (158), to swim.

Schwimmen, n. (-3), swimming (act of). ichwinden (144), to vanish.

ichwingen (144), to swing; fich -, to leap, bound.

ichmören (131), to swear. fchwiil, sultry, close.

See, m. (-6; -en), lake.

Seereise, f. (-n), voyage. Segelichiff, n. (-es: -e), sailing-vessel, ship.

fehen (181), to see, perceive; look, behold.

fehr, very, very much, exceedingly.

fein, feine, fein, his, its, one's. fein (52; fein), to be; (as aux.), to be, have.

feit (46), since; - mann, since when, how long: acht Tagen, for a week past.

feitbem', conj., since. felbft, self; even.

fenben (99), to send. Serviette, f. (-n), tablenapkin.

fegen, to set, put, place; fich -, to seat one's self, sit down.

fid, pron. refl. acc. and dat., one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; to himself, themselves, etc.; recipr., one another.

fie, she, it; her, it; they; them.

Sie ( for bu and ihr), you.

fieben, seven. Sieb'entel, n. (-5; —), seventh part.

fieben (123), to boil.

Silber, n. (-3), silver. fingen (144), to sing.

finten (144; fein), to sink.

finnen (158), to reflect.

Eklave, m. (-n; -n), slave.

Smaragb, m. (-es; -e), emerald.

[0, so, thus, in such a manner, indeed (not translated in the apodosis to a conditional clause); —eben, just, just now; — ein, eine, ein, such a.

fobalb, as soon as.

fofort, immediately, directly.

fogar, even. Sohn, m. (-es: "e), son.

fold(er), adj. and pron., such.

Soldat', m. (-en; -en), soldier.

follen (196-202; duty or obligation), to be in duty bound, be to; shall; be said

Sommer, m. (-3; —), summer.

fondern (after negatives only), but.

Sounabend, m. (-e3; -e), Saturday.

Sonne, f. (-n), sun.

Sonntag, m. (-es; -e), Sun-

fourt, else, otherwise; noth, any more, any other, any besides.

fouftig, other, different.

Sophie, f. (-ns), Sophia. forg'fältig, careful; care-

fully.

fpät, late.

spagieren (also - gehen, 188), to take a walk, go for a

walk, go walking; — faß: ren (186), to go for a drive. Spazier'gang, m. (-es; me), walk; einen — machen, to

take a walk. Spec, m. (-e3), bacon. speien (120), to spit.

Speisekarte, f. (-n), bill of fare.

speisen, to eat, dine.

Sperling, m. (-es; -e), sparrow.

spielen, to play.

fpinnen (158), to spin.

spleißen (App. L.), to split.

Sprache, f. (-n), language. Sprachtalent', n. (-es; -e), talent for (learning) languages.

Sprach'stubium, n. (-3; -ien), linguistic study.

fpredent (167), to speak, say, tell; to speak or talk to or with.

Sprechen, n. (-3), speaking (act of), speech.

Sprichwort, n. (-es; "er), proverb.

fprießen (123), to sprout. fpringen (144; fein), to spring, leap, jump.

St. Lo'reng, m., St. Lawrence.

Staat, m. (-es; -en), state. Stadt, f. ("e), town, city.

Stadt, f. ("e), town, city.
Stadt'thor, n. (-es; -e),
town-gate, city-gate.

Stabt'uhr, f. (-en), town-clock.

Stahl, m. (-es), steel.

Stand, m. (-es; "e), stand; condition; zu -e fommen, to be completed, be done; im -e sein, to be able, be in a position to.

ftarf ("er), strong, powerful; severe.

ftatt'finben (144), to take place, happen.

steden (167), to sting. steden (App. L.), to stick. stehen (186; sein or haben), to stand, be; be situated.

fleigen (120; fein; auf + acc.), to climb, mount, ascend, descend, get down or off, alight.

ftehlen (167), to steal.

Stelle, f. (-n), place, spot. ftellen, to put, place, set (upright).

fterben (159; fein), to die. ftieben (App. L.), to scatter. ftill, still; quiet.

Stinnne, f. (-n), voice.
ftinken (App. L.), to stink.
Stock, m. (-es; "e), stick,
cane.

ftören, to interrupt, disturb, trouble.

ftoßen (188), to push, kick, strike, bump, knock. Straße, f. (-11), street, road. ftreiden (118), to stroke. ftreiten (118), to quarrel. ftreng, severe; severely.

Strich, m. (-e3; -e), stroke, dash; ein — burch bie Nechnung, disappointment.

Strom, m. (-es; "e), stream, current.

Strumpf, m. (-es; "e), stocking.

Stück, m. (-es; -e), piece. Stückhen, n. (-s; --), little piece, morsel, bit.

Stubent', m. (-en; -en), student.

Studium, n. (-3; Studien),

ftubieren, to study.

Stubieren, n. (-3), studying (act of).

Stuhl, m. (-e3; "e), chair. Stunde, f. (-n), hour, lesson.

Stundenzeiger, m. (-3; -), hour-hand.

Sturm, m. (-c3 : "e), storm. tempest.

subtrabieren, to subtract.

fucien, to seek, search, look

Suppe, f. (-n), soup, broth.

ta'beln, to blame, find fault with.

Tag, m. (-es; -e), day; acht -e, a week; feit acht -en, for a week past; ein - um ben anbern, every other (alternate) day; alle brei -e, every third day.

Ta'aesan'bruch, m. (-es), day-break.

Zante, f. (-n), aunt.

tapfer, brave, valiant; bravely, valiantly.

Tapferteit, f., courage, va-

Taiche, f. (-n), pocket.

Taffe, f. (-n), cup. Taucher, m. (-3; -), diver.

tauen, to thaw.

Teil, m. (-es; -e), part, por-

teilen, to divide, share.

teils, partly, in part; teils ... teils, partly ... partly.

Telegraph', m. (-en; -en), telegraph.

Telephon', n. (-s; -e), telephone.

Teller, m. (-3; -), plate. Teppich, m. (-es; -e), car-

pet. Teftament', n. (-es; -e), testament, (last) will.

teuer, dear, costly.

Thal, n. (-es; "er), valley.

Thaler, m. (-3; -), dollar. That, f. (-en). deed; exploit, achievement.

thauen, to thaw.

Thee, m. (-3), tea.

Themfe, f., Thames.

Thor, n. (-es; -e), gate, 1 gateway.

Thor, m. (-en; -en), fool. Thron, m. (-es; -e), throne. thun (196), to do.

Thür(e), f. (-n), door.

Tier, n. (-es; -e), beast, animal.

Tisch, m. (-e3; -e), table. Titel, m. (-5; -), title; mit

-, with title (printed on the back).

Tochter, f. ("), daughter. Töchterden, n. (-s; -), little daughter.

Torontoer, adj., (of) Toronto.

tot. dead.

töten, to kill.

träge, idle, lazy, indolent. tragen (186), to carry.

traurig, sad, sorrowful, melancholy.

Trauung, f. (-en), marriage (-ceremony).

treffen (167), to hit, happen upon, meet with; hit upon, fall in with.

treiben (120), to drive.

Treppe, f. (-n), stairs, stair-

treten (181), to tread, step. tren, faithful, true.

triefen (123), to drop, drip.

trinten (144), to drink. Trinten, n. (-3), (act or ha-

bit of) drinking. Trint'geld, n. (-es; -er), drinking-money, gratuity,

tros (223), in spite of. tropbem' was, in spite of

cloth.

Trun'fenbold, m. (-es; -e), drunkard.

Tud, n. (-es; "er and -e),

Tu'genb, f. (-en), virtue.

## II.

übel, n. (-3: -), evil.

über (65), over, above, at. through, by way of; heute - brei Boden, this day three weeks.

überhaupt', in general, generally; as a matter of fact. at any rate.

ü'bermorgen, the day after tomorrow.

überre'ben, to persuade.

überfeh'en, to translate ; ins Deutsche -, to translate into German.

ü'bergieber, m. (-6; -), overcoat.

übrig, remaining, left over; bas übrige, the remainder, what is left; - bleiben, to be remaining or left.

übung, f. (-en), exercise; practice.

ufer, n. (-6; -), bank, shore.

Uhr, f. (-en), clock, watch; um vier -, at four o'clock; wie viel - ift es? what o'clock is it?

unmög'lich, impossible; ich fann -, I cannot possibly. Un'recht, n. (-es), wrong: haben, to be (in the) wrong.

unfer, unfere, unfer, our. unten, below, down-stairs.

unter (65), under, beneath, below; among; - ber Res gierung Glifabeths, in the

unterneh'men (167), to undertake.

reign of Elizabeth.

Unterneh'men, n. (-3), enterprise, undertaking. Un'terschied, m. (-es; -e),

difference. Un'wahrheit, f. (-en), untruth, falsehood.

un'mahricheinlich, improbable.

un'meit (gen.), not far from. un'aufrieben, discontented, dissatisfied.

ur'teilen, to judge.

u. f. w., abbrev. for und fo weiter, and so forth, etc.

### **33**.

Bater, m. (-3; "), father. verbergen (159), to conceal,

verbrennen (99), to burn, consume with fire.

verberben (159), to spoil (intr.); — (weak), to spoil (tr.), injure.

verbrießen (123), to vex. Bereinigten Staaten (bie), \$1., The United States.

vergebens, in vain.

vergelten (159), to requite, reward.

vergessen (181), to forget. Vergnügen, n. (-\$), pleasure, delight, amusement.

Berhältnis, n. (-fes; -fe), circumstance.

verhei'raten (sich mit), to marry.

verfaufen, to sell; biefes haus ist ju -, this house is for sale.

verlaffen (188), to leave, desert, quit; fich — auf (+ acc.), to rely upon, depend upon.

verleiben, to render disagreeable, spoil.

verlegen, to hurt, wound verlieren (131), to lose.

Berlust, m. (-e3; -e), loss. vermieten, to let, rent.

permittelft (gen.), by means of.

verreisen, to go on a journey.

verreift, absent on a journey. versammeln, to collect, assemble. verschreiben (120), to prescribe.

verschwenden, to squander, waste.

verschwinden (144; sein), to disappear, vanish.

versprechen (167), to promise.
verstehen (186), to understand; sich — auf (+ acc.),
to be a judge (of).

verstorben, deceased.

versuchen, to try.

Berwandte, m. and f. (adj. subst.), relative.

verzeihen (120; dat.), to pardon, excuse.

Berzeihung, f. (-en), pardon, forgiveness; um — bitten, to beg pardon.

verzweifeln, to despair.

Better, m. (-3; -11), cousin. viel (mehr, meist), much, many, a great deal of; wie — 11hr, what o'clock.

vielleidt', perhaps, possibly. vielmal, vielmals, many times, frequently, often. vier, four.

Diertel, n. (-3; -), fourth part, quarter.

Biertelstun'be, f. (-n), quarter of an hour.

ter of an hour. vierzehn, fourteen; — Tage, a fortnight.

Bioloncell', n. (-es; -e), violoncello.

Bogel, m. (-3; "), bird. voll (gen. or von), fuil.

vollen/ben, to finish, complete.
von (46), of, from, by, about,
concerning.

vor (65), before, of, in front of, ago; — acht Tagen, a week ago.

vorbei, over, past.

porseizehen (188), to go by, pass by.

vorbereiten (sid), to prepare (for, auf + acc.).

vorfahren (186; fein), drive up to the door, etc.

vorgehen (188; fein), to go (or be) fast (of a timepiece).

por'gestern, the day before vesterday.

vorhaben, to contemplate, intend.

Dorhang, m. (-es; "e), curtain.

vorig, preceding, last.

porläufij (adv.), temporarily, for the present.

vorlejen (181; + dat. of person), to read to.

Bormund, m. (-es; "er), guardian.

Borrat, m. (-es; <sup>m</sup>e), stock, provision.

vorsichtig, cautious, prudent. Borstabt, f. (\*e), suburb. vorstellen, to present, intro-

porteilhaft, advantageous.

duce.

porüberfließen (131; fein), to flow past.

vorübergehen (188; fein), to go past, pass by; am haufe —, to go by, go past, the house.

vorziehen (131), to prefer.

### W.

wachsen (186), to grow. Bagen, m. (-3; —), waggon, carriage.

wäzen (131, B.), to weigh. wählen, to choose, select.

wahr, true, real; nicht —?
am (I, etc.) not? is it not

währen, to last, continue. währenb (gen.; 223), during; while.

Bahrheit, f. (-en), truth. wahrscheinlich (adv.), probably.

Baisenhaus, n. (-es; "er), orphan-asylum.

Balb, m. (-es; "er), forest, wood.

Mand, f. ("e), wall.

Wanb(e)rer, m. (-3; —), traveiler.

wann? when?

warm ("er), warm.

warten (auf + acc.), to wait for.

warum, why, wherefore.

was, what, that which, which, that; — für ein, eine, ein, what kind of a, what.

washen (186), to wash. Wasser, n. (-3; -), water;

311 —, by water.

meben (131), to weave.

wechielhaft, changeable.

meden, to wake, awake, waken.

Bed'uhr, f. (-en), alarmclock.

weber, neither; — . . . noch,

neither . . . nor. Weg, m. (-es; -e), way, road; sich auf ben — machen, to

set out, be off.

wegen (gen.; 223), on account

of, because of, for the sake of, for.

Weib, n. (-es; -er), woman; wife.

meichen (118), to yield.

Weibe, f. (-n), pasturage, pasture.

Weihnachten, pl., Christmas. weil, because.

Weinen, to weep, cry.

Weinfarte, f. (-n), wine-

weise, adj., wise.

Weise, f. (-n), manner, mode, way; auf biese —, in this way.

weisen (120), to point out, show.

weiß, white.

weiter, farther, further. Beizen, m. (-3; -), wheat.

welcher, welche, welches, rel.

pron., who, which, that;
interrogative adj., which?
what?; —, adj. (in exclamations), what a! what!

Delt, f. (-en), world; auf ber —, in the world. wem, dat. of wer, to whom?

wenden (99), to turn; fich —, to apply (to, an + acc.).

wenn, when, whenever, as soon as; if; — aud, even if.

wer, who; he who, whoever; who?

werben (159), to sue.

werben (159), to become, grow; (as aux. of the passive voice, 112-114), to be;
— auß, to become of.

wersen (159), to throw. Bert, n. (-es; -e), work. wessen, whose; whose?

weshalb, wherefore? why? Wetter, n. (-5), weather: bei

biesem —, in this weather. wider (acc.; 34), against,

contrary to.
wie, how; how?; — fehr

auch, however much.
wieber, again, once more.

wie'bersehen (181), to see again, meet again.

Mie'bersehen, n. (-3), meeting again; auf —, good-bye till we meet again.

wiegen (131), to weigh. Wilhelm, m. (-8), William.

Wille, m. (-ns), will; wish; um... willen (gen.), for the sake of.

Wind, m. (-e3; -e), wind. winden (144), to wind. windig, windy.

Winter, m. (-3; -), winter. wir, we.

wirklich, adv., really, truly. Wirtin, f. (-nen), hostess; landlady.

wissen (196), to know (said of knowledge); nicht daß ich wüßte, not that I know of.

Wissenschaft, f. (-en), science.

wissentlich, knowingly.

wo? where; where? Boche, f. (-n), week.

wohl, pred. adj., well (of health); mir ift nicht — zu Mut, I do not feel well; —, adv., well, then, indeed, I suppose; jα —, yes, to be sure.

wohnen, to dwell, live, reside. Bohnung, f. (-en), dwelling, house, residence.

wollen (196-202), to will, desire, wish, want, intend, mean, like; — Sie ein Glas Basser? will you have a glass of water?

woran, whereon, on which, on what, of what.

morauf, whereon, on which, for which, on what.

woraus, wherefrom, from what, of what.

morin, wherein, in which, in what.

Mort, n. (-e3; "er and -e), word.

worüber? about what? at what? over what?

wundern (sich), to wonder, be astonished (at, siber + acc.); es wundert mich (impers.), I wonder.

Bunid, m. (-es; "e), wish. wüniden, to wish, desire, want; Gliid,—, to congratulate, wish success.

Wurm, m. (-cs; "er), worm.

Burgel, f. (-n), root. But, f., rage, fury. mütenb, furious.

## 3.

achlen, to pay. Rahit, m. (-es: "e), tooth. Rahnweh, n. (-es), toothache achit, ten. Reichen, n. (-3: -), sign. zeigen, to show. zeihen (120), to convict. Beit, f. (-en), time ; ju allen -en, in all ages. Beitung, f. (-en), newspaper. gerreißen (118), to tear (to pieces). gerrinnen (158), to vanish, run away (of liquids).

gieben (131), to draw; pull, gurudbleiben (120; fein), to take. Bimmer, n. (-\$; -), room. au (46), to, at: - meinem Onfel, to my uncle's : berfelben Reit, at the same time; adv., too; closed, shut. aubringen (99), to pass, spend (said of time). Ruder, m. (-3), sugar. anerst', first, first of all. sufolge (gen. or dat.; 223), in consequence of, according to. [fied. aufrieben, contented, satis-Bug, m. (-es; "e), train. zumachen, to shut, close. jurüdbringen (99), to bring

remain behind: remain at home. zurücktommen (167).to return. come back. suruaflegen, to put by, lay up. anfammen, together. jufammenftogen (188), to collide. aufdiden, to send to (dat.). aufchließen (123), to lock up. fasten, shut. Rwed, m. (-es; -e), aim, obiect. awei, two. ameitens, secondly. zwingen (144), to force. amifchen (65), between.

# ENGLISH-GERMAN.

back.

NOTE. - The government of verbs is given only where it differs from English usage.

### A.

able, fähig, geschickt; to be -, fonnen, 196; im Stans be fein.

about, prep. (around), um, 34, 226, (a); (the person), bei, 46, 226, (d); adv., (nearly), ungefähr; etwa, 226, (b), (c); to be — to, im Begriffe fein. above, prep., liber, 65. absent, abwesenb; ---mindedly, gerftreut.

abuse, v., mighan'beln. accept, annehmen, 167. accompany, begleiten

(tr.).

account; on - of, megen, 223; halb(en), halber, 223;

on that -, besmegen, bes = | balb. accusation, Anflage, f. (-n). accuse (of), antlagen (gen. of thing), beschulbigen (gen. of thing).

accustomed, gewohnt; to be -, bie Bewohnheit haben. acknowledge, anerfennen, (99).

acquaintance, Befanntichaft, f. (-en); to make the of, fennen lernen.

acquit (of), losspreden (167; gen. of thing). act; to - amiss, miff hanbeln.

add, abbieren. address, subst., Abreffe, f. (-n).

address, v., anreben. admire, bewundern. advance, porriiden (intr.).

amölf, twelve.

advantage, Borteil, m. (-es: advantageous, vor'teilhaft.

advice, Rat, m. (-es). advise, raten (188: dat.). affair, Sache, f. (-11).

afraid; to be - (of); fict fürchten (por + dat.).

after, nach, 46. afternoon, Nachmittag, m. (-es; -e).

afterwards, nachher, hernach, barauf.

again, wieber, nochmals. against, miber, gegen, 34. ago, vor (prep. + dat.), 65;

many years -, por vielen Sahren; a week - to-day, heute por acht Tagen. agreeable, angenehm. ail, fehlen; what -s you? mas fehlt Ihnen? alas! ad! all (the), all, Alles; aller, alle, alles ; - the same, einerlei. allow, erlauben (dat.); laffen, 188; to be -ed, bürfen, 196. Alma (river), Alma, f. almost, faft, beinabe. alone, allein. along, längs, entlang (223, 18, 19). alphabet, Alphabet', n. (-cs; -e). already, fcon. also, auch. always, immer. America, America, n. (-3). amiss; to act -, mig'han= beln, 209. among, amongst, unter, 65. a, an, ein, eine, ein. ancient, alt; the -s, bie Alten, pl. and. und. anecdote, Unetbote, f. (-n). angry, boje; be - at, boje fein auf (+ acc.). animal, Tier, n. (-es; -e). another (a different one), cin anderer; (one more), noch ein, eine, ein. answer, subst., Untwort, f. (-en). answer, v., antworten (dat.); beantworten (acc. of thing, dat. of pers.). answering (act of), Antwors ten, n. (-3). ant, Ameife, f. (-n). any (partitive, 2, 2); irgenb, ein, eine, ein; -thing, ir= genb etwas, etwas; thing but, nichts weniger

als; pl., welche, einige;

not -body, not -one, nies manb; not -, fein, feine, fein. apartment, Gemach, n. (-es; "er). appear, icheinen, ericheinen, 120 apple, Apfel, m. (-3: "): - - tree, Apfelbaum, m. (-e3: "e). apply to anyone, fich an ie= manben (acc.) wenben, oo. appoint (as), ernennen (oo: gum, gur). approval, Beifall, m. (-es). April, April', m. (-3). architect, Architett', m. (-en: -en). arm, Arm, m. (-es; -e); -s, pl., Baffen. army, Urmee, f. (-n). arrival, Unfunft, f. ("e). arrive, antommen (167; fein). art, Runft, f. ("e). article, Arti'fel, m. (-\$; -). artillery, Artillerie, f.; Be= id)iit, n. (-es). artist, Rünftler, m. (-3; -). as (241, 8-11), als; wie; fo; ba; - soon -, fobalb (wie); - a, als; -... -. (eben)fo . . . wie or als. ascend, auffteigen, fteigen, ashamed; to be - of, fich fchamen (gen. or über + acc.). ask, fragen (186); - for, bitten (181, um); verlangen (nach). asking questions (act of), Fragen, n. (-8). assert, behaupten. assist, beifteben (186; fein : dat.). astonish; to be -ed (at), fich wunbern (über + acc.). astonishing, erstaunenb. at (of locality), in, an, auf, beat, v., fclagen (186).

8u, 227 (a); (of time) um. 311, bei, 227, (b); (of price) um, 227, (c); not - all, gar nicht; - my brother's. bei meinem Bruber ; last, - length, endlich. attack, v., angreifen, 118. subst., Angriff, m. (-es:-e). attempt, subst., Berfuch, m. (-es: -e). attendant, Begleiter, m. (-5: attention, Aufmertsamfeit: to pay -, Acht geben (181; auf + acc.). attentive, animerfiam. August, August', m. (-3). aunt, Tante, f. (-n). author (of a particular work). Berfaffer, m. (-3: -). autumn, Berbft, m. (-es; -e). avoid, meiben, permeiben, away, fort, abmefenb; from home, von Saufe. B. back, adv., zuriid. bad, badly, folect. bag, Sad, m. (-es; "e). bank, Bant, f. (-en). bark of trees, etc.), Baums rinbe, f. basket, Rorb, m. (-es; "e). battery, Batterie, f. (-n). battle, Schlacht, f. (-en). be, fein (52); werben (159; as aux. of passive, 112, R. 5); ftehen (186); there is, there are, es giebt, es ift, etc., 220; (of health) sich befinden (144); how are you? wie geht es Ihnen? I am to, ich foll. bear, subst., Bar, m. (-en: -en). bear (bring forth), v., ges bären (167).

beautiful, fcon; the -, bas Schöne. beauty, Schönheit, f. (-en). because, meil: ba. become, werben (159); fteben (186; dat.).

bed, Bett, n. (-es; -en): to go to -, gu Bette geben, fich ichlafen legen; in -, gu Bette.

bee, Biene, f. (-n). beef, Rinbfleifd, n. (-es). beer, Bier, n. (-es; -e).

before, prep., vor (65; dat. or acc.); conj., bevor; ehe (bag).

beg (ask), bitten (181; for, um); to - pardon, um Bergeihung bitten; - (for alms), betteln.

beggar (-man), Bettler, m. (-3; -); -- woman, Bett= lerin, f. (-nen).

begin, anfangen (188); be= ginnen (158).

behave, fich betragen (186). behind, hinter (65; dat. or acc.).

believe, glauben (dat. of person).

belong (to), gehören (dat.). beloved, geliebt, mert.

below, prep., unter (dat. or acc.; 65); unterhalb (gen.;

223); adv., unten. besides, adv., außerbem. between, swiften (dat. or acc.; 65).

beverage, Getrant, n. (-es; -e).

bid, v. (order), heißen (188). big, groß.

bill, Rechnung, f. (-en).

bird, Bogel, m. (-s; "). bird-cage, Bogelbauer, n.

(-3; --) birth-day, Geburtstag, m.

(-e3; -e); as a — -present, jum Geburtstag.

28

bishop, Bifchof, m. (-es; "e). bite, v., beigen (118).

bitter, bitter.

black, adj., fcmara ("er). black, v. (of boots), midien.

blame, v., tabeln. blindly, blinblings.

blow, v., blafen (188).

blue, blau.

board; on - (of a ship), am

boat, Boot, n. (-es; -e or Böte).

bodily, förperlich.

bombard, bombarbieren. bone, Anoden, m. (-3; -). book, Bud, n. (-es; "er).

bookseller, Budhanbler, m. (-3; --).

born, part., geboren (167). borne; having been - down by the stream, pom Stros

me fortgeriffen. botanist, Bota'nifer, m. (-3;

both, beibe; alle beibe, beis

bough, Aft, m. (es; "e).

Boston, Bofton, n. (-3); the - train, ber Bug von (nach) Bofton.

boy, Anabe, m. (-n; -n). brave, taufer.

bread, Brot, n. (-es; -e). break, brechen (167); -

through, einbrechen. breakfast, v., frühituden:

subst., Frühftüd, n. (-es). bridge, Brüde, f. (-n).

bring, bringen (99); holen; to - with one, - along, mitbringen; to - in, ber= einbringen; to - up. ber= aufbringen.

broad, breit. brother, Bruber, m (-8; ").

brother-in-law, Schwager, m. (-B; #).

build, bauen.

building, Gebaube, n. (-3: -); (act of), Bauen, n. (-3).

bullet, Rugel, f. (-n).

burn, brennen (99; intr.); verbrennen (99; tr. and intr.).

business, Gefdaft, n. (-es;

business - matter, Gefchafts angelegenheit. f. (-en).

but, aber; allein (241, 1); fonbern (only after a negative, 236, R. 1).

button, Anopf, m. (-es; "e). buy, faufen.

buying (action of), Raufen, n. (-B).

by, 228; (near by), bei (dat.); (of agent with pass. voice) von (dat.); (of means or instrument) burch (acc.), mit (dat.); - rail(way), mit ber Gifenbahn.

## C.

call (out), rufen 188; (name). nennen, 99; be -ed, beis Ben, 188.

call, subst. (visit), Befuch, т. (-ев; -е).

can, fönnen, 196-202. cannon, Ranone, f. (-n).

capable, fähig (gen., or + 3u).

capital, subst., Sauptftabt. f. ("e).

cardinal-point (see point). care, Acht, f.; to take -, fich in Acht nehmen (167); do you - to? haben Sie Luft? for all I -, meinetwegen. carpet, Teppid, m. (-es; -e). carriage, Bagen, m. (-5; --).

carry, tragen, 186; to - up, hinauftragen.

case, Fall, m. (-c3; "c). castle, Colog, n. (-es; "er)

cat. Rate, f. (-n). catch, fangen, 188: - cold. fich erfälten. cause; to - to, laffen (188; + infin.). celebrate, feiern; -d, bes riibmt. century, Jahrhundert, z. (-es; -e). certain, -ly, gemiß, jebens falls. chair, Stuhl, m. (-es; "e). chancellor, Rangler, m. (-3; -). change, v. tr., anbern; v. intr., fich anbern. Charles, Rarl, m. (-3); little -, Rarlden, n. (-3). charming, adj., reizenb cheap, billig. cheese, Raje, m. (-3; -). cherry, Rirfche, f. (-n). chicken, Suhn, n. (-es; "er). child, Rinb, z. (-es; -er). Christmas, Beihnachten, pl. church, Rirde, f. (-n). Cinderella, Michenputtel, s., (-ŝ). city, Stabt, f. ("e). claim to be, wollen, 196. clear, flar. clever, geschickt. climate, Alima, z. (-8). climb up, hinaufflettern. cloak, Mantel, 22. (-3; 1). clock, Uhr, f. (-en). close, jumaden; foliegen, aufchließen, 123. cloth, Tudy, n. (-es; -e or "er). clothes, Rleiber, n. pl. (see Mleid). cloud, Bolle, f. (-n). coachman, Rutscher, m. (-3; --). coal, Roble, f. (-n). coat, Rod, m. (-es; "e). coffee, Raffee, m. (-3). cold, falt ("er); to catch -, fich erfälten.

colour Farbe, f. (-n). combat. Rampf. 21. (--e3: "e). come, fommen (167; fein); - in, hereinfommen; here, hierherkommen : down, beruntertommen; - out, herauskommen : back, gurudtommen; again, wieberfommen; what is to -, bas Bevorftebenbe. coming (act of), Rommen, n. command, v., befehlen (167; dat.). commandment, Gebot, m., (-es: -e). company, Gefellichaft, f., (-en). complain, flagen (über + acc.). complete, vollständia. concert, Ronzert', n. (-es; -e). condition, Bedingung, f. (-en). confusion, Bermirrung, f. (-en); Befturgung, f. (-en). congratulate, Glud munichen, gratulieren (dat.). conscious, bewußt (+ gen.). consequence; in - of, aus folge (223). consider, betrachten; halten für, 188. consist (of), befteben (aus). £86. contented, jufrieben. contradistinction, Gegenfat, m. (-es; "e). contrary; on the -, im Ge, genteil. convent, Aloster, 2. (-3; "). convince (of), überzeuegen (gen. of thing). cool, adj., fühl. sopy, subst., Eremplart, z. (-es; -e); v., abidreiben, 120. corner, Ede, f. (-n).

dat. of person). counsellor, Ratgeber, m. (-3; -). Count, subst., Graf, m. (-en; -en). Countess, Gräfin, f. (-nen). country, Land, n. (-es; "er); in the -, auf bem Lande ; -- man, Bauer, m. (-n or -3; -n). couple, Baar, n. (-es; -e). courtier, Söfling, m. (-e3; -e). cousin. Better, m. (-s; -n). cover, v., beden. create, ichaffen, 186. creditor, Gläubiger, m. (-3: creep, friechen, 123. crime, Berbrechen, n. (-8; --). crop, crops, Ernte, f. cry (call), rufen, 188; (weep), meinen. cup, Taffe, f. (-n). curtain, Borhang, m. (-es; #e). cut, ichneiben, 118; - off, aus fcneiben; to - one's hand, fich in bie Sanb idneiben. D. danger, Gefahr, f. (-en).

correct, adi., richtia.

cost, v., toften (+ acc. or

danger, Gefahr, f. (-en).
dangerous, gefährlich.
dare, sich unterstehen, 180;
bürsen, 196.
daughter, Tochter, f. (").
day, Tag, m. (-e8; -e); in
broad —light, bei hellem
Tage.
dead, tot.
deal; a great — of, viel.
dealer, Hänbler, m. (-8;
—).
dear, lieb, teuer.
dearly-bought, teuer,

decide, intr., fich entichließen, 123; -d, adj., entichieben. defence. Berteibigung, f. (-cn). definition, Definition, f. (-en). deserve, verbienen. desire, Berlangen, n. (-3; -); Luft, f. ("e). desperate, verzweifelt. devote, wibmen. diamond, Diamant', m. (-3 or -en: -en). dictionary, Börterbuch, n. (-es; "er). die, fterben (159; fein). difference, Unterschieb, m. (-es; -e). difficult, ichmer. dig, graben, 186. diligence, Fleiß, m. (-es). diligently, fleißig. dinner, Dittagseffen, n. (-8; -). disagreeable, unangenehm. disappoint, enttäuschen. discover, entbeden. discoverer, Entbeder, m. (-3; discovery, Entbedung, f. (-en). disgrace, Schanbe, f. (-n). displeased, unzufrieben. dissatisfied, unzufrieben. distant, entfernt. disturb, ftoren. diver, Taucher, m. (-3; -). divide, teilen. divine, göttlich. do, thun (196); (make), mas then; (as aux. is not translated by a separate form: see 31, R. 3); how - you -? wie geht es Ihnen? doctor, Dot'tor, m. (-5; Dotto'ren); (physician), Mrat, m. (-es; "c); that is Dr. B., bas ift ber Dottor 23.

dog, Sunb, m. (-es; -e). dollar, Thaler, m. (-3; -). door, Thur(e), f. (-en); at the -, an ber Thur(e). doubt, subst., 3meifel, m. (-\$; --). doubt, v., zweifeln (an + dat.); I have no - of it, ich habe teinen Zweifel ba= ran. down, herunter; - -stairs, unten. dozen, Dutenb, n. (-es; -e). draw, gieben, 131; zeichnen. dress, Aleid, n. (-es; -er). dress, v. tr., antleiben; v. intr., fich antleiben. drink, trinfen, 144; - (of beasts), faufen, 123. drive, v. tr., treiben, 120; intr., (go in a conveyance), fahren (186; fein); go for a -, fpazieren fahren. driving (act of), Jahren, n. (-3). drop, Tropfen, m. (-3: -). drown, intr.; be -ed, ers trinten, 144. duke, Bergog, m. (-es; -e or #e). during, währenb (gen.; 223). duty, Bflicht, f. (-en). dwelling - house, Bohuhaus, n. (-es; "er). each, jeber, jebe, jebes; -

other, einander.
eagle, Abler, m. (-8; —).
earl, Ohr, n. (-e8; -en).
early, früh.
earth, Erde, f.; — -quake,
Erdbeben, n. (-8; —).
east, Ohi(en), m.
easy, —ily, leicht.
eat, effen, 181, fressen, 181,
(said of beasts).
effort, Anstreamung, f. (-en),

Bemühung, f. (-en); Bers fuch, m. (-5; -e).

either, entweber; — . . .

or, entweber . . . . ober.

elect (as), erwählen (jum).

elm, Ulme, f. (-n).

else, or —, fonft.

embarrassment, Berlegens

heit, f. (-en).

emperor, Kaifer, m. (-5; —).

endure, ausstehen, 186.

enemy, Feinb, m. (-es;

-e).

engaged, versagt; I have an-

other engagement, I am elsewhere, ich bin anders, wo versagt. English, englisch; — (language), Englisch (bes Engs

engush, englijd (bes Engs lischen); into —, ins Engs lische.

Englishman, Engländer, m. (-3; -).
enjoy, genießen (123; gen. or more generally acc.).

enough, genug; be —, suffice, genügen. err, irren.

escape, entfliehen (131; dat.). esteem, achten. etc., u. f. w. (abbreviation

for: und so weiter).
Europe, Europa, n. (-3).

even, adv. fogar, felbst; not

—, nicht einmal'; — if,
wenn auch.

evening, Abenb, m. (-e3; -e). ever, je, jemals.

every, jeber, jebe, jebe3;
—body,—one, jebermann,
jeber, jebweber, jeglider;
— week, alle acht Tage.
everywhere, überall.
evil, subst., Böje3, n.

exactly, gerabe, eben.
examination, Egamen, n. (-5;
-).

examine, unterfuchen, beob's achten.

exceeding, —ly, höchft, sehr, äußerst.
except, außer (dat.; 46).
excuse, v., entschuldigen (tr.), verzeihen (dat.); subst., Entschuldigung, f. (-en).
exercise, subst., Aufgabe, f. (-n).
expect, erwarten.
expense, Kosten, pl.; at the — of, auf Kosten.
eye, Auge, n. (-\( \); -n).

fail (in business), fallieren. fall, fallen (x88; fein). family, Familie, f. (-n). famine, Sun'gerenot, f. far, weit; as - as, bis nach (dat.); not - from, unfern, unmeit (gen.; 223, 23, 24). farewell, Lebewohl, n. (-3). fast (quick), geschwinb, fdnell. father, Bater, m. (-3; "). favour, Gefallen, m. (-\$; -). fear, Turcht, f.; for -, aus Murcht. feather, Reber, f. (-n). February, Februar, m. (-3). feel, fühlen ; (perceive), emp= finden, 144; v. intr. (of health), fich befinben; gu Mute fein; I - ill, mir ift foledt zu Mute. few, wenig, menige; a -, einige, ein paar. field, Telb, n. (-es; -er). fight, fechten, 124; ftreiten, 118. fill, füllen. find, finben, 144; - out, auss finden; - again, wieber= finden. fine, ichon. finger, Finger, m. (-3; -). finish, vollen'ben; to have -ed (with), fertig fein (mit); -ed, fertig.

(-es).

four, vier.

fire, Fenter, n. (-3; -). fox, Fuchs, m. (-es; #e). first, adj., ber, bie, bas erfte: France, Frantreich, n. (-3). adv., querft, erftens ; - of Francis, Frang, m. (-ens). all, querft. Fred(dy), Frit, m. (-ens). fish, Fijd, m. (-es; -e). Frederick, Friedrich, m. fishing, Tifden, n. (-3). (-3); Frederick-street, bie fit for, - to, gut zu. Friedrichftrafe. five, fünf. free, frei. flatter, ichmeicheln (dat.). freeze, 131, frieren. flatterer, Schmeichler, m. (-5: French, frangöfisch; - (lan---). guage), Frangösisch, n. fleet, subst., Flotte, f. (-n). (bes Frangöfifchen). floor, Fußboben, m. (-3; "). fresh, frifch. flour, Mehl, n. (-es). Friday, Freitag, m. (-es; flow, v., fliegen, 123, fein. -e). flower, Blume, f. (-n). friend, Freund, m. (-cs; fly, fliegen 131, fein; -away. -e). wegfliegen. friendless, freundlog. follow, folgen (fein ; dat.). friendly, freundlich. foot, Fuß, m. (-es; "e). friendship, Freundschaft, f. for, 229, prep. (in behalf of), für, acc., 34; (of purpose) frighten (terrify), erichreden; zu, dat., 46; - reading, to be -ed, erfdreden, 167. jum Lefen; (of past time) frog, Frofd, m. (-es; "e). feit, dat., 46; - three days from (direction), von, aus (past), feit brei Tagen: (of (dat.; 46); (cause) aus; fut. time) auf, acc., 229, (time) über + acc., 65; (b), 2; - three days (to a week - to-day, heute come), auf brei Tage. über acht Tage; (disease) forbid, verbieten (131; dat.). an, dat., 65; er ift an force, amingen, 144; to be biefer Krantheit geftor= -d, obliged (to), muffen, ben, he died of that dis-196-202. ease. ford, Furt, f. (-en). front; in - of; por (dat. forest, Balb, m. (-es; "er). or acc.; 65). forgery, Berfälschung, f. fully, gans. (-en). funeral, Begräbnis, n. (-fes; forget, vergeffen, 181. forgive, vergeben (181; dat.). furious, -ly, wütenb. former, jener, jene, jenes. future, Butunft, f. fort, Feste, f. (-n). G. fortieth (part), Biergigstel, n. (-ß; —). gallop, galoppieren. fortnight, vierzehn Tage. garden, Garten, m. (-3; "). fortunately, glüdlichermeife; gardener, Gärtner, m. (-3; glüdlicher Beife. ---). fortune, good--, Glüd, n. gather, fammeln.

general, General', m. (-es;

-e).

hearing, Gehör, n. (-e3).

generally, gemöhnlich. generous, freigebig. gentleman, herr m. (-n; -en). George, Georg, m. (-3). German, adj., beutsch ; -(language), Deutsch, n. (bes Deutschen); in -. auf Deutsch; into -, ins Deutsche. Germany, Deutschland, n. (-3). get (become), werben, 150. girl, Mädchen, n. (-3; -). give, geben, 181; - up, auf= geben. glad, froh (gen.); be -, fid) freuen ; I am -, es freut mid; I should be - to, should like to, ich möchte gern. glass, Glas n. (-es; "er). glove, Sanbiduh, m. (-es; go, geben (188; fein); reifen; - away, meggehen, fort= gehen; - back, gurud. geben; - out, (bin)aus= gehen; - down, bin= untergeben; - up, bin= aufgeben; - past the place, an einem Plage vor= übergeben; - for, fetch, holen. goal, Biel, n. (-es; -e). God, god, Gott, m. (-e3: Her). Goethe, Goethe, m. (-5). gold, subst., Gold, n. (-e3). gold, adj., golden, golben.

good, gut; be - enough,

haben Sie bie Bute : -

morning, guten Morgen.

grand-parents, Großeltern.

grass, Gras, n. (-es; "er).

goodness, Güte, f.

pl.

graceful, -ly, anmutig.

grapes, Trauben, pl.

grateful, bantbar. great, groß ("er, größt). green, grün; subst., Grün, n. (--3). grind, fcleifen, 118. ground, Boben, m. (-3); Erbe. f. grow, machfen, 186; werben, 159. guess, erraten, 188. guest, Gaft, m. (-es; #e). habit, Gewohnheit, f. (-en); to be in the - of, bie Bes wohnheit haben gu, etc.: pflegen. half, adj., halb; - an hour, eine halbe Stunbe. half, subst., Salfte, f. (-n). hand, Sanb, f. ("e). handsome, fdjön. handwriting, Sanbichrift, f. (-en). hang, v. tr., bangen; v. intr., hangen, 188. happy, glüdlich. harbour, Safen, m. (-3: "). hard, ichmer. hardly, foum. hare, Safe, m. (-n; -n), harvest, subst., Ernte, f.; v., haste, Gile, f.; to make -, eilen. hat, Sut, m. (-es; "e). have, haben, 24; fein, 52, 53; laffen, 188, 200, 7; to to, be obliged to, müffen, 196-202; will you - a cup of tea? wollen Gie eine Taffe Thee? hay, heu, n. (-es). he, er; ber; - who, berjes jenige welcher, etc., mer. head, Ropf, m. (-es: "e). health, Gefundheit, f. hear, hören; to - say, fagen hören.

heart, Berg, n. (-ens: -en): by - ausmenbia. heat, Sige, f. heath, Seibe, f. (-n). heaven, Simmel, m. (-3; -). heavy, fcmer; -ilv. fcmer: (of rain) ftort : heaviest of all, am allerschwerften. help, subst., Silfe. help, v., helfen (159; dat.); it cannot be -ed, es läßt fich nicht änbern. Henry, Beinrich, m. (-8). her, pers. pron., fie (acc.); ihr (dat.). her, poss. adj., ihr, ihre, ihr. here, hier. hide, v., verbergen, 159. high, hoch, höher, höchft (loses c in inflexion); to think -ly of, viel halten von, 188. him, ihn (acc.), ihm (dat.). himself (he), er felbft ; (to) -, fit) (acc, or dat.). his, poss. adj., fein, feine, his, poss. pron., feiner, feis ne, feines; ber, bie, bas feine; ber, bie, bas feis nige. hoarse, heifer. hold, halten, 188; - together, zusammenhalten. holiday, Feiertag, m. (-es; -e); -s, Ferien, pl. home, Beimat, f.; adv., nach Saufe; at -, ju Saufe; to go -, nach Saufe gehen, 188. honest, ehrlich, reblich, aufrichtig. honey, Honig, m. (-es). hope, subst., hoffnung, f. (-en); v., hoffen. horse, Pferb, n. (-es; -e). hospital, Sofpital, Spital, n. (-e3; "er).

hostess, Wirtin, f. (-nen). hot, beiß. hour, Stunde, f. (-n); --hand, Stunbenzeiger, m. (-\$; --). house, Saus, n. (-es; "er); at vour -, bei Ihnen. how, wie; - do you do? wie geht es Ihnen? wie befinben Gie fich? however, aber; jeboch. howl, heulen. human, menichlich; - being, Menich, m. (-en ; -en). hundred, hundert ; subst., Bunbert, n. (-es; -e). hunger, Sunger, m. (-3). hungry, hungrig; be -, Sunger haben. hunter, Jäger, m. (-3; -). hunting (act of), Jagen, n. (-3); (chase) 3agb, f.; go -, auf bie Jagb geben. huntsman, Jäger, m. (-3; -). hurry, Gile, f. ; I am in a -, ich bin in ber Gile, ich habe es eilig. hurt, v., perlegen. husband, Mann, m. (-es; hussar, Sufar, m. (-en or -5; -en).

### I.

I, ich.
ice, Sis, n. (-e5).
idea, Jbee, f., Gebante, m.
(-n3; -n).
idle, faul, träge.
idleness, idling, Müßiggang,
m. (-e5).
if, wenn; (whether), ob.
ignorant, unwissenb.
ill, trant; — -health, schlechte
Gesunbheit, f.
illness, Krantseit, f. (-en).
imagine, sich (dat.) benten (99,
2).

immediately, (fo)gleich. importance, Wichtigfeit. important, michtig, bebeus tenb. impossible, unmöglich. in, in, dat., 65; auf, dat., 65, 230. (a): - the country. auf bem Lanbe. inch, Boll, m. (-es). induce, bewegen, 131, B. industrious, -ly, fleigig. industry, Rleift, m. (-es). inform, mitteilen. inhabitant, Ginwohner, m. (-\$; --). ink, Tinte or Dinte, f. innocence, Unidulb, f. inquire, fich ertunbigen, fras gen. 186. inside of, innerhalb (gen.; 223). insist on, befteben (auf + acc.). instead of, ftatt, anftatt (gen.; 223). intend, beabsichtigen, por's haben, gebenten (99, 2). intention, Abficht, f. (-en). interrupt, unterbrech'en, 167. into, in (acc.; 65). invent, erfinben, 144. invitation, Einladung, f. (-en). invite, einlaben, 186. iron, Gifen, n. (-3); adj ... eifern. it (38, 39), es; er; fie; ber, bie, basfelbe; in -, barin; for -, bafür; of -, ba= pon; with -, bamit; to -. bazu. its, poss. adj., fein, ihr. itself, es felbft.

## J.

James, Jakob, m. (-3). January, Januar, m. (-3). John, Johann' m. (-3). journey, Reise, f. (-n). joyous, fröhlich.

July, Ju'li, m. (-5).

jump, springen, 144; —
down, herunterspringen,
himmterspringen.

June, Ju'ni, m. (-3).

just, gerade, eben; — now,
soeben, — as, ebenso.
justify, rechtsertigen.

## K.

kick, stoßen, 188.
kind; what — of, was für
(ein, eine, ein); of many
—s, vielerlei; adj., gut,
freunblich; to be so — as
to, so gut fein unb.
kindness, Güte, Gütigleit,
Freunblichteit, f.
king, König, m. (-es; -e);
King-street, bie Königs
füraße.
kingdom, Königreich, n. (-es; -e).

-c). knife, Messer, n. (-3; --). knock down, herunterschlas gen. 186.

know (of acquaintance), tensnen, 99; (of knowledge acquired by mental effort) wissen, 196; — how, tönsnen, 196.

knowledge, Kenntnis, f. (-se), Wissenschaft, f. (-en). known, bekannt.

### L.

lady, Dame, f. (-n); young
— (Miss), Fräulein, n.
(-5; -).
lake, See, m. (-5; -en).
landscape, Lanbschaft, f.
(-en).
language, Sprache, f. (-n).
language, Sprache, f. (-n).
large, groß ("er, größt).
last, lest, vorig; at —, ends
lich; v., bauern.
late, spät.

lately, neulid, fürglich. Latin, subst., Latein', ts. (-5). latter, the -, jener. laugh, lachen; - (at), lachen (gen. or über + acc.); he -s at (makes sport of) you, er macht fich über Gie Iuftia. lawyer, Abvotat', m. (-en; -en). lay, legen. lazy, faul, trage, lead. Blei. n. (-es). lead, v., führen. lead-pencil, Bleiftift, m. (-es; -e). leaf, Blatt, n. (-es; "er). learn, Iernen. learned, adj., gelehrt. learning (action of), Lernen, n. (-3). least; at -, wenigftens. leave, Iaffen, 188; - behind, desert, abandon, verlaffen; - out, auslaffen. left, lint; be -, übrig bleis ben. leg, Bein, n. (-es; -e). lemonade, Limonabe, f. (-n). lend, leihen, 120. lesson, Aufgabe, f. (-n); Lettion, f. (-cn). let, laffen, 188. letter (of alphabet), Buchs ftabe, m. (-ns; -n); (epistle), Brief, m. (-es; -e). liar, Lügner, m. (-5; --). library, Bibliothet', f. (-en). lie (be recumbent), liegen 181; - down, fich binlegen. life, Leben, n. (-3; --). lighten (flash), bligen. lightning, Blit, m. (-es; -e). like, mögen, 196-202; gern haben, 24; I should -, ich möchte (gern); to - to learn, gern lernen: I music, ich bin ein Freund von Musit; how do you -

London? wie gefällt Ihnen Loubon ? lilv. Lilie, f. (-n). Limburg, adj., Limburger. lion, Löwe, (-n; -n). listen to, aubören (tr.). literature, Literatur', f. little (of size), ilein; (of quantity) wenig. live, leben ; (dwell), mobnen. living, le'bend, leben'dig. locality, Gegenb, f. (-en). London, London, m. (-3); adi., Londoner. long, adj., lang ("er); adv., Iange ("r); have you been here -? find Gie icon lange hier? he has not been here for a - time, er ift lange nicht hier gemes fen; three months -er, noch brei Monate; no -er (lit., not more), nicht mehr. long for, v., fich fehnen nach. look for, suchen, suchen nach; - like, ausschen (wie or mach), 181; it -s (appears, seems) like rain, es fieht nach Regen aus; - up, hinauffeben, 181. lose, perlieren, 131. lost, verloren. loud, -ly, laut. Louisa, Louise f. (-ns). love, v., lieben. lower, unter, nieber (adjs.). M. magnificent, prächtig. majesty, Majestät', f. (-en).

make, machen. man, Mann, m. (-es; "er); - (human being), Menich, m. (-en; -en); -kind, Menich, m.; men (soldiers), Solbaten ; little -, Mann= Iein. n. (-3: -). manikin, Männlein, n. (-3; —).

manner, Beife; in that -, auf bie Beife. many, viele; - a, - a one, mander, mande, mandes. March, März, m. (-es). Margaret, Margarete, f. (-ns). market, Martt, m. (-cs; #e). marriage (-ceremony), Traus una. f. (-en). married, perheiratet. marry, beiraten, verheiraten (fich mit). marsh, Sumpf, m. (-es; "e). Mary, Marie, f. (-ns). matter, Sache, f. (-n); what is the -? was giebts? was ift log? what is the -- with you? mas fehlt Ihnen? May (month of), Mai, m. (-es or -en). may, v., burfen ; tonnen ; mögen, 196-202. mayor, Bürgermeifter, m. (-3: -). me, mich (acc.), mir (dat.). mean; in the - time, unters beffen; by -s of, vermits telft; vermöge, gen., 223. mean, v., meinen; to - to, intend to, wollen, 196-202. meat, Fleisch, n. (-es). meet, v., begegnen (dat.; fein); to go to -, entge. gen geben (188; dat.). meeting, Berfammlung, f. (-en). mental, geistig. merchant, Raufmann, m. (-es; -leute). mere, -ly, bloß.

merry, merrily, luftig.

-n).

(-es; -e).

messenger, Bote, m. (-n;

metal, Detall', n. (-es; -e).

microscope. Mitroftop', n.

middle, Mitte, f .; in the -

of summer, mitten im Sommer.

mile, Meile, f. (-n). milk, Mild, f.

mine, meiner, meine, meines: ber, bie, bas meine; ber, bie, bas meinige.

minute, Minute, f. (-n); --hand, Minutenzeiger, m. (-3; --).

misfortune, Ungliid, n. (-es).

Miss (young lady), Fraulein, m. (-B; --). mistake, Fehler, m. (-3;

mock, fpotten (gen. or über + acc.).

moisten, beneten.

moment, Augenblid, m. (-es; -e).

monarch, Monardy', m. (-en;

Monday, Montag, m. (-8; -e).

money, Gelb, n. (-es; -er). month, Monat, m. (-es; -e); a - ago, por einem Mos nat.

more, mehr; noch; one -, noch einer.

morning, Morgen, m. (-es; -); in the -, bes Mor= gens; good -, guten Mor= gen.

mostly, meistens.

mother, Mutter, f. (").

mountain, Berg, m. (-es; -e).

mourning, Trauer, f.

Mr., Serr, m. (-n; -en). much, viel; very -, fehr;

as -, eben fo viel. music, Musit', f.

musician, Mu'siter, m. (-3;

must, müffen, 196-202. my, poss. adj., mein, meine, mein (also expressed by noise, Lärm, m. (-e5).

dat. of pers. pron. + def. art.). myself (I), (ich) felbit.

name, subst., Name, m. (-ns; -n); nennen, v., oo: what is the - of? wie heift? what is your -? mie beifen Sie?

nation, Nation, f. (-en). native town, Geburtsftabt, f. ("e).

natural, natürlich.

naughty, unartia.

near, prep., neben (dat. or acc.; 65).

necessity, Not. f.

need, v., brauchen; be in - of, bebürfen (196; gen. or acc.); in - of, bedürf= tig (gen.).

neglect, v., vernachläffigen. neighbour, Nachbar, m. (-3; -11); - (fem.), Nachbarin (-nen).

neither, weber; - ... nor, weber . . . noch.

nest, Neft, n. (-es: -er). never, nie; niemals; - yet, noch nie.

new, neu.

news, Nachricht, f. (-en). newspaper, Beitung, f. (-en). next, nächft (see nahe).

Niagara Falls, bie Migggras Mälle.

niece, Nichte, f. (-11). night, Nacht, f. ("e); at -,

nachts, bes Machts.

no, adj., fein, feine, fein: adv., nein; -body, person, niemand, feiner, feine, feines; - more, longer, nicht mehr ; -. thank you, ich bante (3h= nen).

noble, ebel.

noon, Mittag, m. (-es; -e). north, Nord, m. (-es) ; Nors ben, m. (-3).

not, nicht; - a, fein, feine, fein; - yet, noch nicht; at all, gar nicht; are (you, etc.) -? nicht mabr?

nothing, nichts. notwithstanding, ungeachtet,

gen., 223. novel, subst., Roman', m. (-es; -e).

November, Movember, m. (-3).

now, jest.

nowhere, nirgenbs. nut, Muß, f. ("e).

oak, Giche, f. (-n). obey, gehorchen (dat.).

oblige, verbinben, 144; be -d or compelled (to), müffen.

occasion, subst., Belegenheit, f. (-en); v., verurfachen.

o'clock, Uhr (invariable); what - is it? wie viel Uhr ift es -

of (231), von, dat., 46, 231; (material) aus, dat., 46; (cause) an, dat.; 231, (d); the treaty - Paris, ber Bertrag ju Paris; the battle - Waterloo, bie Schlacht bei Baterloo; - the Alma. an der Alma.

off, ab.

offer, bieten, 131, dat, of pers.; anbieten, 131, dat. of bers.

officer, Offizier, m. (-es;

often, oft ("er), oftmals, mandmal.

oh! D! oh!

old, alt ("er).

on, 232, auf, an, dat. or acc., 65; (of time) an, dat., 232, (a); (about) über, acc., 65.

once, einmal.

one, eins; ein, eine, ein; the small —, ber, bie, bas Rleine; — and the same, eins; — and a half, cus berthalb.

only, nur; (of time) erft; not — . . . but also, nicht nur . . . fondern auch.

open, adj., offen; v., auf= machen.

opinion, Meinung, f. (-en). opportunity, Gelegenheit, f. (-en).

oppressive, briidenb.

or, ober; three — four, brei bis vier; either . . . -, entweber . . . ober; else, fonft.

orator, Rebner, m. (-\$; —).
order, v. (command), bes
fehlen, 167, dat. of pers.;
(prescribe), verordnen; bes
ftellen.

other, ander; every — day, einen Tag um ben andern. otherwise, sonst; anders.

our, adj., unser, unsere, unser.

ours, pron., unfer, unfere, unferes; ber, bie, bas unfere; ber, bie, bas unfrige.

out of, aus (dat.; 46); — — (or at) the window, zum Fenster hinaus.

over, über (dat. or acc.; 65);
— there, — the way, brüsben.

overcoat, Ü'berrock, m. (-es; ue); Ü'berzieher, m. (-s; own, adj., eigen.

### ۲.

paint, malen; to — (other than pictures), anstreichen,

painter, Maler, m. (-&; -).
painting (art of), Malerei', f.
palace, Palafi!, m. (-e8; \_e); Schloß, n. (-e8; \_er).
pale, bleich.
paper, Papier, n. (-e8: -e);

news—, Zeitung, f. (-en). paradise, Paradise, f. (-es). pardon, Berşeitung, f. parents, Eltern, fl. only. Paris, Parisf, n. (von Paris). Paris, adj. (= Parisian), Barifer.

part, Teil, m. (-es, -e); for the most —, meistens, meistenteils.

party, Gefellfdaft, f. (-en).
pass, v., fr., (of time, to
spend, etc.), zubringen
(99, 2); — (an examination), bestehen, 186; intr.,
vergehen (188, 2, sein);
verssiehen (123; sein); —
through, burchtommen
(167; fein).

passing, adj., vorübergehen.
past, vergangen, vorüber,
vorbei; to go — the house,
am hause vorübergehen,
vorbeigehen.

patient, Rrante, adj. subst., m. f.

pay, bezahlen (acc. of thing, dat. of pers.; acc. of pers. when pers. only is mentioned); — attention, Act geben; — a visit, einen Bejuch machen (dat. of pers.); bejuchen (acc. of pers.).

paying (action of), Bezahlen, n. (-8).

peace, Friede(n), m. (-ns). pear, Birne, f. (-n).

peasant, Bauer, m. (-n or -3; -n).

pen, Feber, f. (-n).
people (pl.), Leute, pl. (no
sing.); — (indef.), man;

— say, man fagt; —, nation, Bolt, (-es; "er).
pepper, Pfesser, m. (-s).
perfect, —ly, ganz, volls tommen.

perhaps, vielleicht'.
permission, Erlaubnis, f.
permit, erlauben (dat. of
pers.).

person, Person', f. (-en).
personal, personalid).

philosopher, Philosoph', m. (-en; -en).
physician, Arat, m. (-es; "e).

pick up, aufheben, 131. picture, Bilb, n. (-cs; -er); Gemälbe, n. (-s; -).

piece, Stüd, (-es; -e).
pigeon, Taube, f. (-n).
pinch, kneisen, 118.
pity, v., bedauern; it is a —,

es ift schabe.
place, subst., Plat, m. (-cs;
"e); Ort, m. (-cs; -e or
"er); to take —, stattsins
ben, 144; in that —, ba,

place, v., stellen, seţen. plant, Pflanze, f. (-n). plate, Teller, m. (-š; —). play, v., spielen. pleasant, angenehm.

bafelbft, bort(en).

please, gefallen (188; dat.); (if you) please, (ich) bitte, wenn ich bitten barf, ges fälligst.

pleasure, Bergnügen, n. (-5); —-trip, (short) excursion, Außflug, m. (-extrip, einen Ausflug mas hen.

plum, Pflaume, f. (-n).
poem, Gedicht, n. (-e3; -c).
poet, Dichter, m. (-3; -).
point; cardinal — (of the
compass), himmeldgegend,
f. (-en); to be upon the —
of, im Begriffe fein.

434 poison, subst., Gift, n. (-es; 1 -e); v., vergiften. policeman, Polizeidiener, m. (-s; -); Schutmann, m. (-es: -leute). poor, arm ("er). position, Stelle, f. (-n); Stellung. f. (-en). possess, besiten, 181. possible, möalid. post, -- office, Post, f. -- man, Poftbote, m. (-n; -n); by return -, mit umgehender Poft. postage-stamp, Briefmarte. f. (-n). postpone, auffchieben, 131. pound, Pfund, n. (-es). power, Rraft, f. ("e). praise, v., loben; preifen, pray, v., beten; interi .. bitte! precise, -ly, genau. prefer, vorziehen, 131; I to walk, ich gehe lieber. prepare; to - for, fich pors bereiten auf (acc.). presence, Gegenwart, f. present, adj., gegenwärtig; for the -, für's Erfte. present, subst., Beident, n. (-es:-e). president, Brafibent', m. (-en; -en). press, v., bringen, 144. pretty, hübsch, schön; adv. (tolerably), ziemlich.

prevent, verhinbern.

-ie).

-en).

167.

price, Preis, m. (-es; -e).

Pring, m. (-en; -en).

prince, Türft, m. (-en; -en);

prison, Gefängnis, n. (-fes;

probable, probably, wahr=

professor, Professor, m. (-5;

promise, v., verfprechen,

scheinlich; probably, wohl.

propose, poricilagen, 186. proud (of), ftolk (auf + acc.). proverb, Sprichwort, m. (-es; "er). province, Proving, f. (-en). prudent, vorsichtig. Prussia, Breuken, n. (-3). Prussian, subst., Breuge, m. (-n; -n).public, öffentlich. punish, beftrafen, ftrafen. punishment, Strafe, f. (-n). pupil, Schüler, m. (-3; -). pure, rein. put on (coat, etc.), angieben, 131; - - (hat), auf= feten.

## Q.

quality, Eigenichaft, f. (-en). quarrel, v., ftreiten, 118; fich ftreiten (mit). quarter, Biertel, n. (-3; -); - of ar. hour, Biertel= ftunde, f. (-n). queen, Konigin, f. (-nen). quick, -ly, fcnell; quickly, flugs. quit, v., verlaffen, 188. quite, ganz.

## R.

railway-station, Bahnhof, m. (-es: "e). rain, subst., Regen, m. (-3); v., regnen. raise, heben, 131. rather, eher, lieber. raven, Rabe, m. (-n; -n). read, lefen, 181; to - to, porlefen (dat.). reading (act of), Lefen, n. ready, fertig, bereit; readily, leicht. reason, Grund, m. (-es; "e). receive (get), erhalten, 188; betommen, 167; - (as a

host), aufnehmen, 167, by receiving, burch Nehmen. recover (from illness), ges nefen (181 ; fein). red, adi., rot ("er); subst.. Rot. n. Reformation, Reformation. f. (-en). refuse, intr., fich weigern. regard, ansehen (181; für + acc.); betrachten (als). regret; I regret, es thut mir reign, Regierung, f. (-en). relate, erzählen. related, verwandt (dat. or mit). rely upon, sich verlassen (188: auf + acc.). remain, bleiben (120; fein); - at home, - behind, Aus riidbleiben; - over, fibrig bleiben ; - standing, fteben (186) bleiben. remarkable, merfwürbig. remember, fich erinnern (gen.); I wish to be -ed to him, ich laffe ihn grus remind of, erinnern an (+ rent, v., vermieten. [acc.). repeat, wieberho'len. reply, subst., Antwort, f. (-en). reply, v., antworten, ermis bern, perfeten. report, v., berichten. representation, Borftellung, f. (-en). resemble, ähnlich fein (dat.); gleichen (118; dat.). reside, mohnen. resist, miberfte'hen (186;

dat.).

(188) legen.

resolve, v., fich entichließen,

rest; all the -, alle anbern;

retire to -, fich ichlafen

return, pergelten (159); good for evil, vergelte Bos fes mit Gutem; by - of post, mit umgehenber Boft, umgehenb. reward, subst., Lohn, m. (-es). rheumatism, Mheumatismus, m. (bes -). ribbon, Banb, n. (-es; "er). rich (in), reich (an + dat.). rid. los: to get - of, los werben (+ gen. or acc.). ride, reiten (118); (in a conveyance), fahren (186). riding (act of; not in a convevance), Reiten, n. (-3). right (adj.), recht, (correct), richtig; in the - way, auf

Recht, n. (-es; -e); to be (in the) -, Recht haben. righteous, gerecht; the -(man), ber Berechte.

bie richtige Beife; subst.,

ring, subst., Ring, m. (-es; -e); -, v., läuten (of a large bell), flingeln (of a small bell); there is a -at the door, es flingelt. ripe, reif.

rise (get up), auffteben, (186; fein); (ascend), auffteigen (120; fein).

river, Tlug, m. (-es; "e). road, Beg, m. (-es; -e); Strafe, f. (-n).

Roman, Römer, m. (-3; -). room (apartment), Stube, f. (-n); Zimmer, n. (-3; -).

rose, Rose, f. (-n). row, v., rubern.

run, laufen (188; fein); after, nachlaufen (188; fein; dat.); - away, bas von'laufen.

Russia, Rugland, n. (-8). Russian, subst., Ruffe, m. (-n; -n).

sad, traurig. safe, ficher. sailing-ship, Segelfciff, n. (-e3: -e). sale; for -, su vertaufen. same, adi. and pron., ber, bie. basielbe: ber. bie. badfelbige; ber, bie, bas nämliche; at the - time, ju gleicher Beit; all the -, one and the -, einerlei. Sarah. Sara, f. (-3). satisfied, aufrieben. Saturday, Connabenb, m. (-es; -e); Samstag, m. (-e3; -e). save, retten: I -d his life, ich rettete ihm bas Leben. say, fagen; to hear -, fagen hören: (assert, claim to be), mollen (196-202); to be said, follen (196-202). scholar (pupil), Schüler, m. (-3; -), school, Schule, f.(-n); -boy, Schüler, m. (-3; -). scold, ichelten, 159. Scotland, Schottland, n. (-3). scream, ichreien, 120. search (for), suchen. seat one's self, sit down, fich feten. second, num. adj., zweite. second (of time), subst, Se= cunbe, f. (-n). secret, -ly, gebeim, beim= lich. see, feben, 181. seek, inden. seem, icheinen, 120. self, felbft. sell, verkaufen.

fdiden nach.

September. September, m. (-3). servant, Diener, m. (-3; -); Dienstbote, m. (-n; -n); Magb, f. ("e). serve, bienen (dat.); - (of a meal), fervieren. set, tr. (of a time-piece), ftels Ien: intr. (of the sun), un's tergeben (188; fein); free, befreien. settler, Unfiedler, m. (-3; -). seven, fieben. several, einige; etliche; mehrere. shake, schütteln. shall, follen (196-202). she, fie. shield, Schilb, m. (-es; -e). ship, Schiff, n. (-es; -e). shoe. Schuh, m. (-es; -e). shoemaker, Schufter, m. (-3: -); Schuhmacher, m. (-3; —). shoot, ichiegen, 123. shop, Laben, m. (-3; "). shore, Ufer, n. (-3; --). short, fura; -ly, nächftens. shout, fdreien, 120. show, zeigen. shutter, Laben, m. (-5; -). shy, intr. (of horses), fcheu merben, 159. sick, frant; the - (man), ber Arante. side, Seite, f. (-11); on this - of, prep., biesfeit (gen.; 223); on that - of, prep., jenfeit (gen.; 223); on this -, adv., biesfeits; on that -, adv., jenfeits. sign, subst., Beichen, n. (-3; -); v., unterzeich'nen. silence, Schweigen, n. (-3). send, ichiden; - to, ju= fciden; - word to, be= silent, ftumm. nadrichtigen (acc. of pers.); silly, einfältig. silver, Gilber, n. (-3). - for, holen laffen (188),

since (241, 12), prep., feit,

dat., 46; adv., feitbem; ] coni .. ba. sing, fingen, 144. singer, Gangerin, f. (-nen). single, einzig. sink, finten, 144. sister. Schwefter, f. (-n). sit, figen (181; fein); down, sich feten; - up, remain up, aufbleiben, 120. six. feche. skate, v., Schlittidub laufen, 188. skill, Geididlichteit, f. slave, Eflave, m. (-n; -n). slav, töten. sleep, v., schlafen, 188; subst., Schlaf, m. (-es). sleighing, Schlittenbahn, f. (-en). slipper, Bantoffel, m. (-3; -n). slow, -ly, langfam. small, flein. smelt, fdmelzen, 124. smile, v., lächeln; subst., Lächeln, n. (-3). sneak, ichleichen (118; fein). snow, subst., Schnee, m. (-3); v., schneien. so, fo; - are we, wir finb es auch. soldier, Solbat', m. (-en; -en). some, einige, etliche, welche, manche; etwas; irgend ein. eine, ein; - one, -body, jemanb, -thing, -what, etwas; -where, ir jenb= mo: - of it, bavon; fortime (past), feit einiger Reit. son, Sohn, m. (-es; "e); little -, Söhnchen, n. (-6; **—**).

song, Lieb, n. (-es; -er).

as, jobalb.

soon, bald (comp. eher,

superl. am eheften); as -

Sophia, Cophie, f. (-ns). sorry: I am -. es ift mir leib, es thut mir leib. sound, -ly, feft. sour, fauer. South, Süb(en), m. (-3). Spain, Spanien, n. (-3). speak, fprechen, 167, reben; - with or to, fpreden (acc. of pers.). speaking (act of), Sprechen, n. (-3). spectacles (pair of), Brille, f. (-n). speech, Rebe, f. (-n). spite; in - of, trot (gen.; 223, 16). spoil, v. tr., verleiben. sport; to make - of any one, fich über jemanb(en) (acc.) luftig machen. spread out, sich verbreiten. spring, v., fpringen (144; fein); subst., Frühling, m. (-cs: -e). square (in a town), Plat, m. (-e3; "e). St. Lawrence, Sanct Lorenz, m. stand, fteben, 186. start (for), abreifen (nach). state (condition), Buftanb, m. (-es; "e). statesman, Staatsmann, m. (-es: -männer). stav, bleiben (120; fein); up, aufbleiben; - away, fortbleiben. steal, ftehlen, 167. steam-engine. Dampfmafci= ne, f. (-n). steamer, Dampfichiff, n. (-es; -e). steel, Stahl, m. (-e3). stick, subst., Stod, m. (-es; "e). still, adv., noch, boch; noch immer. sting, fteden, 167.

stocking, Strumpf, m. (-cg: He). stop, v. intr., aufhören. storm, Sturm, m. (-es; "e). story, Beichichte, f. (-n). stove. Dfen. m. (-3: "). stranger, Frembling, m. (-es; -e): Frembe (adi. subst.). stream, Strom, m. (-es; "e). street, Strafe, f. (-n). strong, ftarf ("er). student, Stubent', m. (-en: -en). study, subst., Stubium, n. (-6: Stubien): (room). Stubierzimmer, n. (-6; -); v., ftubieren: - (prepare) for, fich porbereiten auf (+ acc.). studying (act of), subst., Stus bieren. n. (-3). submit, fich untermer'fen,150. subscribe, unterfchrei'ben, succeed, gelingen, impers., 144; I -, es gelingt mir. such, fold, folder, foldes; fo. sudden, -ly, plöglich. suffer, leiben, 118. suffice, genügen (dat.). sufficient, hinreichenb. summer, Sommer, m. (-5; sun, Sonne, f. (-n); - -dial, Sonnenuhr, f. (-en); --set, Sonnenuntergang, m. (-es). Sunday, Sonntag, m. (-es; support, unterftüh'en. sure, ficher; to be -, freis lid; zwar. Switzerland, bie Schweiz (ber Schweiz).

## T.

table, Tijch, m. (-es; -e) tailor, Schneider, m. (-s; -). take, nehmen, 167; - a walk, einen Spaziergang mas den: fpagieren geben, 188; - a voyage, eine Geereife machen; - up, (hin) auf= nehmen: - care, fich in Acht nehmen ; - place, ftattfinden, 144; - cold, fich erfälten.

talk, fprechen (167; mit). tall, groß ("er, superl. größt). tea, Thee, m. (-5).

teacher, Lehrer, m. (-3; -). tear (to pieces), gerreißen,

telegram, subst., Depefche, f. (-11).

tell, fagen (dat. of pers. or au); eraählen (dat. of pers.).

teller, Ergähler, m. (-3; -). tempest, Sturm, m. (-es; #e).

ten, zehn.

terrible, -lv, fürchterlich. than, als; als bag.

thank, banten (dat.); no -

vou, ich bante (Ihnen). that, demonstr. adj., biefer, biefe, biefes; jener, jene, jenes; rel. pron., ber, bie, bas: welcher, welche. welches; demonstr. pron.,

ber, bie, bas; conj., baß. the, ber, bie, bas; adv., je, befto; um fo.

their, ihr, ihre, ihr.

them (acc.), fie; (dat.) ihnen. then, bann; since -, feits

there, ba; - is, - are, es ift, es finb; es giebt, 220.

therefore, barum. thereupon, barauf.

they, fie, es; (indef.), man. thief, Dich, m. (-es; -e).

thin, bünn.

think, benfen, 99, 2; - of, benfen, gen. or an + acc.; (believe), glauben; I should | towards, gegen (acc.; 34).

- so, ich follte es meinen: | - highly of, esteem, etc., viel halten (188) pon.

third, britte.

thirst, Durft, m. (-eg). thirsty, burftig; to be -. Durft haben.

thirty, breifig.

this, adj. and pron., biefer, biefe, biefes.

those, biejenigen; bie; jene. though, obaleich.

thousand, taufenb: subst .. Taufend, n. (-es; -e). three, brei.

through, burth, acc.; 34. throw, werfen, 159; fcmeis

Ben, 118; - away, meg= merfen. thunder-storm, Gemitter, n.

(-\$: --). Thursday, Donnerstag, m.

(-es; -e).

tie, binben, 144. till, bis, 34.

time, Beit, f. (-en); (occasion), Mal, n. (-es; -e); what - is it? wie viel Uhr ift es? for the third -, jum britten Male; at the right -, rechtzeitig; at the same -, ju gleicher Beit.

tired, mübe. title, Titel, m. (-5; -).

to, 233, 34 (dat.; 46); (with names of places) nach (dat .; 46); an, auf, in (acc.; 65, 233, 2); - the concert, ins Ronzert; (before inf.) zu, 272-274; (of purpose) um gu, 273.

to-day, heute.

to-morrow, morgen; - morning, morgen früh. too, zu; (also), auch.

top, Gipfel, m. (-3; -). tortoise, Schilbfrote, f. (-n).

town, Stabt, f. ("e); -- hall, Rathaus, n. (-es: "er).

tragedy, Trauerfpiel, n. (-es: -e); Tragobie, f. (-n).

train (on a railway), Rug, m. (-es: "e): Boston -. ber Bug von (nach) Bofton.

translate, überfet'en. transparent, burch'sichtig. travel, reifen (haben, fein).

traveller, Reifenbe, adi. subst.

treasure, Schat, m. (-es: "e). treaty, Bertrag, m. (-es: ще).

tree, Baum, m. (-e3: "e): little -, Bäumden, n. (-3; --).

triumph, Triumph', m. (-es:

true, mahr ; (faithful), treu (dat.).

trunk (of a tree), Baums ftamm, m. (-es; "e).

trust, v., trauen (dat.). truth, Wahrheit, f. (-en). trv, persuchen.

Tuesday, Dienstag, m. (-es:

two, zwei; beibe; - at a time, je zwei ; - and a half, brittehalb.

## U.

umbrella, Regenfdirm, m. (-es: -e).

uncle, Dheim, m. (-es; -e); Dutel, m. (-3; -).

under, unter (dat. or acc.; 65).

understand, begreifen, 118: verstehen, 186; to make one's self understood, fich verftänblich machen.

undertaking, Unterneh'men,  $n. (-\hat{g}).$ 

unfortunate, unglildlid: -ly. Iciber.

unhindered, ungehinbert.

United States (The), bie Berseinigten Staaten.

university, Universität', f. (-en).

until, conj., biš (baß).
untruth, Unwahrheit, f.(-en).
upon, auf (dat. or acc.; 65);
upper, ober.

up-stairs, oben, nach oben, hinauf.

use; of no —, un'nüţ. useful, nüţlid; the —, bas Nüţlide.

utmost, möglichft.

### $\mathbf{v}$ .

vainly, in vain, vergeblich; vergebens.

vailey, Thal, n. (-e3; "er). venture, v., wagen. verse, Ber3, m. (-e3; -e).

verse, Vers, m. (-e3; -e). very, fehr; recht; — much, fehr.

vex, ärgern; be —ed (at), fid ärgern (iber + acc.). victory, Sieg, m. (-e8; -e). village, Dorf, n. (-e8; "ev). vinegar, Effig, m. (-\$; -e). violet, Beilden, n. (-\$; -e). virtue, Tugenb, f. (-en).

visit, Vcfuch, m. (-es; -e); to be on a — at any one's, bei jemand auf Besuch sein; v., besuchen; einen Besuch abstatten, machen (dat. of

visitor; to have —s, Besuch

voice, Stimme, f. (-n). voyage, Reise, f. (-n), Sees reise, f. (-n).

### W.

wait for, warten auf (acc.).
waiter, Kellner. m. (-5; —).
walk, subst., Spaziergang,
m. (-c5; "c); take a —,
einen Spaziergang machen;
spazieren gehen, 188,

walk, v., gehen, 188; fpas

walking (act of), Gehen, n. (-3); Spazierengehen, n. (-3).

want, wünschen; wollen (196).
wanting; to be —, schlen
(dat.), mangeln (dat.).

(dat.), mangeln (dat.). war, Krieg, m. (-es; -e).

warm, —ly, warm ("er). warning, Warnung, f. (-en).

waste, verschwenben. watch, subst., Uhr, f. (-en);

Taschenuhr, f. (-en); v., bewachen.

watchful, wachfam.

watch-key, Uhrschlüffel, m. (-3; —).

water, Baffer, n. (-3; —). waver, jchwanken.

way, Beg, m. (-es; -e); (manner), Beije, f. (-11); in this --, auf biese Beise.

we, wir.
weak (in), schwach (an +

dat.). wear, v. intr. (of clothes), fict

tragen, 186. weather, Better, 2. (-2); in fine —, bei schönem Bets ter.

Wednesday, Mittwody, m. (-3).

week, Woche, f. (-n); acht Tage; for a — past, seit acht Tagen.

weigh, intr., wiegen, 131. welcome, willtom'men.

well, pred. adj., wohl, ges fund; adv., gut; as — as, fowohl als; — known, bes fannt.

West, Best(en), m. (-3). wet, nag ("er).

what, interrog. pron., was? interrog. adj., welcher, welche, welches; — kind of, was für (ein, eine, ein); rel. pron. (= that which), was; — a! welch! — is that in German? wie heißt bas auf Deutsch?

when, interrog., wann? 3u welcher Beit? conj., wenn; als. 58.

where, wo.

whether, ob.

which, interrog. adj., wels der, welche, welches; rel. pron., welcher, welche, wels des; ber, bie, bas; that —, was.

while, whilst, mahrend (bag), inbessen.

whistle, pfeifen, 118.

white, weiß.

who, interrog., wer? rel. pron., welcher, welche, wels ches; ber, bie, bas; he—, the one—, wer.

whole, ganz; the - of, ganz.

whom, wen (acc.), wem (dat.).

whose, interrog., wessen? rel., bessen, m. n. sing.; beren, f. sing.; pl.

why, warum? weshalb? wide, breit.

will, wollen, 196-202.

William, Wilhelm, m. (-3). willing; to be —, wollen,

196. wind, Wind, m. (-e3; -e). wind up, aufziehen, 131. window, Fenster, n. (-5; -).

windy, windig. wine, Bein, m. (-es; -e). wing, Flügel, m. (-s; --).

wing, Flügel, m. (-5; —). winter, Winter, m. (-5; —). wise, weise; \*\*Iug ("er).

wish (for), wünschen. with, 234, mit (dat.; 46); bet (dat.; 46).

without, ohne (acc.; 34).
witty, wigig.
wolf. Molf. m. (-es: "e)

wolf, Wolf, m. (-e3; "e). woman, Frau, f. (-en).

wonder, Wunber, n. (-\$; —); I —, es wunbert mich, ich wunbere mich; — of the world, Weltwunber, n. (-\$; —).

wood, Walb, m. (-es; "er).
word, Wort, n. (-es; -e or
"er); to send —, benachs
richtigen.

work (labour), Arbeit, f. (-en); (thing done), Bert, n. (-es; -e); v., arbeiten.

world, West, f. (-en); in the —, auf ber West.
worth, adj., wert; — while,

ber Mühe wert. wound, v., verwunden. wring, ringen, 144.
write (to), schreiben (120;
dat. or an + acc. of pers.).
writing (act of), Schreiben, n.

wrong; to be (in the) -, Uns recht haben.

### Y.

yard (measure), Elle, f. (-n). year, Jahr, n. (-es; -e). yellow, gelb. yes, ja.

yesterday, ge'stern; —'s, von gestern, gestrig. yet, noch; not —, noch nicht.

yonder, bork

you, 38, 40, ihr; Sie; bu; euch; Sie; bich.

young; jung; — man, Jüngs ling, m. (-es; -e).

your, 40, 43, euer, eure, euer; bein, beine, bein; Ihr, Ihre, Ihr.

yours, ber, bie, bas eure, eus rige; ber, bie, bas Jure, Jhrige; ber, die, bas beine, beinige; eurer; beiner; Jhrer.

youth (time of), Jugend, f.; (young man), Jüngling, m. (-es; -e).

# INDEX.

\*\* The references are to the sections and subsections, unless otherwise specified; N. = Note; R. = Remark; O. = Observation; p. = page.

Abbreviations, p. 404. aber, conj., 236.

Ablaut, 105, R., 110.

'About,' how rendered in Germ., 226.

Absolute accusative, 255; absolute superlative, of adjs., 127, 2; of advs., 190, 4-6.

Abstract substs., take article, 44, 1 (δ); plural of, 66, 3; App. H.

Accentuation, p. 10; in compound verbs, 117, 3, 204, 205, 3, 208, 209, 212; of compound adv. prefixes, 206, 2, N. 1.

Accusative, use of, 3, 252-255; place of, 296, 4; after preps., 34, 50, 65, 223, 19, R. 2; expresses time, 184,1; measure, 185, 4; after reflexive verbs, 216; after impers. verbs, 217, 2, (a), 219, 220; after adjs., replacing gen., 244, R. 1, 2; double acc., 253; after intrans. verbs, 254; cognate acc., 254, 1; adverbial acc., 255; absolute acc., 255, 2; before advs. of direction, 224, 1.

Address, modes of, 40, 43, 47.

Adjects, place of, 296, 1, 297, R. 1.

Adjectives, when spelt with a capital, pp. 11, 12; predi-

cative, not declined, 14. 100; place of, 18, 20, O. 3, 295, 296, 8; attributive, decl. of, 101; strong, 102, weak, 115, mixed, 116, table, 121, general remarks, 122; place of, 290, (b), N. 2, 298, 1, 299; indeclinable in ser. 122, 9: as advs., 122, 8; of colour, 122, 3; in sel, sen, ser, 122, 6; a succession of, 122, 5; after pers. prons., 122, 10; after indef. prous. and numerals, 122, 11, 12; after welche, 122, 13; used as substs., 122, 2; comparison of, 125-127; without Umlaut, App. L.; incapable of comparison, 161, N.; adis. used as attributes only, 160; as predicates only, 161; as prefixes to verbs, 206, 4, 212; governing gen, and acc., 244; dative, 251; preps., 291; possessive adjs., 43, 44, 6, (a); interrogative, 84-83; appositive adj., 290; concord, 288; derivation, by suffixes, 313; by prefixes, 316; composition, 320.

Adverbial clauses, 306.

Adverbial conjunctions, coördinating, 237; throw the subject after the verb, R. 1. Adverbial expressions, place of, 45, 297.

Adverbs, 187; place of, 45, 297; formation, 182, (a), 183, (c), 189; comparison, 128, 190; numeral adverbs, 182, 183; idiomatic uses of certain adverbs, 195; advs. with an accusative, 224, 1; with preps., 224, 3, 4.

age, substs. in, gender, 89,2, (e).

Agent, with passive, 112, R. 3.

al, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

'all' expressed by gang, 170, 1; 'at all,' 157.

allein, conj., 236, 241, 1.

aller, -e, -e\$, 169; after before superlatives, 127, 1, N.; aftes of a number of persons or things, 162, 2; before adjs., 122, 12.

Alphabet, German, pp. 1, 5

alŝ, conj., 239, 3 (b); after a comparative, 126, 1; cistinguished from weum and wann, 58, 241, 6, 8; 'but,' 241, 19; alŝ clause replaces Engl. part. of time, 284, 1, (a); introducing an apposition, 289, 6; with comparative clauses, 306, R. 4.

als bag, after adjs. with su, 273. N.

als ob, als wenn, 239, 3, (b), and R. 4.

am, before a superl., 127, 1, (b), 128, 190, 3.

an, prep., 65; expresses date, 184, 2, (a); of locality, 227, (a), 2, 232, (c), 2, 233, (c), 2; of cause, with diseases, 231, (c); with names of battles, 231, (d), 2; after verbs and adjs., 244, 245, 1, 291, 6, 8, 9, 12.

ean, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

anber, ordinal numeral, 166, 1, N.; anberfeits, 238; anberthalb, 183, (b), R. 2. angefichts, 223, 20.

aniftatt, 223, 14; governing an infin. or baß clause, 276. 'any,' how rendered in Ger-

man, 2, 2, 157, 180.

Apposition, appositive substantive, 289; participle, 280, (δ), 281, R. 3; adjective or participle, 290; clauses, 304.

•ar, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

Article, not used before words in partitive sense, 2, 2; definite, declension, 4; agreement, 5, 1; repetition of, 5, 2; use, 44; contraction with preps., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; with proper names, 44, 2, 3, 78, 76, 2, 5, 78; for poss. adj., 44, 6.

Article, indefinite, declension, 9; use, 44, 4, 5.

Aryan languages, 322, 2, 3. 'as,' how rendered in Germ., 162, 4, 241, 8-11.

Associatives, how formed, 815, 2, (3).

saft, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

=at, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 2, 6.

'at,' of time of day, 184, 3, (c); how rendered in Germ., 227; after verbs, etc., 291, 1.

'at all'; see 'all.'
Attributive adj., see Adjective.

aud), adv., after rel. prons., 96, 6, idiomatic use of, 195, 9; conj., 236, 237, R. 2, 238.

auf, prep., 65; with abs. superl. of advs., 190, 6; of locality, 227, (a), 3, 230, (a), 232, (c), 233, (c), 2; of future time, 229, (b), 2; after adjs. and verbs, 245, 1, 291, 2, 7, 10; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (b). auf baß, 239, 3, (b), 268, 3. aut, prep., 46; of cause, 229, (c).

außen, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

außer, prep., 46. außerhalb, 223, 3.

äußerst, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4. Auxiliary is verb in com-

pound tenses, 26, 32.

Auxiliary verbs of mood, see
'Modal Auxiliaries.'

Auxiliary verbs of tense, 25, 53; place of, with Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 3; omitted in dependent clauses, 287.

balb, comperison of, 190; balb . . . balb, 238. \*bar, suffix of adjs., 313, 1. 'be,' with p. part., how rendered in Germ., 112, R. 5. be, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning of, 314, 1.

bei, prep., 46; = 'with,'

'about,' 226, (d); of time, 227, (b), 3; idioms, 228, (b), (c), 232, (d); of battles, 231, (d), 1.

beibe, beibes, 165, 3. beifen Model, 118.

bevor, 241, 13, 14.

binnen, 51, 1.

bis, prep., 34, 50, 4; conj., 239, 3, (b).

bleiben Model, 120. Blume Model, 56.

'both . . . and,' 238.

'but,' rendered by als, **241,** 19.

'by,' with passive, 112, R. 3; how rendered in Germ., 228.

Capitals, use of, p. 11; 122, 2, 9, N., 11, O.

Calling, verbs of, 242, 3, 253; with p. part., 281, 6.

Cardinal numerals, 163,165; gender as substs., 80, 2, (c), 165, 10.

Cases, use of, 8; syntax of, 242-255; place of, 296.

Cause, adverbial expressions of, 284, 1,  $(\delta)$ , 306, R. 2; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.

### add to the control of the contro

Choosing, verbs of, 242, 3, N., 253.

Clauses, conditional, 59, 267, 293, (a), 3; proportional, see 'Comparative clauses,' below; dependent, preceding principal, 293, (b), R. 4, 294, (b), R. 2, 306; with benn, 241, 18, 293, (c), R. 4; incomplete or elliptical, 299; order of clauses, 302-306; apposi-

tive, 304; relative, 305; subjective, objective, adverbial, 306.

Cognate accusative, 254, 1. Collectives, declension of those with prefix Ges, 16, 17. 2; gender, 89. 3. (d): concord of with verb, 285, R. 4; formation, 315, 2, (a).

Colour, adjs. of, used as substs., 122, 3,

Comma, before dependent sentences, 98, 3, N., 301, N. 5: before infin. clauses. 273, R. 2.

Comparative degree, 125. 126; declension of, 126, 5. Comparative clauses, with befto, etc., 126, 4, 293,

(b), R. 4, N. 3; 306, R. 4 and N.

Comparison, of adjs., 125-130; of equality, 126, 3, 241, 8; irregular, 129; defective, 130; of advs., 128, 190; adjs. incapable of, 161, N.

Compass, points of, p. 104, top; gender, 80, 1, (c).

Complex sentences, 302-306.

Composition of words, 318-321; of numerals, 165, 5-7, 182, 183; of Verbs, 203-213; of substs., 319; of adjs., 320; of advs., 321.

Compounds, accentuation of, p. 11; how formed, 318-321: primary and secondary, 319, 1, N. 1, 2; spurious, 319, 2, N.

Compound substantives, of irregular declension, 68; of irregular gender, 90, 4, App. I., p. 388; how formed, 319.

Compound tenses, formation,

33.

Compound sentences, 302. Compound verbs, 203-213, separable, 109, 117, 205-207; inseparable, 35, R. 6, 109, 204; compounded with substs., 206, 3; with adjs., 206, 4, 212; separable and inseparable, 208; with double prefixes, 207, 213; with mife, 209; with her= and hin=, 210; from compound substs., 211.

Concord, of Subject and Verb. 285; other concords. 288.

Conditional clauses, 59, 239, R. 1, 2, 4, 267, 293, (a), 3, (b), R. 4, N. 1, 2; elliptical, 268, 2, N., 293, (c), R. 2; use of fo in, 59, N.; 293, (b), R. 4, N. 2.

Conditional conjunctions, 59, 239, R. 1, 2, 4,

Conditional mood, formation of tenses of, 25, 2, 3; shorter forms, 111, 112, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 4; use, 263, 267.

Conjugation of verbs; see "Verbs," "Modal Auxiliaries."

Conjunctions, 235-241; coördinating, proper, 236; not counted, 293, (b), R. 2; adverbial, 237, 293, (b), R.2; correlative, 238; place of, 298, 3.

Conjunctive Mood, see "Subjunctive."

Considering, verbs of, 242, 3, 253.

Consonants, pronunciation, p. 9, top; digraphs and trigraphs, pp. 5, 8, 14; doubling of, in verbs, 118, R. 1, 123, R. 1, 167, A., R.2, 181, O.6.

25, 108; construction, 26, | Construction of Sentences, 292-306; principal, 20. 26, 293, (b), 294, (b), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 2; dependent, 32, 33, 293, (c), 294, (c), 295, 2, 297, R. 2, 306; direct interrog., 23, 293, (a), 1, 294, (a), 295. 2. 300; indirect statements, 87, 293, (c), R. 1; indirect questions, 88; relative sentences, 98, 305; imperative, 293, (a), 2; of clauses with benn, 293, (c), R. 4; of incomplete clauses, 299; general remarks, 301; compound and complex, 302, 303; see also "Clauses," "Conditional clauses."

Contracted form of strong declension, 70, R. 3.

Contraction of def. art, and preps., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.

Coördinating Conjunctions, proper, 236, adverbial, 237, correlative, 238.

Copula, 292; place of, 293, 301, 1.

Correlative prons., 43, R. 3, 4; conjunctions, 238; clauses, 241, 9, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3.

Countries, names of, gender, 80, 3, (c); see also "Places, names of."

=b, suffix of substs., 312, 1. ba, adv., with prep. annexed, 38. R. 5. 142; conj., 239. 3, (b); various uses of, 241, 12, (d), 20; with preps., representing an infin. or bağ clause, 277; replaces Engl. part. of time and cause, 284.

bamit, conj., expresses purpose, 239, 3, (b), 268, 8.

of a number of persons or things, 162, 2,

baß, conj., omitted, 87, 3, 241, 3, 13, 266, R. 2; use, 239, (b), 241, 3; expressing purpose, 268, 3.

baß clauses governed by preps., 224, 2, (a); for infin., 272, R. 1, 275, 276, R. 2, 277.

Date, how expressed, 184, 2. (a).

Dative, use of, 3, 248; place of, 296, 4; ethical dat., 249; dat. after verbs, 250; after adjs., 251; after preps., 46, 51, 65, 223; after reflexive verbs, 216, 2; after impersonal verbs. 217, 2, (b), 219, 1; after fein and werben, 217, 2, (c); after interjections, 240. 4, (6).

bauchten, see beuchten, bun-

.be, subst. suffix, 312, 1.

Declension: see "Substantives," "Adjectives," "Pronouns," "Numerals."

Definite Article; see "Article."

Degrees of comparison; see "Comparison."

bem after fein, 250, (e), 268, 6,

Demonstrative pronouns; see "Pronouns."

benn, conj., 236; adv. conj., 237, 239, 241, 7, 18, 293, (c), R. 4.

bennoch, adv. conj., 237,

Dependent sentences; see "Construction," "Sentences."

Dependent questions: see "Construction," " Sentences," "Indirect questions."

bas before the verb fein, 141; | ber, bie, bas; see "Article. definite": demonst. pron... 132, 133, 135, 2, 140, 1, (a), (b), 142, 143, 1, 2; after mer, 162; relative pron., declension, 93; use, 95, 140, 2; replaced by mo before preps., 95, 2: used for wer, 306, R. 3, N.

bergleichen, rel. pron., 97; demonstr. pron., 139, 2,

beren, gen. pl. of demonstr. pron., when used, 133, 2, N.

Derivation, 307-317; of numerals, 182, 183; of advs., 189: see also "Adjective."

berjenige, 132, 135, 140, 1, (6).

bero. 49.

berfelb(ig)e, 132, 136; replaces poss, adjs, and pers. prons., 143, 2-4.

besgleichen, rel. pron., 97; demonst. pron., 139, 1; adv., 139, 1, N.

beffen, used for gen. of mel= ther, 95, 1, (a); precedes its case, 95, 3; of neut. pers. pron., 143, 1; for poss. adj., 143, 2. beffenungeachtet, adv. conj.,

237, 241, 21, befto, 126, 4, 237, 241, 2,

293, (b), R. 4, N. 3. beuchten, 99, 2.

biefer Model, 6.

biefer, declension, 6: use, 132, 134, 140, 1, (a), 141; replaces pers. prons.,143,3. oiesfeit(s), 223, 12, R.

Digraphs, consonantal, pp. 4, 8, 14.

Diminutives, gender, 89, 3, (a); formation, 312, 2; origin, 326, R. 2, (c). Diphthongs, pp. 4, 6, 14.

Direct objects, clause or neut. pron. as, 250, R. 2; infin. as. 272. R. 2: see also "Accusative," "Cases." "Object."

Direct questions; see also "Questions," "Interrogative Sentences."

Direction, expressed by hins and her= before verbs. 210; with an accusative. 224. 1.

Distance, measure of, 185, 4. bod, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 8; adv. conj., throws subj. after verb, 237, R. 3, 293. (b), R. 3; in questions. 300, 2, N. r.

Dorf Model, 36, 37; origin of Umlaut in, 326, R. 2,(b). Double Accusative, 253.

Gender, 91; App. J. 66 Plurals, 64: App. G.\*

Prefixes, 207, 210, 213.

Vowels, pp. 4, 6, 14: do not take Umlaut, p. 12.

brei, declension, 165, 2. bunten. 99. 2.

burd, prep., 34; prefix, 208. bürfen, conjugation of, 196-199; use, 200, 1.

e, in conjugation of verbs. 31, R. 1, 35, R. 2-4, 107, R. 1; in imperative, etc., 167, B., R. 3, 181, O. 4; in subjunctive, 31, R. 2, 107, O. 3; in dat. of substs., 21, (a), O. 4, 46. R. 2; in adjs., 102, R. 2, 122, 6, 125, R. 5, 6, 126, 5; in poss. adjs., 43, R. 2; in poss. prons., 119. (a) Obs., (c), N. 1: represents Umlaut of a, 326,

se, adjs. in, declension, 102.

R. 2; comparison, 125, R. 6. \*e, substs. in, declension, 54, 57, 1, 61; gender, 89, 2, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 4. eben, 195, 2. ebenjo, 237, 241, 8.

ebenfo, 237, 241, 8. the, conj., 241, 13, 14; comparison, 130.

ei, substs. in, gender, 89, 2,
(a); subst. suffix, 312, 5.
tin, see "Article, Indefinite."

tin, numeral, 163, 165, 1; with def. art., 165, 1, (c), sinanber, 42, 2. [and N. tiner, indef. pron., 145, 150; cardinal numeral, 163, 165, 1, (b). tinerfei, 182, (c), N.

einerlei, 182, (c), N einerfeits, 238.

einige, einiges, etliche, etlisches, indef. pron., 145, 152; numeral, 168, 173, 180; before adjs., 122, 12. einimal, 182, (a), N. 2, 3. eins in counting, 165, 1, (d). einst, 182, (a), N. 2; 187, 1, (e).

etl, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; fems. in, 57, R. 2; gender, 89, 1, (a), App. 1.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125, R. 6; subst. suffix, 312, 6. etl, verb-stems in, drop e, 35, R. 4.

selden, diminutive suffix, 312, 2, N. 2.

Elliptical constructions, 59, 239, R. 2, 4, 266, N. 4, 267, 6, N., 268, 2, N., 269, R. 6, 278, 293, (5), R. 4, N. 2, 299.

85, 'R. 4; formation, 311, 1.
sem, substs. in, declension, 16, 17, 69, 1; gender, 89, 1, (a).

emp., insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 2. en, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; gender, 89, 1, (a), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125, R. 6; not used as predicates, 160; advs. in, 189, 3; subst. suffix, 312,

7; adj. suffix, 313, 2. sen for ses in gen. sing. of adjs., 102, R. 1.

εend, substs. in, gender, 89,2, (δ); subst. suffix, 312,18.

Endings of weak verbs in simple tenses, 35; of strong do., 107; of substs., 70; of adjs., 121.

English, its relations to German, 322.

Enlarged form of strong declension, 70, 4.

sens, termination of advs., 183, (c), 189, 1, (d), 190, 7. ents, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 2. entgegen, 51, 2.

entlang, 223, 19, R. 2. entweber... ober, 238, 285, R. 6, N. 1.

en;, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

ers, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 3. set, substs. in, declension; 16, 17; fems. in, 57, R. 2, conder, \$9, 1 (s) App. I.

16, 17; fems. in, 57, R. 2, gender, 89, 1, (a), App. 1, 2 adjs. in, declension, 125, R. 6, 126, N.; subst. suffix, 312, 8.

ser, verb-stems in, drop e, 85, R. 4.

ser, Plural ending, 36; origin, 326, R. 2, (b).
serei, subst. suffix, 312, 5,

N. 2. sern, Adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; adj. suffix, 313, 2.

sern, Verbs in, conjugation, 35, R. 4; formation, 311, 2. erst, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 4.

erstens, adv., distinguished from querft, 195, 5, N. Erge, subst. prefix, 315, 1.

ető, neut. pron., uses of, 39; omission of, 113, 2, N.; for a number of persons or things, 162, 2; as subject of impersonal verbs, 217, 220, 2, R. 2, N.; after adjs. governing gen., 244, R. 1; representing a following infin., 272, R. 2, e8 giett, e8 ift, etc., 220,

es giebt, es ist, etc., 220.
essen Model, 181.

Ethical dative, 249. etliche; -e3, see einige. etwa, 187, III., 226, (c).

etwas, indef. pron., 145, 149; indef. numeral, 168, 177; before adjs., 122, 11.

'even,' rendered by felbft, 42,
3, R.

'ever,' after rel. prons., 96, 6. Exclamatory clauses, 269, R. 6, 293, (b), R. 3, 300, N. 2.

sfath, sfältig, form multiplicative numerals, 182, (δ). fallen Model, 188.

falls, subord. conj., 239, 3, (δ).

sfältig; see sfach.
Factitive accusative, 253.
Factitive predicate, 253,

254, 3. Family names, 74, 76, 4, 6. fecten Model, 124.

'few,' how rendered in Ger., 145, 152, 168, 173, 175. 'for,' how rendered in Ger., 229; after verbs, substs, and adjs., 291, 2-4. Foreign substs., accentuation, p. 10, bottom; declension, 22, 6, 37, 4, App. D., 57, 5, 63, 3, 77; gender, 89, 2, (e).

Fractional numbers, 183, (a), (b).

freilid, 187, IV.; does not count as a member of a sentence, 293, (i), R. 2, N.

Frequentatives, how formed, 315, 2, (c).

frieren Model, 131.

'from,' after verbs, 291, 5. für, prep., 34; not used of purpose, 229, (a); after verbs of considering, 253.

Future Tense, how formed, 25, 2; use, 261; replaced by present, 257, 5.

Future-perfect Tense, how formed, 25, 3; use, 262; replaced by perfect, 259, 4.

ganz, indef. numeral, 168,

ges, prefix of p. part., 30; when omitted, 35, R. 5, 6, 109, 112, R. 2, 204; of verbs, 35, R. 6, 204, 314, 4; with sep. verbs, 117, 2, 205, 2; with mißs, 209; of substs., 316; declension of substs beginning with ges, 16, 17, 2, 36, 37, 3; gender, 89, 3, (d).

gegen, prep., 34. gegenüber, 51, 4.

gehen with infin., 271, (c). gemäß, 51, 5.

gen, 50, 2.

Gender of substs., according to meaning, 80, and form, 89; of compound substs., 90, 4, App. I., p. 383; double gender, 91, App. J.; general remarks on, 90; exceptional gender, App. I.

Genitive, use of, 3, 243; after adjs., 244; after verbs, 245; adverbial, of time and manner, 184, 2, (b), 189, 2, 246; of place, 246; after reflexive verbs, 215, 216; after impers. verbs, 219, 2, (a); after interjections, 240, 4, (a); after preps., 222, 223; uninflected appositive genitive, 289, 3, N. 2; position of in a sentence, 296, 4-7.

genug, indef. num. and adv., 168, 178; followed by inf., 273, 3.

German language, its relations to English, 322; historical sketch, 322-326.
Germanic languages, 322,

323; diagram of, p. 376. gern, comparison of, 190, 1; idiomatic use of, 195, 3.

Gerunds, or infin. in -ing, not to be confounded with pres. part., 277, R. 3, 4, 6.

Gerundive, 282. glauben, infin. after, 275, gleich, prep., 51, 6. [R. 3. sgleichen, 48, 97, 139.

Graf Model, 55. Grimm's Law, 325. groß, comparison, 125, 5. Grunbsprache, 322.

gut, comparison, 129; as adv., 195, 10, N., 293, (b), R. 2, N.

h, mute before consonants, after vowels and after t, p. 9; when rejected after t, p. 12.

haben, conjugation, 24; use, 25; with infin., 271, (δ), and R. 1, 272, R. 2; omission of in dependent sentences, 287, 293, (ε), R. 5.

shaft, suffix of adjs., 313, 3. halb, numeral, 183, (α), N. 2, (b).

halb(en), halber, prep., 222, 223, 1.

'half,' how rendered in Ger., 183, (a), N. 2; (b).

half-hours, 184, 3, (a).

heißen with infin., 271, (d). sheit, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 9.

helfen Model, 159. her, prefix, 210.

hier, 187, II., (a); before preps., 142.

High German, history of, 324.

hin, prefix, 210.

hinten, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

hinter, prep., 65; sep. and insep. prefix, 208.

insep. prefix, 208.

comparison, 129. höchft, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4.

'however,' adv. conj., how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.

Hours of the day, 184, 3.

Hundert, 165, 8, 10, (c).

Hyphen, its use in compounds, 318, 3, N., and 4.

i, produces Umlaut, 326.

sid), substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a).

sicht, subst. suffix, 312, 18; adj. suffix, 313, 4.

sie, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

sier, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

sieren, foreign verbs in, take no ges in p. part., 35, R. 5; verb suffix, 311, 3.

'if,' when rendered by ob, 241, 4.

\*ig, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (α); adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; advs. in, superl. of, 190, 5; suffix of poss. prons., 119, (ε); subst. suffix, 312, 18; adj. suffix, 313, 5; before \*lett, 312, 10, N.; after \*fhaft, 313, 3, N.; produces Umlaut, 326, (f).

3hro. 49.

sit, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

immer, adv., 187, I., (e); after rel. prons., 96, 6.

Imperative Mood, true forms of, 31, R. 4; endings, in weak verbs, 35; in strong, 107; expressed by Inffen, 200, 7, (a); replaced by subjunctive, 268, 1; use of, 269. [196.

Imperfect-Present Verbs,

Imperfect Tense, formation, in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 104; endings, in weak verbs, 35; in strong, 107.

Imperfect Indicative, use, 258; distinguished from Perfect, 259, 2, 3; replaced by present, 257, 3.

Imperfect Subjunctive, for conditional, 111, 263, 2, N.; in hypothetical periods, 267, 2; to express wish, 268, 2; to express possibility, 268, 5; origin of Umlaut in, 326, (g).

Impersonal Verbs, 217; conjugation, 218; government, 219; 'there is,' etc., 220; impersonal use of passive voice, 113, 2.

in,' how rendered in Germ., 230, 291, 6, 7.

in, prep., 65; rendered by 'at,' 227, (a), 1, and 4.

| \*in, substs. in, declension, 57, R. 3; gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 11; produces Umlaut, 326, (d).

Indefinite article, see "Article, Indef." [180.
Indefinite numerals, 168Indefinite pronouns, 145-

inbem, subord. conj., 239, 241, 16; replaces Engl. participle, 284, 1, (a), (b). inbeffen, conj., 237, 239, 241, 15.

Indicative mood, use, 256;
tenses of, 257-262;
in indirect statements, 266, R.
in hypothetical periods, 267, R. 5.

Indirect statement, 87, 265; tense of, 266; construction of, 293, (c), R. 1.

Indirect or dependent questions, 88, 293, (c); objective, with infin., 275, R. 4; use of ob in, 277, R. 5.

Indo-European or Indo-Germanic languages, 322.

Infinitive, place of, 26, 33. 295, 3, 299; endings, 35; for p. part. in Modal Auxiliaries, etc., 199, 2; with passive sense after laffen. 200, 7, (c), N.; for imperative, 269, R. 5: as subst., 270; without au. 271; with zu, 272; of purpose, 273; after substs., 274; accusative with inf., not used in Germ., 275; in objective indirect questions, 275, R. 4; governed by preps., 276, 277; infin. in -ing, or gerund, 277, R. 3-6; in elliptical constructions, 278; replaced by p. part., 281, R. 6, 7; as part of predicate, 295.

'-ing,' infinitive in, or gerund, 277, R. 3-6.

sing, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 18.

inmitten, 223, 21. innen, adv., 189, 3; compa-

rison, 130. innerhalb, 223, 4, and R.

Inseparable prefixes, 35, R. 6, 109, 203, 204, 207, 209, 212, 213; meaning of, 314.

Interjections, 240.

Inversion, inverted sentence, 301, 2, N. 1, 2.

Interrogative pronouns and adjs., 81-86.

Interrogative sentences, construction, direct, 23; 293, (a), 1, 294, (a), 295, 2, 300, 301, N. 2; indirect or dependent, 88, 275, R. 4, 277, R. 5, 293, (c).

Intransitive verbs, used only impersonally in the passive, 113, 2; accusative after, 254.

sion, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

siren, verbs in; see sieren. irgenb, 157.

=ifd), adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; adj. suffix, 313, 6.

Italics, not used in Germ., p. 12.

'it,' when rendered by er, fie, 13.

j, produces Umlaut, 326. ja, idiomatic use, 195, 11.

ja, jawohl, not counted as member of sent., 293, (b),

R. 2, N.

je, before cardinal numerals, 165, 9.

je . . . besto, 126, 4, 239, 3, (b), 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3.

je(mais), adv., 187, I., (e).
jeber, declension, 6; indef.
pron., 145, 153; indef.
numeral, 168, 171; jebes,
of a number of persons or
things, 162, 2.
jebermann, 145, 147.

jedoch, 237. jedoch, 237.

jeglicher; see jeder. jemand, 145, 148.

jencr, declension, 6; use, 132, 134, 140, 1, (c), 141, 142.

jenfeit(3), 223, 13, and R. jest, 187, I., (δ).

tein, declension, 8; indef. numeral, 168, 172. teiner, indef. pron., 145;

used for niemand, 151.

\*teit, substs. in, gender, 89,
2, (a); subst. suffix, 312,

10. tennen, 196, R. 4, N. 1 Anabe Model, 54. tommen, with p. part., 281,

tönnen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 2, 202. traft, prep., 223, 7.

sī, forms fractions, 183, (a). Iängē, 223, 18, and R. 1. Language, German, historical sketch of, 322-326.

Language-names from adjs., 122, R. 2.

Languages, Indo-Germanic, etc., 322, 2, 3; Germanic, 323.

Iassen, its use, for passive voice, 114, (b); as Modal Auxiliary, 200, 7.

Laut, 223, 8.

Lautverschiebung, 325.

\*lei, forms variative numerals, 182, (c).

slein, substs. in, declension,

16, 17; gender, 89, 3, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 3; produces Umlaut, 326, R. 2, (c).

Letters, German, shape and pronunciation of, see Introduction, pp. 1-12.

lett, 130.

sleute, plurals in, 68, 1.

Flid), adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; superl. of advs. in, 190, 5; suffix of advs., 189, 1, (b); of adjs., 313, 8.

lieber, compar. of gern, 190; use, 195, 3.

=ling, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 12.
=ling\$, suffix of advs., 189,

1, (c).
Loben, paradigm of, active,

31; reflexive, 41; passive, 112.

sm, substs. in, declension, 69; gender, 89, 1, (a). Macht, irregular compounds of, 68, 2.

=mal, forms numeral advs.,
182, (a).

Maler Model, 16, 17, App.

man, indef. pron., for passive voice, 114, (a); use, 145, 146; replaced by einer, 150; with imperative, 269, R. 2.

mander, indef. pron., 145, 154; indef. numeral, 168, 174; before adjs., 122, 12. mann, substs. in, declension, 68, 1.

Manner, advs. of, 189; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.

Materials, names of, take art., 44, 1, (b); plural of, 66, 2.

may, when expressed by bürfen, 200, 3, (b), N.

'meanwhile,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.

Measure, expressions of, 185; advs. of, 187, III.

mehr, when used in comparison of adjs., 126, 2, 161, N.; adv. of quantity, 129, N. 1; indef. numeral, 168, 179.

mehrere, -es, indef. pron., 145, 152; indef. numeral, 168, 175; before adjs., 122, 12.

mein Model, 8.

Middle High German, 324, 2. Million, declension, 165, 10,

Minutes of the hour, 184, 3, (b).

mißs, verb-prefix, 204, 209, 314, 5; subst. prefix, 315, 3.

mit, 46; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (a).

mittel, comparison, 130. mittelft, see vermittelft.

Mixed declension, of substs., 60-68, 70; of adjs., 116, 121. III.

Modal auxiliaries, 196-202; peculiar forms, 196, R. 1-3; paradigms, 198; further peculiarities, 199; idiomatic use, 200-202.

Modern High German, 324,3. Modification of vowels; see Umlaut.

mögen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 3, 202.

Monosyllables, declension, 22, 1, 3, 5, App. B., C., E., 37; gender, 89, 1, (a). Month, day of, how ex-

pressed, 166, 3.

Months, names of, p. 104,

top; gender, 80, 1,  $(\delta)$ . Moods of the verb, their use, 256-278; see also "Conditional," "Indicative," etc.

'most,' with absolute superlative, 127, 2.

Motion, neuter verbs of, conjugated with fein, 53, (δ). müffen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 4, 202.

Mut, fem. compounds of, App. I, p. 388; zu Mute fein, werben, 250, (e).

Mutes, progression or shifting of, 325.

nad, prep., 46, 184, 3, (b), 233, (c), 1; after adjs., 244; after verbs, etc., 291, 3; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (a).

Machbar Model, 62, 63. nachbem, subord. conj. clause with, replaces Engl. perf. part., 284, R. 1.

nächst, 51, 7.

nahe, comparison, 129. Name Model, 60, 61.

Names, see "Materials,"
"Persons," "Places,"
"Proper Names,"

nämliche, ber, 132, 137. neben, prep., 65.

nebst, 51, 8.

nennen, infin. with, 271, (d). Neuter verbs conjugated with fein, 53.

New High German, 324, 3. nicht, place of, 12.

nicht nur . . . fonbern auch, 238.

nicht fowohl . . . als, 238. nichts, indef. pron., 145, 149; before adjs., 122, 11.

nichtsbestoweniger, cöord. adv. conj., 237.

nichts weniger als, 241, 19, N.

nib, obsolete adv., comparison, 130.

nic(mals), 187, I., (e). nieber, 130.

niemand, 145, 148; replaced by feiner, 151, 1. nimmer, 187, I. (c).

22, 4; gender, 89, 2, (d), 3, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 13; produces Umlaut, 326,

(e). noth, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 7; conj., 237, 238.

Nominative, use of, 3, 242. Number, in Substs., 3; expressions of, 185.

Numerals, cardinal, 163, 165; ordinal, 164, 166; Roman, how rendered in Germ, 166, 2, N.; indefinite, 168-180; derivative, 182, 183; multiplicative, 182, (b); variative, 182, (c); fractional, 183, (a), (b).

nun, 195, 1. nur, 195, 12.

ob, prep., 51, 10; conj., 241, 4; when omitted, 239, R. 4, 267, R. 6, N.; in indirect questions, 277, R. 5.

ob auch, 239, R. 3, 4.

oben, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

oberhalb, 223, 5.

obgleich, obschon, obwohl, 239, R. 3, 4.

Object, direct, see "Accusative"; indirect, see "Dative"; remote, with reflexive verbs, 216.

Objects, place of, 45, 296, 297, R. 1, 2.

Objective clause before the verb, 306.

Objective genitive, 243, 3. ober, 236, 238.

'of,' how rendered in Germ.,

3, 46, R. 3; 231; omitted before infin. clauses, 277, R. 1; after verbs, etc., 291, 8-11.

ohne, prep., 34; governing infin. or baβ clause, 224, 2, (b), 276.

ohnebem, 50, 3. Ohr Model, 62, 63.

Old High German, 324, 1.

son, foreign mascs. in, declension, 22, 6.

on, how rendered in Germ., 232; after verbs, etc., 291, 7.

'one,' rendered by e8, 39, R. 3; indef. pron., 145, 146, 150; not expressed after adjs., 122, 4.

sor, foreign substs. in," declension, 22, 6, 63, 3.

Ordinal numerals, 164, 166. Origin, genitive of, 243, 1.

Orthography, p. 11; recent changes in, p. 12.

paar (ein), indef. numeral, 173, 3, N.

Participial constructions, English, how rendered in Germ., 284; English pres. part. after 'come,' 281, R. 5; not to be confounded with inf. in -ing, or gerund, 277, R. 3.

Participle, past, how formed, in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 105; of Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 2.

Participles, place of, 26, 33, 283, 4, 295, 1, 3, and N., 298, 299; endings, 30, 35; used as adjectives, 122, 1; as substs., 122, 2; comparison of, 125, 4; isolated strong, 194, N.; use of, 279-284; present part., 250; not used with 'to be,' 31, R. 3; past, 281; with

Imperative force, 269, R. 5; fut. pass. part., or gerundive, 282; general remarks, 283; no perfect part. in Germ., 284, R. 1; appositive participles, 280, (b), 281, R. 3, 283, 3, 290.

Partitive genitive, 243, 6. Partitive sense, words used

in, take no art., 2, 2.
Passive voice, 112-114; paradigm, 112; agent with,
R. 3; limitations of, 113;
substitutes for, 114; passive of transitive verbs, 113,
1; of intransitive verbs,
113, 2.

Past participle, see "Participles." .

'people,' indef. pron., 145, 146.

Periphrastic forms of conjugation, English, 31, R. 3. Perfect participle, none in Germ., 284, R. 1.

Perfect tense, formation, 25, 1; use, 259; replaced by present, 257, 4.

Personal pronouns, declension, 38; use, 39-42, 44, 6, (b); place of, 45, Rules 3, 4, 294, (c), N., 296, 3, 4; replaced by demonstratives, 143; after gletiden, 48; after halben, megen, 223, 1, 2, R. 3; omitted with imperative, 269, R. 1.

Persons, before things, 45, Rule 2, 296, 5; names of, how declined, 73, 74, 76, 2-7; article with names of, 73, 1, 2, 76, 2, 5, 78. Place, advs. of, 187, II.; position in a sentence, 11, 45, Rule 5, 297, 3, and R. 1.

Places, proper names of, 72, 76, 1; article with, 44, 3. Pluperfect tense, formation,

25, 1; plupf. indicative, use, 260; plupf. subjunctive, used for conditional, 263, 267, 2, and R. 4; to express a wish, 268, 2.

Plural, see "Concord,"
"Number," "Substantives."

Possessive adjs., 43; agreement, 43, 5; replaced by def. art., 44, 6.

Possessive case, rendered in Germ. by the genitive, 3, 243. 4.

Possessive dative, 44, 6, 249. " pronouns, 119.

Possibility, advs. of, 187, VI.; expressed by impf. subj., 268, 5.

Predicate, definition of, 292, 1, 295; place of, 295; factitive pred., 253, 254, 3.

Predicative nominative, 242.

Predicative adj., not declined, 14, 100; place of, 18, 20, O. 3, 295, 3, 296, 8; factitive, 254, 3.

Prefixes, of verbs, 203-213, 314; inseparable, 35, R. 6, 109, 204, 207, 208, 209, 212; meaning of, 314; separable, 117, 205-208, 210, 255; separable and inseparable, 208; compound, 206, 2; double, 207; accent of, 204, 205, 3; place of, 117, 295, 3, and N.; subst. prefixes, 316; adj. prefixes, 316.

Prepositions, governing accusative only, 34, 50; dative only, 46, 51; dat. or acc., 65; genitive, 222, 223; contracted with def. art., 34, R., 46, R.1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; general remarks on, 224; joined to advs., 224; governing the infin., 224, 2, (b), 276, 277;

English preps. and their Germ. equivalents, 225-234; place of, 46, 51, 223, 298, 2; after verbs, etc., 291.

Present participle; see
"Participial Constructions, English," and
"Participles."

Present tense, endings, in weak verbs, 35, in strong, 107; pres. indicative, 257, 267, R. 5; pres. subj., replaces imperative, 268, 1, 269, and R. 2.

Preterite, see "Imperfect."
Primary Form of strong declension, 70, R. 2.

Principal assertive sentences, construction, 20, 26, 59, N., 293, (b), 294, (b). 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 2, 301, 2, 302, R., 303.

Principal parts of a verb, 28.

Progression of mutes, 325.
Pronouns, agreement of, 18;
place of, 45, 296, 2-4;
personal, declension, 38;
use of e8, 39; use in address, 40, 47, 49; dative
of, replaces poss. adj., 44,
6, (b); reflexive, 41, 42;
reciprocal, 42; interrogative, 81-83; relative, 9297, place of, 98; possessive, 119; demonstrative,
132-148; indefinite, 145157; remarks on, 162.

Pronunciation, Introduction, pp. 1-12.

Probability, expressed by future, 261, 2; by future-perfect, 262.

Proper names, declension of, 66, 1, 72-74, 76.

Proportional Clauses; see "Comparative Clauses."
Purpose, conjs. of, 239, 3

(b); expressed by zu, 229, (a); by subj. with baß, etc., 268, 3; by infin. with zu or um...zu, 273, R. 1, 276, 1.

Quality, genitive of, 243, 5. Quantity of vowels, pp. 9, 10. Quantity, expressions of, 185.

Quarters of the hour, 184,3, (a).

Questions, direct, construction of, 23, 293, (a), 1, 294, (a), 295, 2, 300; indirect or dependent, 88, 293, (c).

Question-word, begins sentence, 23, O. 2, 293, (a), 1, 294, (a).

Reciprocal pronouns, 42.
Reflexive pronouns, 41, 42, 44, 6, (δ), N.; used in reciprocal sense, 42; place of, 294, (c), N.

Reflexive verbs, paradigm of, 41; for passive, 114, (b); use, 214-215; government, 216.

Relative clauses, replace Engl. part., 284, 2, (a); place of, 305, 306, R. 3, and N., R. 4.

Relative pronouns, 92-97; place of, 98, 294, (c), 305; introduce dependent clauses, 98; not omitted in Germ., 96, 7, O.; concord of, 95, 1, (b), 288, 2, N.

Relative superlative, of adjs., 127; of advs., 190, 3.

Roman numerals, how read in Germ., 166, 2, N.

s, plurals in, 77, 5.
s, suffix of advs., 189, 1, 2,
321, 1, N.; suffix in subst.
compounds, 319, 1, N. 2, 3.

s [αI, substs. in, declension, 22, 4; gender, 89, 3, (ε); subst. suffix, 312, 14. s [αm, adj. in, superl. of, 190, 5; adj. suffix, 313, 9, [αmt, 51, 9].

sfφαft, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 15.

312, 15. ˈˈdicɨgen Model, 123. ˈdicɨgen Model, 186. ˈdion, iciomatic use, 195, 6. Script, German, pp. 13-16. ʃeḥr, with absolute superl.,

127, 2, 190, 4.

fein, 'to be,' use as auxiliary, 25, 4; conjugation, 52; verbs conjugated with, 53; with past part., 112, R. 5, (b); as impersonal, 217, 220; with dat., 250, (e); with infin., 272, R. 2; omitted in dependent sentences, 287.

feit, prep., 46, 241, 12, (a); conj., 239, 241, 12.

conj., 250, 241, 12. feitbem, adv. conj., 237; subord. conj., 239, 241, 12, (c).

sfel, substs. in, gender, 89, 3, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 14.

felber, felbst, 42, 3, and R. felbig, 136, N.

felbft; see felber.

Sentences, construction of, 292-306; essential parts of, 292; construction of assertive principal, 20, 26, 59, N., 293, (\(\delta\), 294, (\(\delta\), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 301, 2, 306; of dependent, 32, 33, 98, 293, (\(\cent{c}\), 295, 2; relative, 98, 305, 306, R. 3 and N., R. 4; interrogative, 23, 88, 293, (\(\alpha\)), 295, 2, 300; exclamatory, 293, (\(\delta\)), R. 3;

expressing command or wish, 293, (a), 2; conditional, 59, 293, (a), 3; position of verb in, 293, ot subject, 294; of predicate, 285; of objects, etc., 296; of advs., etc., 297; of other members, 298; inverted, 301, N. 1, 2; compound and complex, 202-306.

Separable prefixes, when separated, 117; place of, 295, 3 and N., 303, 4. 'shall,' how rendered in Germ., 201.

Shifting of mutes, 325.

'since,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 12. fingen Model. 144.

Singular, see "Concord,"
"Substantives."
'so,' rendered by co, 39, 3.

50, after conditional and adverbial clauses, 59, 239, R. 2, 267, R. 3, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 1, 2, 294, (b), R. 2; replaces fold before ein, 138, N. 2; adv. conj., 237.

fo . . . fo, 241, 9.
fo ein, followed by wie,
162, 4.

jogar, adv. conj., 237, R. 2. Soβn Model, 21; origin of Umlaut in, 326, R. 2, (a). jold(er), demonstr. pron., 132, 138; followed by mie, 162, 4; before adjs.,

122, 12. follen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 5, 201, 202.

'some,' how rendered in Germ., 2, 2, 150, 152, 155, 168, 173, 177, 180. fonber, 50, 1.

fonbern, 236, R. 1.

fowohl... als (auch), 288; 285, R. 6.

fpinnen Model, 158. fprechen Model, 167. II, B, p. 5; in verbs, 118, R. 2, 123, R. 1, 181, O. 1, 188, R. 3.

ftatt, see anftatt.

\*ft. subst. suffix, 312, 1.

ftehen, with infin., 272, R. 2. Stem of verbs, 27. Strong declension; see "Sub-

stantives, declension of."

Strong conjugation; see

"Verbs, conjugation of."
Subject, definition of, 292;
place of, 294; in principal
sentences, 20, 59, N.;
in direct questions, 23,
O. 1; in dependent sentences, 33, N.; inversion of, 301, 2, N. 1, 2;
expressed by nom. case,
3, 242, 1; agreement with
verb, 285; repetition of,
286.

Subjective clause, 306; relative, 306, R. 3.

Subjective gentive, 243, 2. Subjunctive Mood, use, 264-268, for conditional, 111, 263, N.; in indirect statements, 87, 265, 266; in indirect questions, 88; in hypothetical periods, 239, R. 1, 267; for imperative, 31, R. 4, 268, 1, 269; expressing a wish, 268, 2; of purpose, 268, 3; after a negative, etc., 268, 4; of possibility, 268, 5; origin of Umlaut in impf. subj., 326, (g).

Substantives, their declension, Maler Model, 16, 17; Sobn do., 21, (a), 22, App. C.; Junb do., 21, (b), 22, App. E.; Dorf do., 36, 37; Anabe, Graf, Mume do., 54-57, App. F.; Name, Radbar, Ohr

do., 60-63, App. G.; with double plurals, 64, App. G.\*: Summary and tables, 70; essential parts, 71; anomalous, 66-69; substs. without plural, 65; without sing.. 67; of measure, weight and number, 185; as verb prefixes, 206, 3, 212; irregular compound substs., 68; appositive subst., 289; derivation, by internal change, 310; by suffixes, 312; by prefixes, 315; composition, 319; see also under "Accentuation," " Compound Substantives," " Foreign Substantives." "Gender."

Suffixes, of verbs, 311; of substs., 312; of adjs., 313.

Superlative degree, of adjs., relative, 127, 1; absolute, 127, 2; of advs., 190, 3-7.

\$\psi\$, substs. in, gender, 89, 2,
 (δ); subst. suffix, 312, 1.
 \$\psi\$tät, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

taufend, 165, 8, and 10, (c). teils . . . teils, 238.

Tense, in indirect statements, 87; in indirect questions, 88; auxiliaries of, use, 25, 53; place of with auxiliaries of mood, 199, 3.

Tenses, simple, how formed in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 104-107, 110; endings of, in weak verbs, 35; in strong, 107; compound, how formed, 25, 108; construction, 26, 33; sequence of tenses in indirect statements and questions not observed in

Germ., 87, 2, 88, 2, 266,

4; of the indicative, how used, 257-262 (see also under the various tenses); of the conditional, 263, N.; the tense in indirect statements, 87, 266; in hypothetical periods, 267.
Terminations; see "End-

ings."
'than' after the compara-

tive, 126, 1, 211, 7. 'that,' how rendered in Germ. 140.

'the . . . the 'before comparatives, 126, 4,

'there,' rendered by e3, 89, 1, R.; 'there is, there are,' 220.

'they,' indefinite, 145, 146. sthum; see stum.

Time, expressions of, 184; place of, 11, 45, 297, 2, 306, R. 2; advs. of, 187, I.; English participial constructions of, howrendered in Germ., 284, (a); time of day, 184, 3, 285, R. 6, N. 2.

Titles of rank, 49; 76, 5, 6. 'to,' how rendered in Germ., 46, R. 4; 233.

Towns, names of, gender, 80,3,(c); see also "Places, names of."

Transitive verbs, English, with object unexpressed, rendered by reflexive verbs in Germ., 215, 2; often intrans. in Germ., 250, R. 1, 252, R.

Trigraphs, consonantal, pp. 4, 8, 14.

trop, 223, 16, and R. 2. stum, substs. in, declension,

37; gender, 89, 3, (b); subst. suffix, 312, 16.

über, prep., 65; after interjections, 240, 4, (a); after

verbs, etc., 291, 1; prefix, 208; after reflexive verbs, 215. 1.

um, prep., 34, 184, 3, (c), 226, (a), (b), 227, (b), 1; after verbs, 291, 4; governing an infin. of purpose, 224, 2, (b), 273, 276; prefix, 208.

um fo, before comparatives, 126, 4, 241, 2, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3. [12.

um... willen, 223, 22, R. 1, Umlaut, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; in declension of substs., 17, (a), 21, (a), 22, 36, 70, R. 6, App. A., C.; in subj. mood, 107, O 2; in comparison of adjs., 125, R. 1, in strong verbs, 186, 188, 192, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, 196, R. 1; in derivation, 308, N., 309, 311, 1, 2, 312, 2-4, 8, 11-13, 313, 5; origin, 326.

un=, subst. prefix, 315, 4. unb, 236.

unfern, 223, 23.

sung, substs. in, gender, 89,
2, (a); subst. suffix, 312,
17.

ungeachtet, prep., 223, 15; conj. 239, 3, (b), 241, 21. units, before tens, 165, 7. 'unless,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 18.

unten, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

unter, prep., 65; prefix, 208.

unterbeffen, adv. conj., 237; subord. conj., 239, 3, (b), 241, 15.

unterhalb, 223, 6. unweit, 223, 24.

Mrs, subst. prefix, 315, 5.

-ur, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

rfprache, 322.

Variative numerals, 182,(c). ver=, insep.yerb prefix,35,R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 6.

Verb, place of, 20, 32, 33, 87, 2, 88, 2, 266, R. 2, 267, R. 2, 292, 223, 301; English periphrastic forms of, how rendered in Ger., 31, R. 3; tenses of, 256-262, 263, 266 (see also under the various tenses); moods of, 256-278 (see also under the various moods); concord of, 285; when omitted, 269, R. 6, 287.

Verbs, stem of, 27; principal parts of, 28; weak conjugation of, 30, 31; endings of simple tenses, 35; verbs conjugated with fein, 53; neut., of motion, etc., 53; irregular weak, 99; strong, 103-108, App. L. ; beißen Model, 118; bleiben do., 120; ichiegen do., 123; fechten do., 124; frieren do., 131; fingen do., 144; fpinnen do., 158; helfen do.,159; fprechen do., 167; effen do., 181; fclagen do., 186; fallen do., 188; table of strong verbs, 192; passive voice, 112-114; reflexive verbs, paradigm of, 41; use, 214-216; impersonal verbs, 217-220; compound verbs, insep., 35, R. 6, 109, 204, 207-209, 211-213; separable, 117, 205 - 208, auxiliaries of tense, 25, 53; irregular strong, 194, 196; auxiliaries of mood, 196-202; verbs with two nominatives, 242, 2, 3; with genitive, 245; with dative, 250; with accusative, 252, 253; verbs of choosing.

242, N.; of calling, considering, 253; verbs followed by the subjunctive 265; by the infin. without 311, 271; with 311, 272; prepositions after, 251; derivation of, without change, 308; with internal chauge, 309; by suffixes, 311; by prefixes, 314.

vermittelft, 223, 9. vermöge, 223, 10.

viel, comparison of, 129; indef. pron., 145; indef. numeral, 168, 176; before adjs., 122, 11, 12.

Vocative, 242, 1.

voll, prefix, sep. and insep., 208; adj., 244.

von, prep., 46, 228, (a), 231, (b), 234; used for genitive, 46, R. 3; with passive voice, 112, R. 3; with names of places, 72, 3, 4; with names of persons, 76, 6; replaces genitive of quality, 243, 5, N.; after partitives, 243, 6, N.; after voil, 244; after verbs, 245, 2

vor, prep., 65, 184, 3, (δ),
234; after verbs, etc., 291,
5, 11; after reflexive verbs,
215, 1, (δ).

voru, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

Vowels, modified, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; double, pp. 4, 6, 12, 14; importance of, p. 8, bottom; long and short, pp. 9, 10; see also "Umlaut."

währenb, prep., **75**, **2**, **223**, 17; conj., **239**, **3**, (*b*), **241**, 13; replaces Engl. participle of time, **284**, **1**, (*a*).

marum, 83, R. 3, N.

mas, interrog, pron., declension and use, 83: sometimes = 'why,' 83, 6, 162, 3: used for etwas, 149, 1; relative pron., 92, 96; followed by bas, 162, 1; of a number of persons or things, 162, 2; not governed by preps., 83, 3, 96. 7; construction of sentences with, 98, 3,

was für (ein), 86. 'we,' indef., 146.

Weak conjugation. "Verbs"; declension, see "Substantives," "Adjectives."

meber . . . noch, 238. megen, 75, 1, 223, 2, and R. 3.

Weight, expressions of, 185. weil, 239, 3, (b), 241, 17.

welcher, interrog. pron. and adj., 6, 81, 82, 84, 85; in exclamations, 85, 1, 2; relative pron., 92, 94, 95; indefinite pron. and numeral, used for 'some," 145, 155, 180; before adjs., 122, 13.

menia, comparison of, 129; indef. pron., 145; indef. numeral, 168, 176; before adis., 122, 12.

wenn, 58, 239, 3, (b), R. 1-4, 237; omission of, 239, R. 2-4, 267, R. 2, 3, 6, N., 293, (a), 3, R. 4, N. 2, (c), R. 2, 294, (b), R.

ichon, 239, 3, (b), and R. 3. N.

menn . . . nicht. 239. 3. (b). 241, 18,

mer, interrog. pron., 81, 83; relative pron., 92, 96,135, (b), N.; followed by ber, 162. 1: replaced by ber. 306, R. 3, N.: construction of sentences with, 98, 3.

werben, pres. and impf. of, 19; conjugated with fein, 53, (a); use as auxiliary of tense, 25, 2; as auxiliary of passive voice, 112, 113: conjugation, 112: as impersonal verb, 217, 2, (c); with dat., 250, (e). 'when,' how rendered in Germ., 58.

' whether,' expressed by mös gen, 200, 3, (c). 'while, whilst,' how rendered

in Germ., 241, 15. 'whole,' how rendered in Germ., 168, 170.

miber, prep., 34; prefix, 204.

wie, in comparisons, 126, 3, 241, 6, 8; after fold ein, fo ein, 162, 4; subord. conj., 239, 3, (b); in comparative clauses, 306, R. 4, N.

wieber, prefix, 208, N. 2. wievielfte, ber, 164, 166, 3,

Germ., 201.

'will,' how rendered in

junctive, 268, 2; construction of sentences expressing, 293, (a), 2.

wiffen, 196, and N. r.

wo, 187, II., (c); before preps., replacing interrog. prons., 83, 3, and relative prons., 95, 2, 96, 7.

mohl, comparison of, 190: idiomatic use, 195, 10.

mollen, its conjugation, 196-199: its use, 200, 6, 201. 202.

worden, for geworben, in passive voice, 112, R. 2; when omitted, 112, R. 4.

'you,' how rendered in Ger., 40; indef. pron., 146.

=3ehn, in compound numerals, 165, 5.

gers, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 7. =3ig, in numerals, 165, 6.

δu, prep., 46, 227, (a), 4, (b), 2, (c), 228, (c), 229, (a), 230, (c), 232, (b), 233, (b), (c), 2, (ii); with Infinitive, 272-277; place of, 109, 117, R. 2; with insep. verbs, 205, 2; followed by als bak or um zu, with verbs of choosing, 242, 3, N., 253; after adjs., 244. zuerft, 195, 5.

jufolge, 223, 11, R.

junächft, 51. 7. zuwiber, 51, 3.

zwei, declension of, 165, 2, wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn | Wish, expressed by the Sub- awijchen, prep., 65.

